Infant Nutrition and Feeding
A Guide for Use in the Special Supplemental Nutrition Program for Women, Infants, and Children (WIC)
In accordance with Federal civil rights law and U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) civil rights regulations and policies, the USDA, its Agencies, offices, and employees, and institutions participating in or administering USDA programs are prohibited from discriminating based on race, color, national origin, sex, disability, age, or reprisal or retaliation for prior civil rights activity in any program or activity conducted or funded by USDA.

Persons with disabilities who require alternative means of communication for program information (e.g., Braille, large print, audiotape, American Sign Language, etc.) should contact the Agency (State or local) where they applied for benefits. Individuals who are deaf, hard of hearing, or have speech disabilities may contact USDA through the Federal Relay Service at (800) 877-8339. Additionally, program information may be made available in languages other than English.

To file a program complaint of discrimination, complete the USDA Program Discrimination Complaint Form, (AD-3027), found online at: http://www.ascr.usda.gov/complaint_filing_cust.html, and at any USDA office, or write a letter addressed to USDA and provide in the letter all of the information requested in the form. To request a copy of the complaint form call (866) 632-9992. Submit your completed form or letter to USDA by:

**Mail:** U.S. Department of Agriculture
Office of the Assistant Secretary for Civil Rights
1400 Independence Avenue, SW
Washington, DC 20250-9410

**Fax:** (202) 690-7442

**Email:** program.intake@usda.gov

This institution is an equal opportunity provider.

U.S. Department of Agriculture
Food and Nutrition Service
April 2019
FNS-826
Note to the Reader on Using This Guidebook

The WIC Infant Feeding Guide is for staff who provide nutrition education and counseling to the parents and guardians (termed “parents and caregivers”) of infants who participate in the Special Supplemental Nutrition Program for Women, Infants, and Children (WIC). This publication provides an overview of basic subjects related to infant nutrition and feeding and answers common questions on the nutritional needs of infants; the development of feeding skills; breastfeeding; formula feeding; the introduction of complementary foods; infant feeding practices; appropriate food selection and preparation; oral health; vegetarian nutrition; common gastrointestinal problems; obesity; physical activity/motor skill development; and sanitary preparation and storage of food.

Since this publication primarily focuses on nutrition for the healthy full-term infant, the reader is advised to consult with trained health professionals or textbooks on pediatrics or pediatric nutrition for more detailed or advanced technical information on aspects of infant nutrition; assessment of an infant’s nutritional status (including growth and development); and nutrition care for preterm, low-birth-weight, or special needs infants, or those with medical conditions. Note that the term “health care provider” in the text refers to the physician, dentist, nurse practitioner, registered nurse, or other health professional providing medical or dental care to the infant.

This guidebook can assist staff in disseminating appropriate and accurate information to participants. It is a resource for planning individual counseling sessions, group classes, and staff in-service training sessions. Throughout the text, features in green boxes provide useful tips and information, such as “A Shopping List Rich in Vitamins and Minerals,” “State Laws That Protect Breastfeeding Mothers,” “Choosing a Breast Pump,” “Colic: A Mystery Ailment,” and “Immunization Is Important.” Notes in bold letters give warnings and concerns, such as, “Refer infants who appear to have feeding problems to a health care provider for assessment.” For quick reference, newly introduced terms are highlighted in blue, and their definitions appear at the bottom of the page. Readers will find a full glossary at the end of the guidebook. Numbered endnotes throughout the text indicate resource information from key organizations such as the American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) and the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). The resources are cited in full at the end of each chapter; a complete bibliography with all the resources appears in the back of the guidebook. An additional list of resources is provided in the appendix for more information on infant nutrition, food safety, and other related topics. For quick reference to topics, refer to the detailed index at the end of this guide.

Every effort has been made to ensure the accuracy of the information in this guidebook. The recommendations in this guidebook are not designed to serve as an exclusive nutrition care plan or program for all infants. It is the responsibility of each staff person providing nutrition education to parents and caregivers of infants to evaluate the appropriateness of nutrition recommendations in the context of an individual infant’s nutritional and health status, lifestyle, and other factors affecting that status. The staff person must also consider any new developments in infant nutrition. If you have a question or are unsure about the appropriateness of a nutrition recommendation, consult with the infant’s health care provider or a professional with additional expertise in pediatric nutrition before making a recommendation.

We are interested in your comments on this guidebook. Complete the questionnaire in the Reader Response section of this guidebook.
# CONTENTS

1 **Nutritional Needs of Infants** ................................................................. 1
   Nutrition Assessment ............................................................................. 1
   Dietary Reference Intakes (DRIs) .......................................................... 3
   Energy and Important Nutrients ............................................................ 4
   Energy ................................................................................................. 4
   Nutrients .............................................................................................. 5
   Macronutrients .................................................................................... 5
   Micronutrients ..................................................................................... 10
   Vitamin and Mineral Supplements ....................................................... 22
   Endnotes ............................................................................................... 28
   Table 1.1 – Recommended Dietary Reference Intakes for Macronutrients ........................................ 6
   Table 1.2 – Recommended Dietary Reference Intakes for Fat-Soluble Vitamins .................................. 10
   Table 1.3 – Recommended Dietary Reference Intakes for Water-Soluble Vitamins ............................ 14
   Table 1.4 – Recommended Dietary Reference Intakes for Minerals .................................................. 17
   Table 1.5 – Nutrients: Function, Deficiency and Toxicity Symptoms, and Major Food Sources .......... 23

2 **Development of Infant Feeding Skills** ............................................... 33
   Infant Behavior ..................................................................................... 33
   The Feeding Relationship ................................................................... 39
   How Developmental Delays Affect an Infant’s Feeding Skills .................. 43
   Endnotes ............................................................................................... 44
   Table 2.1 – Sequence of Infant Developmental Skills .................................. 38
   Table 2.2 – Infant Hunger and Satiety Cues ............................................. 39
   Table 2.3 – Desired Outcomes for the Infant and the Role of the Family in the Feeding Relationship .... 41

3 **Breastfeeding** .................................................................................... 47
   Breastfeeding Recommendations .......................................................... 47
   Benefits of Breastfeeding .................................................................... 48
   Factors Affecting the Decision to Initiate or Continue Breastfeeding .......... 51
   Methods to Support Breastfeeding Mothers in Your Program .................. 52
   The Basics of Breastfeeding ................................................................ 52
   Characteristics of Feedings .................................................................. 60
   Breast Care ........................................................................................... 63
   Expressing Human Milk ....................................................................... 64
   Human Milk Storage ............................................................................. 65
   Common Concerns ............................................................................... 66
   Choosing a Breast Pump ...................................................................... 67
   Planning Time Away From the Infant .................................................... 73
6 Special Concerns in Infant Feeding and Development ........................................... 151
Oral Health ........................................................................................................... 151
Vegetarian Diets ................................................................................................. 156
Common Gastrointestinal Problems ..................................................................... 160
Immunization ......................................................................................................... 164
Overweight and Obesity Prevention ................................................................... 165
Sleeping Patterns and Safe Sleep Practices ...................................................... 166
Endnotes .............................................................................................................. 169

7 Physical Activity in Infancy .............................................................................. 177
Why Physical Activity Is Important ................................................................... 177
Gross Motor Milestones in Infancy .................................................................... 179
Physical Activity Guidelines for Infants ............................................................ 179
Play Positions ..................................................................................................... 181
Common Concerns With Walkers and Infant Equipment .................................. 184
Media Use and Inactivity ..................................................................................... 184
Endnotes .............................................................................................................. 187
Table 7.1 – Milestones and Development ....................................................... 180

8 Food Safety .................................................................................................... 191
Clean Hands and Kitchens Keep Infants Well .................................................... 191
Safely Preparing and Storing Human Milk and Infant Formula ....................... 192
Preparing and Storing Home-Prepared and Commercial Foods Safely .......... 193
Water and Food Contaminants ......................................................................... 198
Endnotes .............................................................................................................. 209

Appendixes .......................................................................................................... 217
A. Using the WIC Works Resource System ......................................................... 218
   Guidelines for Feeding Healthy Infants
   Infant Developmental Skills/Infant Hunger and Satiety Cues
   Infant Feeding: Tips for Food Safety
B. Resources on Infant Nutrition, Food Safety, and Related Topics ................. 225
Glossary ................................................................................................................. 229
Bibliography ......................................................................................................... 237
Acknowledgments ............................................................................................... 256
Index ...................................................................................................................... 257
Reader Response ................................................................................................. 268
CHAPTER 1
NUTRITIONAL NEEDS OF INFANTS

Good nutrition is essential for the rapid growth and brain development that occur during an infant’s first year of life. For healthy growth and development, an infant must eat an adequate amount of essential nutrients by consuming appropriate quantities and types of foods. During infancy, nutrient requirements per pound of body weight are proportionally higher than at any other time in the life cycle. Positive and supportive feeding attitudes and techniques demonstrated by the parent or caregiver help infants develop healthy attitudes toward foods, themselves, and others.

This chapter reviews:
- Nutrition assessment
- Dietary Reference Intakes (DRIs)
- Energy and important nutrients needed during infancy

Nutrition Assessment
To determine an infant’s nutritional needs and develop a nutrition care plan, an accurate assessment of the infant’s nutritional status must be performed. The nutrition assessment provides the nutritionist or competent professional authority (CPA) with important information about feeding practices and the infant’s health. Nutrition education sessions can then be designed to help parents discuss their infants’ feeding and growth concerns and devise strategies that help ensure the infants’ optimal development. The nutritionist/CPA, as well as, the pediatrician plays essential roles in establishing healthy habits concerning infant feeding.

Your CPA Is Vital
To ensure the quality of nutrition services in the WIC program, each local agency shall have a competent professional authority (CPA) on staff. The CPA determines the eligibility of applicants to the WIC program by assessing and documenting income eligibility, determining nutritional risks, prescribing food packages, providing nutrition education including breastfeeding promotion and support, and making referrals to appropriate health and other social services as well as community resources.

Why WIC Nutrition Assessment?
A WIC nutrition assessment is the process of obtaining and synthesizing relevant and accurate information to achieve the following goals:
- To assess an infant’s nutrition status and risk
- To design appropriate nutrition education and counseling
- To tailor the food package to address nutrition needs
- To make appropriate referrals

Value Enhanced Nutrition Assessment
Value Enhanced Nutrition Assessment (VENA) encompasses all aspects of WIC nutrition assessment, which is an essential component of the WIC nutrition services process. By using VENA during the WIC nutrition assessment, CPAs can provide parents and caregivers with the WIC benefits of targeted nutrition education, supplemental food packages, and referrals to health and social services. No single measurement can indicate an infant’s nutritional status. The assessment must be comprehensive to obtain a clear picture of the issues and variables that impact the infant’s nutritional and health status.
Biochemical Data

Biochemical data help diagnose or confirm an infant’s nutritional deficiencies or excesses. In the WIC program, required measurements include hemoglobin or hematocrit levels for screening of iron deficiency anemia. WIC regulations require that all infants 9 months of age and older (who have not already had a hematological test performed or obtained between the ages of 6 and 9 months) shall have a hematological test performed between 9 and 12 months of age or obtained from referral sources. If levels are low, the CPA should assess factors affecting low hemoglobin or hematocrit levels, such as medical condition, recent illness or infection, appetite, diet, factors inhibiting dietary iron absorption, and lead poisoning. In addition, it is important to discuss with the parent or caregiver whether an infant has had lead testing in the past 12 months and refer the parent or caregiver to appropriate resources if needed.

Clinical Data

Clinical data are gathered through the infant’s medical chart review, the parent or caregiver interview, the health care provider referral form(s), or other sources. Issues that contribute to a complete assessment include the following:

- Failure to thrive contributors, such as birth status, illnesses, developmental delay, and potential for abuse, neglect, or poor psychosocial environment
- Nutrition-related medical condition or illness, as well as infant’s special diet
- Prescriptions or over-the-counter medications with nutrition implications
- Major surgery, trauma, or burns in the past 2 months

Dietary Information

WIC’s approach to dietary assessment is qualitative, not quantitative. The CPA may assess the infant’s feeding history and primary nutrient sources, as well

---

**Hemoglobin**: The iron-containing, oxygen-carrying protein in the blood

**Hematocrit**: The percentage of blood that consists of packed red blood cells
as use of complementary foods, feeding patterns, use of dietary supplements, use of nursing bottles and cups, routine feeding practices, ability to transition to complementary feeding after 6 months of age, and infant and maternal factors that affect breastfeeding. Such questions will foster positive communication between the parent or caregiver and the CPA and can serve as a springboard for further discussion.

Environmental and Family Information
It is important to understand environmental and family factors. This information includes: socioeconomic background, primary residence, level of access to safe and adequate food and drinking water, food preparation and storage facilities, the primary parent or caregiver’s ability to make appropriate feeding decisions and/or to prepare food, and exposure to environmental toxics such as tobacco smoke, and to assess the caregiver’s understanding of any potential health risks.

Other Adjunct Health Issues and Technical Requirements
Other adjunct health issues include assessments of an infant’s oral health and dental screenings, well childcare, immunization status, food safety, and physical activity.

The diagram below illustrates how nutrition assessment fits into the WIC nutrition services process. To provide an appropriate and personalized nutrition intervention (e.g., nutrition education, food package tailoring, and referrals), the CPA must first conduct a nutrition assessment.

Dietary Reference Intakes
The Dietary Reference Intakes (DRIs), developed by the Food and Nutrition Board for the Health and Medicine Division (formerly the Institute of Medicine) at the National Academies of Sciences, are four nutrient-based reference values intended for planning and assessing diets:

- Estimated average requirement (EAR)
- Recommended dietary allowance (RDA)
- Adequate intake (AI)
- Tolerable upper intake level (UL)

Recommendations for feeding infants, from human milk to complementary foods, are based primarily on the DRIs. The DRIs for infants are based on the nutrient content of foods consumed by healthy infants with normal growth patterns, the nutrient content of human milk, investigative research, and metabolic studies. Although experts agree that humans need many nutrients, the requirements for intake have been estimated for only a limited number of nutrients. It is difficult to define precise nutrient requirements applicable to all infants.
because each infant is unique. Infants differ in the amount of nutrients ingested and stored, their body composition, growth rates, and physical activity levels. Also, infants with medical problems or special nutritional needs (such as metabolic disorders, chronic diseases, injuries, premature birth, birth defects, other medical conditions, or use of drug therapies) may have different nutritional needs than healthy infants. The DRIs for carbohydrates, lipids, protein, vitamins, and minerals are set at levels thought to be high enough to meet the nutrient needs of most healthy infants, while energy allowances, referred to as the estimated energy requirements, are based on average requirements for infants.

Energy and Important Nutrients

The following sections include information on energy, important nutrients, and water. They also include food sources, functions, and concerns regarding major nutrients considered to be of public health significance to infants in the United States.

Energy

Infants need energy from food for activity, growth, and normal development. Energy comes from foods containing energy-producing macronutrients. Macronutrients provide energy, and they are measured in kilocalories, or what we often call “calories.” The number of kilocalories needed per unit of a person’s body weight expresses energy needs.

Energy Needs

Energy needs are highly variable in infants and depend on the following:

- Basal metabolic rate (the energy the body expends at rest)

---

**Nutrition Terms You Need to Know**

These reference values help you plan and assess an infant’s diet:

- **EAR** (estimated average requirement) is the median usual intake that is estimated to meet the requirement of 50 percent of the healthy population for age and gender. The EAR is used to establish the RDA and evaluate the diet of a population.
- **RDA** (recommended dietary allowance) is the average dietary intake level sufficient to meet the nutrient requirement of nearly all (97 to 98 percent of) healthy individuals. If there is not enough scientific evidence to establish an EAR and set the RDA, an AI is derived.
- **AI** (adequate intake) represents an approximation of intake by a group of healthy individuals maintaining a defined nutritional status. It is a value set as a goal for individual intake of nutrients that do not have an RDA.
- **UL** (tolerable upper intake level) is the highest level of ongoing daily intake of a nutrient that is estimated to pose no risk in the majority of the population. ULs are not intended to be recommended levels of intake, but they can be used as guides to limiting intakes of specific nutrients.
- **EER** (estimated energy requirement) is the level of physical activity consistent with normal development.
- **REA** (recommended energy allowance) is the level of energy intake an individual requires to maintain a healthy weight at a reasonable level of activity.

---

**Body composition**: The percentages of muscle, fat, water, and other substances such as mineral components, in the body

**Kilocalorie (Kcal)**: A measure of how much energy a food supplies to the body, technically defined as the quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 kilogram (kg) of water by 1 degree Celsius
Infant Nutrition and Feeding

Birth weight by 6 months of age and triple it by 12 months of age. Ultimately, each infant’s growth must be individually assessed. This can be done by periodically plotting the infant’s body measurements in growth charts throughout the first year of life. See also: “Anthropometric Data,” page 2.

Growth rate

Recommended Energy Allowances

A person’s recommended energy allowance (REA) is the amount of energy intake an individual requires to maintain weight while going about life at a healthy and reasonable level of activity. Children require more energy because they are making more body tissue.

Using this rationale, the Health and Medicine Division’s Food and Nutrition Board has determined that the estimated energy requirement (EER) for infants should balance energy expenditure at a level of physical activity consistent with normal development.

Estimated Energy Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age (months)</th>
<th>Formula</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–3 months</td>
<td>(89 x weight [kg] – 100) + 175 Kcal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4–6 months</td>
<td>(89 x weight [kg] – 100) + 56 Kcal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–12 months</td>
<td>(89 x weight [kg] – 100) + 22 Kcal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Energy Intake and Growth Rate

A general indicator of whether an infant is consuming an adequate number of kilocalories per day is the infant’s growth rate in length, weight, and head circumference. However, physical growth is a complex process that can be influenced by perinatal history, genetic factors (e.g., parental height, genetic syndromes, disorders), and environmental and medical conditions, in addition to dietary intake. In general, most healthy infants double their birth weight by 6 months of age and triple it by 12 months of age. Weight for age is a sensitive indicator of acute nutritional inadequacy. The rate of growth during infancy, especially early infancy, is rapid, and abnormalities in the rate of weight gain may often be detected in the first few months. In contrast, children beyond infancy grow rather slowly, and many months of observation may be required to demonstrate that the rate of weight gain is unusually slow.

Nutrients

It is important to know that an infant—or anyone—absorbs nutrients better from natural sources than from supplements. Consuming foods that contain a wide array of nutrients ensures their absorption because they interact with one another at the cellular level. The calcium and vitamin D pairing is a good example of nutrients that work well together. Vitamin D enhances the intestinal absorption of calcium. Once in the intestine, calcium moves into the bloodstream and is deposited into the bones. Likewise, vitamin B12 helps to convert vitamin B9 (folate) to its active form, while vitamin C (ascorbic acid) enhances iron absorption.

Macronutrients

Macronutrients are nutrients needed in large amounts for energy provision and other body functions. Table 1.1 (see page 6) indicates the recommended DRIs for macronutrients for children ages 0 to 3 years old. For infants younger than 6 months of age, human milk or infant formula will supply the necessary macronutrients. Macronutrients include the following:

- Carbohydrates
- Protein
- Lipids (fats and oils)

Ambient temperature: The temperature of the infant’s environment
Carbohydrates

AI for Infants

0–6 months 60 g/day of carbohydrate
7–12 months 95 g/day of carbohydrate

Dietary carbohydrates are converted to glucose in the liver. Glucose is the most abundant carbohydrate. The majority of glucose is metabolized for energy. Glucose and other carbohydrates fall into these major categories:

- Monosaccharides (simple sugars): e.g., glucose, galactose, and fructose
- Disaccharides (double sugars): e.g., sucrose, lactose, and maltose
- Polysaccharides (complex carbohydrates): e.g., starch, dextrins, and glycogen
- Indigestible complex carbohydrates (dietary fiber): e.g., pectin, lignin, gums, and cellulose; not broken down by intestinal digestive enzymes
- Sugar alcohols: including sorbitol and xylitol

Functions of Carbohydrates

Carbohydrates are necessary in the infant’s diet for the following reasons:

- Supplying food energy for growth, body functions, and activity
- Building new tissue
- Allowing for the normal use of fats in the body
- Providing the building blocks for some essential body compounds
- Feeding the brain and nervous system

Sources of Carbohydrates

The major type of carbohydrate consumed during infancy is lactose, the carbohydrate source in human milk and infant formula. The carbohydrate in human milk is almost exclusively lactose and readily hydrolyzed in the infant’s intestine. The lactose content of human milk is approximately 74 grams per liter (g/L) and changes little over the total nursing period. As the infant gradually grows and consumes other foods, the volume of milk consumed decreases gradually over the first 12 months. Over the first 6 months of life, the adequate intake (AI) of 60 grams per day (g/day) represents human milk is tailor-made to meet the nutrient needs of the infant. Its carbohydrate is lactose, and its fat provides a generous portion of linoleic acid, the essential omega-6 fatty acid, and its products. A mother who consumes food rich in omega-3 fatty acids will pass these nutrients on to her infant through her milk. The protein of human milk is particularly digestible and helps support tissue growth. Human milk also conveys immune factors, which both protect an infant and inform the infant’s body about the outside environment.

Human Milk Is the Infant’s Best Food

Human colostrum and mature milk are the best sources for feeding infants. Both are rich in nutrients, and each is a single food adequate as the sole source of nutrition. They are composed of a mixture of macronutrients, micronutrients, and other bioactive factors that are easy to digest and absorb and have strong physiologic effects upon the infant. In addition, the composition changes over time to meet the infant’s changing nutritional needs. If a mother can’t breastfeed her infant, iron-fortified infant formula should be recommended. See also: Chapter 4, “Infant Formula Feeding,” pages 93–112.

TABLE 1.1 – Recommended Dietary Reference Intakes (DRIs) for Macronutrients

(Based on the 2000 DRIs and 2011 DRIs for Calcium and Vitamin D)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Carbohydrate (g/day)</th>
<th>Fat (g/day)</th>
<th>Linoleic acid (g/day)</th>
<th>α−Linolenic acid (g/day)</th>
<th>Protein (g/day)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–6 months</td>
<td>AI 60</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RDA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–12 months</td>
<td>AI 95</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AER</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RDA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Blank spaces indicate that information is not available. Tolerable Upper Intake Level (UL) is not available for this population.


Colostrum: Thick human milk that is secreted during pregnancy and for several days after delivery
Bioactive factors: Factors that protect from infection, including immunoglobulins, immune system proteins that attack and destroy bacteria and viruses, and the Bifidus factor, which promotes the development of intestinal flora
Physiologic effect: The promotion of the human body’s normal functioning
Carbohydrates

**Al for Infants**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–6 months</td>
<td>60 g/day of carbohydrate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–12 months</td>
<td>95 g/day of carbohydrate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dietary carbohydrates are converted to glucose in the liver. Glucose is the most abundant carbohydrate. The majority of glucose is metabolized for energy. Glucose and other carbohydrates fall into these major categories:

- **Monosaccharides (simple sugars):** e.g., glucose, galactose, and fructose
- **Disaccharides (double sugars):** e.g., sucrose, lactose, and maltose
- **Polysaccharides (complex carbohydrates):** e.g., starch, dextrins, and glycogen
- **Indigestible complex carbohydrates (dietary fiber):** e.g., pectin, lignin, gums, and cellulose; not broken down by intestinal digestive enzymes
- **Sugar alcohols:** including sorbitol and xylitol

**Functions of Carbohydrates**

Carbohydrates are necessary in the infant’s diet for the following reasons:

- Supplying food energy for growth, body functions, and activity
- Building new tissue
- Allowing for the normal use of fats in the body
- Providing the building blocks for some essential body compounds
- Feeding the brain and nervous system

**Sources of Carbohydrates**

The major type of carbohydrate consumed during infancy is lactose, the carbohydrate source in human milk and infant formula. The carbohydrate in human milk is almost exclusively lactose and readily hydrolyzed in the infant’s intestine. The lactose content of human milk is approximately 74 grams per liter (g/L) and changes little over the total nursing period. As the infant gradually grows and consumes other foods, the volume of milk consumed decreases gradually over the first 12 months. Over the first 6 months of life, the adequate intake (AI) of 60 grams per day (g/day) represents 37 percent of total food energy. This amount of carbohydrate and the ratio of carbohydrate to fat in human milk can be assumed to be optimal for infant growth and development over the first 6 months of life. For older infants, the total intake of carbohydrate from human milk and complementary foods is 95 g/day. In later infancy, infants derive carbohydrates from additional sources, including cereal and other grain products, fruits, and starchy vegetables such as potatoes and legumes. ➤ See also: Chapter 5, “Complementary Foods,” pages 115–142.

**Fiber**

Dietary fiber is found in legumes, whole-grain foods, fruits, and vegetables. Among other benefits, fiber helps the body move food through the digestive tract, delay glucose absorption, and slow down the process of starch hydrolysis.

As complementary foods are introduced to the diet, fiber intake increases; however, no AI for fiber has been established due to lack of data on dietary fiber intake in this age group. It has been recommended that for infants 6–12 months of age, whole-grain breads and cereals, fruits, cooked green leafy vegetables, and legumes gradually be introduced to provide 5 grams of fiber per day by 1 year of age. ➤ See also: Chapter 6, “Vegetarian Diets,” pages 156–160.

**Carbohydrate Deficiency**

In infants, carbohydrate deficiency is related to hereditary disorders of carbohydrate metabolism caused by specific enzyme deficiencies. Such disorders result in hypoglycemia, which is low blood sugar. An example of hypoglycemia is G6PD (glucose-6-phosphatase) deficiency. Infants can be screened for this after birth as part of the normal newborn screening lab test.

**Protein**

**AI for Infants**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–6 months</td>
<td>9.1 g/day of protein</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDA for Older Infants</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–12 months</td>
<td>11 g/day of protein</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The daily required intakes for protein were devised based on the intake of protein from human milk for...
INFANT NUTRITION AND FEEDING

Human milk proteins have a high nutritional quality and are digested and absorbed more efficiently than proteins in infant formula. The contribution of complementary foods to total protein intake in the second 6 months of infancy was considered in establishing the RDA for this age.

Proteins are major structural and functional components of all cells in the body. They consist of one or more chains of **amino acids** that vary in their sequence and lengths. Those chains are combinations of about 20 common amino acids, which are categorized in the following way:

**Nonessential amino acids.** Manufactured in the body when adequate amounts of protein-rich foods are eaten

**Essential amino acids.** Not manufactured in the human body and must be supplied by the diet

Cysteine and tyrosine are two amino acids that are infant-specific and considered essential for premature infants because enzymes needed to metabolize those amino acids are still immature.

Functions of Protein

Infants require high-quality protein from foods. Protein performs the following tasks:

- Builds, maintains and repairs new tissues, including tissues of the skin, eyes, muscles, heart, lungs, brain, and other organs
- Manufactures important enzymes, hormones, antibodies, and other body components
- Performs very specialized functions in regulating body processes

Protein also serves as a potential source of energy if the diet does not furnish sufficient kilocalories from carbohydrates or fats. As with energy needs, an infant’s protein needs for growth per unit of body weight are initially high and then decrease with age as growth rate decreases.

Sources of Protein

Human milk has high-quality proteins that are digested and absorbed more efficiently than those in formula. Exclusively breastfed infants receive adequate protein for at least 6 months. In later infancy, sources of protein include meat, poultry, fish, eggs, cheese, yogurt, legumes such as soy and garbanzo beans, quinoa, and tofu.

Proteins in animal foods contain sufficient amounts of all the essential amino acids needed to meet protein requirements. In comparison, plant foods contain low levels of one or more of the nonessential amino acids.

Know Your Amino Acids

There are two main kinds of amino acids: essential and nonessential. For a balanced diet, the body needs to intake both kinds during the day.

- Nonessential amino acids are manufactured in the body:
  - Alanine
  - Arginine
  - Asparagine
  - Aspartic acid
  - Cysteine
  - Glutamic acid
  - Glutamine
  - Glycine
  - Proline
  - Serine
  - Tyrosine

- Essential amino acids come from diet:
  - Isoleucine
  - Leucine
  - Lysine
  - Methionine
  - Phenylalanine
  - Threonine
  - Tryptophan
  - Valine


Amino acids: Various compounds that link together to form proteins; can be made in the body (nonessential) or obtained from the diet (essential)
the essential amino acids. However, when plant foods low in one essential amino acid are eaten on the same day with an animal food or other plant food high in that amino acid (e.g., legumes such as pureed kidney beans that are low in methionine and high in lysine, and grain products such as mashed rice that are high in methionine and low in lysine), sufficient amounts of all the essential amino acids are made available to the body.15 The protein eaten from the two plant foods would be equivalent to the high-quality protein found in animal products.

**Protein Deficiency**
In the United States, very few infants suffer from true protein deficiency, and it is mainly associated with clinical conditions that decrease intake or inhibit digestion or absorption of food. Infants who are deprived of adequate types and amounts of food for long periods of time may develop kwashiorkor, a condition caused by severe protein deficiency, or marasmus, a condition caused by calorie deficiency.16

**Lipids**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Al for Infants</th>
<th>0–6 months</th>
<th>31 g/day of fat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7–12 months</td>
<td>30 g/day of fat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The lipids in foods and the human body fall into three categories: triglycerides, phospholipids (e.g., lecithin), and sterols (e.g., cholesterol). Lipids are necessary, and some lipids must be present in the diet to maintain good health.

The term “fat” is usually used when referring to triglycerides. Fat is the body’s most important storage form for the energy from food consumed in excess. This is a valuable survival mechanism.

The American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) and the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI) recommend no restriction of fat and cholesterol for infants under 1 year of age because their rapid growth and development requires such high-energy intake—unless there is a medical reason for restriction.19 The fast growth of infants requires an energy-dense diet with a higher percentage of kilocalories from fat than is needed by older children.

Fatty acids are the major constituent of triglycerides and are important in the diet to maintain health.18 The body can synthesize almost all fatty acids, except two that the body needs for basic functions:

- Linoleic acid (LA), the primary member of a group of fatty acids named omega-6 fatty acids
- Alpha-linolenic acid (ALA), the primary member of a group of fatty acids named omega-3 fatty acids

Eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) are omega-3 fatty acids found in the tissues of fish. Science has shown that they are important for the following reasons:

- Brain development
- Vision and retina formation
- Immune system functioning
- Heart health maintenance

Also, arachidonic acid (ARA) and DHA are known as long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids (LCPUFAs). They are derived from linoleic acid and alpha-linolenic acid, respectively. They are considered essential fatty acids only when LA and ALA are lacking in the diet.

**Cholesterol**

Cholesterol performs a variety of functions in the body, but it is not an essential nutrient because it is manufactured in the liver. It has been suggested that human milk’s high level of cholesterol stimulates the development of enzymes necessary to prepare the infant’s body to process cholesterol more efficiently in later life,19 but carefully designed, well-controlled studies need to be conducted to confirm this possibility.20

**Functions of Lipids**

Infants require lipids in their diets because lipids supply the following benefits.21

- A major source of energy
- A store of fat that provides padding for the vital organs and serves as a shock absorber
Micronutrients
Micronutrients are essential nutrients required in small amounts to maintain normal metabolism and growth as well as physical health. For infants younger than 6 months of age, human milk or infant formula will supply the necessary micronutrients. After 6 months of age, complementary foods added to the diet will help supply the nutrient needs of growing infants. There are two types of micronutrients:

- Vitamins
- Minerals

Vitamins

Vitamins are essential organic compounds. These noncaloric nutrients are needed in tiny amounts in the diet. They are vital to life and indispensable for bodily functions. Many vitamins are facilitators: they make it possible for the body to metabolize other nutrients. Vitamins fall into two categories,

TABLE 1.2 – Recommended Dietary Reference Intakes for Fat-Soluble Vitamins
(Based on the 2000 Dietary Reference Intakes)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Vitamin A (µg/RAE day)</th>
<th>Vitamin D (µg/IU day)</th>
<th>Vitamin E (α-tocopherol) (mg/day)</th>
<th>Vitamin K (µg/day)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–6 months</td>
<td>AI 400</td>
<td>10 (400)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RDA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UL 600 preformed</td>
<td>25 (1,000)</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–12 months</td>
<td>AI 500</td>
<td>10 (400)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RDA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UL 600 preformed</td>
<td>38 (1,000)</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: n.d. = not determinable. Blank spaces indicate that information is not available.

RAE: Retinol Activity Equivalents (RAE) is used to compare the Vitamin A activity of the different forms of Vitamin A.
IU: IU stands for International Units and is used for the measurement of drugs and vitamins. Webster’s defines IU as a quantity of a biologic (such as a vitamin) that produces a particular biological effect agreed upon as an international standard.
based on their solubility characteristics: fat-soluble and water-soluble. Each category will be discussed below, as well as the amount of each vitamin required by infants. Tables 1.2 and 1.3 list the fat- and water-soluble vitamins needed for an infant’s optimal development.

Fat-Soluble Vitamins
The fat-soluble vitamins (A, D, E, and K) have the following characteristics:
- Dissolve in lipids
- Require bile for absorption
- Are stored in the liver and fatty tissues
- Become toxic in excess

Table 1.2 (see page 10) indicates the recommended DRIs for fat-soluble vitamins for children ages 0 to 12 months old.

Vitamin A

Vitamin A refers to a group of compounds, including preformed types of the vitamin found in animal products and carotenes, which are precursors of the vitamin A found in plants. Good sources of active vitamin A are liver and fish oil. Butter and eggs provide some vitamin A to the diet. Many vegetables (yellow vegetables such as sweet potatoes and carrots, and green leafy vegetables such as spinach) and fruits (apricots, cantaloupes, and peaches) contain the vitamin A precursor beta-carotene.

Milk and milk products and fortified cereals also can be good sources.

Vitamin A Deficiency
Vitamin A deficiency can result from insufficient vitamin A intake, infection, or malnutrition, and it can lead to damage of varying severity to the eyes, poor bone growth, loss of appetite, increased susceptibility to infections, and skin changes. Vitamin A deficiency is rare in the United States. Although there are no current guidelines for infants, nursing mothers should increase their consumption of foods rich in vitamin A.

Vitamin D

Functions of Vitamin D
Vitamin D is essential for the following:
- Skeletal health
  - Properly formed bones
  - Utilization of calcium and phosphorus in the body
- Extraskeletal health
  - Enhancement of nearly all the cells in the immune system
  - Improvement of muscle function and strength
  - Promotion of heart health

Sources of Vitamin D
Vitamin D is manufactured in the skin by the action of ultraviolet light from the sun on chemicals naturally present in the skin. Fatty fish, liver, egg yolks, and fortified milk products are the major dietary sources of vitamin D.

There is evidence that limited sunlight exposure prevents rickets in many breastfed infants; however, due to the increased risk of skin cancer from early exposure to sunlight, the AAP recommends that infants less than 6 months of age not be overexposed to direct sunlight in efforts to increase
vitamin D concentrations. When outdoors, an infant should always be protected with clothing and hats. The parent or caregiver should talk with the health care provider about the use of pediatric sunscreen.

Individuals with darker skin pigmentation and those who live in northern latitudes with less sunlight do receive the benefits of vitamin D synthesis from sunlight. However, the amount of sun exposure needed to receive adequate vitamin D to meet the recommended daily dose for these infants is longer than for others and could be harmful to the skin. Therefore, parents or caregivers for either dark-skinned infants or those in northern latitudes should discuss with their health care provider the adequate dose of vitamin D supplement needed for meeting the daily requirement.

**Vitamin D for Breastfed and Formula-fed Infants**
- **For exclusively breastfeeding or partially breastfeeding infants.** Because human milk does not contain enough vitamin D (typically 25 IU/L or less), infants should receive a minimum intake of 400 IU of vitamin D per day starting soon after birth.
- **For formula-fed infants.** Most infant formulas contain 1.5 mg (62 IU) of vitamin D/100 Kcal or 10 mg/L (400 IU/L). Therefore, if the infant consumes at least 1 liter (33.8 ounces) of formula per day, he or she does not need additional supplements.

A child 1 year of age or older needs no further supplementation if weaned to at least the same amount of vitamin D–fortified milk.

**Vitamin D Deficiency**
An infant who does not receive sufficient vitamin D through diet, sun exposure, or supplementation can develop vitamin D deficiency. When this happens, the infant’s intestines cannot absorb adequate amounts of calcium and phosphorus. As a result, mineralization of the infant’s bones and teeth is impaired. Rickets is an example of a vitamin D deficiency disease. Sometimes rickets has no symptoms, but often it manifests as varying degrees of bone pain, swollen joints, poor growth, and bowing of the legs or knocked knees.

**Vitamin E**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AI for Infants</th>
<th>µg/day of α-tocopherol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–6 months</td>
<td>4 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–12 months</td>
<td>5 mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Functions of Vitamin E**
Vitamin E, which is also identified as α-tocopherol, is an antioxidant and performs the following roles:
- Protects vitamin A and essential fatty acids from oxidation
- Prevents the breakdown of tissues

**Sources of Vitamin E**
Vitamin E sources for older infants include vegetable oils and their products; wheat germ; and whole-grain breads, cereals, and other fortified or enriched grain products. Other products such as meat, poultry, fish, eggs, and milk products contribute smaller percentages. Vitamin E can be destroyed through processing and cooking. ► See also: Chapter 8, “Home-Prepared Food,” pages 194–197.

**Vitamin E Deficiency**
Vitamin E deficiency is rare because the vitamin is available in many foods. The transfer of vitamin E takes place from mother to infant in the last weeks of pregnancy. Premature babies who are born before that transfer takes place may be at risk for rupture of the red blood cells, and they may become anemic.

**Vitamin K**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AI for Infants</th>
<th>µg/day of vitamin K</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–6 months</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–12 months</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Functions of Vitamin K**
Vitamin K is vital for the following:
- Proper blood clotting
- Aiding in bone mineralization for bone formation
**Sources of Vitamin K**

Human milk has a low content of vitamin K. Although bacteria normally found in the intestines manufacture this vitamin, this process is not fully developed in the early stages of an infant’s life; therefore, a newborn is at risk for vitamin K deficiency. The AAP recommends that vitamin K be given to all newborns as a single, intramuscular dose of 0.5 to 1 milligram.\(^9\)

For older infants and children, sources of vitamin K include green leafy vegetables such as cooked spinach and collard greens, and canola and soybean oils. Lettuce, broccoli, and Brussels sprouts and other foods of the cabbage family provide some vitamin K. Like vitamin D, vitamin K can be obtained from nonfood sources: vitamin K can come from intestinal bacteria.

**Vitamin K Deficiency**

Babies are born with a very small amount of vitamin K stored in their bodies. Immediately, they must be given a vitamin K supplement to help their blood clot normally and avoid the risk of serious bleeding, or hemorrhage. Infants who do not receive the vitamin K shot at birth can develop vitamin K deficiency bleeding (VKDB) at any time up to 6 months of age. An infant with VKDB will bleed into his or her intestines, or into the brain, which can lead to brain damage and even death.\(^11\)

---

**Water-Soluble Vitamins**

Water-soluble vitamins (B and C) have the following characteristics:

- Dissolve in water
- Are easily absorbed
- Are excreted through the urine
- Are not stored extensively in tissues
- Seldom reach toxic levels

In food preparation, these vitamins need special consideration to avoid being lost or destroyed. Table 1.3 (see page 14) indicates the recommended DRIs for water-soluble vitamins for children ages 0 to 12 months old. ▶ See also: Chapter 5, “Tips for Choosing and Preparing Vegetables,” page 129.

### Vitamin B1 (Thiamin)

**AI for Infants**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Amount of Thiamin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–6 months</td>
<td>0.2 mg/day of thiamin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–12 months</td>
<td>0.3 mg/day of thiamin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Functions of Vitamin B1 (Thiamin)**

Infants need vitamin B1 for the following functions:

- To help the body release energy from carbohydrates during metabolism
- To support a healthy nervous system

**Sources of Vitamin B1 (Thiamin)**

Food sources of vitamin B1 include pork and pork products, whole-grain cereals, and legumes.

**Vitamin B1 (Thiamin) Deficiency**

Vitamin B1 deficiency is rare, but it can occur in breastfed infants of thiamin-deficient mothers or when an infant’s intestines do not absorb an adequate amount of the vitamin. This deficiency can cause a disease called beriberi.\(^2\) Thiamin deficiency usually presents by 2–3 months of age. The symptoms vary clinically and can include the following:

- **Cardiomegaly**: enlarged heart
- **Cyanosis**: blue discoloration due to lack of oxygen
- **Dyspnea**: shortness of breath
- **Tachycardia**: elevated heart rate
- **Vomiting**

---

**Should All Infants Get a Vitamin K Shot at Birth?**

Yes. Infants do not have enough vitamin K at birth, and there is only a little vitamin K in human milk. Thus, it is very important that all infants get a vitamin K shot.

Newborns delivered at home should be referred to a healthcare provider to discuss how and when they can receive vitamin K.

Vitamin B3 (Niacin)

**AI for Infants**
- 0–6 months: 2 mg/day of preformed niacin
- 7–12 months: 4 mg/day of niacin equivalents

**Functions of Vitamin B3 (Niacin)**
Vitamin B3 helps the body release energy from protein, fat, and carbohydrates during metabolism.

**Sources of Vitamin B3 (Niacin)**
Food sources of vitamin B3 include poultry, meat, fish, potatoes, and whole-grain breads, fortified cereals, and other fortified or enriched grain products.

**Vitamin B3 (Niacin) Deficiency**
Niacin deficiency causes the disease pellagra. Symptoms include diarrhea, dermatitis, dementia, and ultimately death. The disease still occurs among poorly nourished people.

Vitamin B2 (Riboflavin)

**AI for Infants**
- 0–6 months: 0.3 mg/day of riboflavin
- 7–12 months: 0.4 mg/day of riboflavin

**Functions of Vitamin B2 (Riboflavin)**
Vitamin B2 helps the body release energy from protein, fat, and carbohydrates during metabolism.

**Sources of Vitamin B2 (Riboflavin)**
Food sources of vitamin B2 include organ meats, dairy products, green leafy vegetables, and whole-grain breads, fortified cereals, and other fortified or enriched grain products.

**Vitamin B2 (Riboflavin) Deficiency**
Riboflavin deficiency has not been reported among infants in the United States, although breastfed infants whose mothers are on a vegan or macrobiotic diet that excludes dairy products, red meat, and poultry may be at risk. Riboflavin deficiency can inhibit growth. Deficiency symptoms include skin changes and dermatitis, anemia, and lesions in the mouth.

**TABLE 1.3 – Recommended Dietary Reference Intakes for Water-Soluble Vitamins**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Vitamin B1 (mg/day)</th>
<th>Vitamin B2 (mg/day)</th>
<th>Vitamin B3 (NE/day)</th>
<th>Vitamin B6 (mg/day)</th>
<th>Vitamin B9 (µg/day)</th>
<th>Vitamin B12 (µg/day)</th>
<th>Vitamin C (mg/day)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–6 months</td>
<td>Al</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RDA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–12 months</td>
<td>Al</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RDA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Blank spaces indicate that information is not available. Tolerable Upper Intake Level (UL) is not available for this population.

Vitamin B9 (Folate)

At times, vitamin B9 is referred to as folic acid, but there is a difference between the two. Both are forms of the same B vitamin, but they come from different sources. Folate occurs naturally in foods; folic acid is a synthetic form of the vitamin that is added to foods and supplements.

Sources of Vitamin B9 (Folate)
Good sources of vitamin B9 include green leafy vegetables, legumes, oranges, cantaloupes, eggs, and fortified cereals or enriched grain products. Folate can be lost from foods during preparation, cooking, or storage.

Vitamin B9 (Folate) Deficiency
Deficiencies of folate cause anemia, diminished immunity, and abnormal digestive function. Researchers have found that proper maternal folate intake protects infants from neural tube defects (NTDs), including spina bifida.

Vitamin B12 (Cobalamin)

Vitamin B12 (Cobalamin) Deficiency
The amount of vitamin B12 in an infant’s body at birth is directly related to the mother’s stores of vitamin B12 and to how many previous times she has been pregnant. After birth, the vitamin B intake of an infant who is exclusively breastfed...
Functions of Vitamin C (Ascorbic Acid)
The major functions of vitamin C (ascorbic acid) include the following:

- Forming collagen, a protein that gives structure to bones, cartilage, muscle, blood vessels, and other connective tissue
- Maintaining capillaries, bones, and teeth
- Healing wounds
- Helping the body resist infections
- Enhancing the absorption of iron

Sources of Vitamin C (Ascorbic Acid)
Good sources of vitamin C (ascorbic acid) for older infants include vegetables such as tomatoes, broccoli, and potatoes; citrus fruits such as oranges and mandarin oranges; papayas, cantaloupes, depends on the mother’s intake and stores of the vitamin. As long as the mother’s diet has adequate amounts, the infant will receive adequate amounts through her milk. However, infants of breastfeeding mothers who follow strict vegetarian or vegan diets or eat very few dairy products, meat, or eggs are at risk for developing vitamin B12 deficiency by 4–6 months of age. Signs of deficiency include failure to thrive, movement disorders, delayed development, and megaloblastic anemia. See also: Chapter 6, “Vitamin B12,” page 158.

Vitamin C (Ascorbic Acid)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>AI for Infants</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–6 months</td>
<td>40 mg/day of vitamin C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–12 months</td>
<td>50 mg/day of vitamin C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A Shopping List Rich in Vitamins and Minerals
An infant will not be ready for these foods for several months, but parents and caregivers should be aware of the vitamin-rich complementary foods available when their infant is ready to eat solid foods.

Vitamin-rich foods
- **Vitamin A**: beef liver, sweet potatoes, carrots, cantaloupes, spinach, winter squash, tomatoes, peaches, butternut squash
- **Vitamin B1 (thiamin)**: black beans, green peas, fish, oatmeal, meat, whole wheat bread, cabbage, summer squash
- **Vitamin B2 (riboflavin)**: beef liver, enriched cereal, yogurt, cottage cheese, meat, mushrooms, spinach
- **Vitamin B3 (niacin)**: enriched cereal, fish, lean meats, mushrooms, potatoes
- **Vitamin B6 (pyridoxine)**: potatoes, bananas, turkey breast, spinach, fish, navy beans, broccoli, squash, fortified grain products
- **Vitamin B9 (folate)**: spinach, asparagus, turnip greens, beets, oranges, cantaloupes, broccoli, legumes, summer squash, fortified grain products
- **Vitamin B12 (cobalamin)**: chicken liver, fish, enriched cereal, meat, Swiss cheese, cottage cheese, yogurt, eggs
- **Vitamin C (ascorbic acid)**: cantaloupes, oranges, broccoli, Brussels sprouts, tomatoes, potatoes, cabbage
- **Vitamin D**: fish, enriched cereal, fortified yogurt, eggs
- **Vitamin E**: sunflower seed oil, wheat germ, safflower oil, cottonseed oil, corn oil, peanut butter, canola oil, avocado
- **Vitamin K**: kale, spinach, cabbage, salad greens, asparagus, soybeans, plantains, kiwi

Mineral-rich foods
- **Calcium**: cheese, plain yogurt, calcium-set tofu, turnip greens (cooked)
- **Iron**: fish, enriched cereal, beef liver, spinach, navy beans, Swiss chard, meat, black beans
- **Zinc**: fish, enriched cereal, meat, plain yogurt
INFANT NUTRITION AND FEEDING

depends on the mother's intake and stores of the vitamin. As long as the mother's diet has adequate amounts, the infant will receive adequate amounts through her milk. However, infants of breastfeeding mothers who follow strict vegetarian or vegan diets or eat very few dairy products, meat, or eggs are at risk for developing vitamin B12 deficiency by 4–6 months of age. Signs of deficiency include failure to thrive, movement disorders, delayed development, and megaloblastic anemia.

See also: Chapter 6, “Vitamin B12,” page 158.

Vitamin C (Ascorbic Acid)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Calcium (mg/day)</th>
<th>Chromium (µg/day)</th>
<th>Copper (µg/day)</th>
<th>Fluoride (mg/day)</th>
<th>Iodine (µg/day)</th>
<th>Iron (mg/day)</th>
<th>Magnesium (mg/day)</th>
<th>Manganese (mg/day)</th>
<th>Phosphorus (mg/day)</th>
<th>Selenium (µg/day)</th>
<th>Zinc (mg/day)</th>
<th>Sodium (g/day)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–6 months</td>
<td>AI 200</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>0.003</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RDA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UL 1,000</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–12 months</td>
<td>AI 260</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>275</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RDA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UL 1,500</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Blank spaces indicate that information is not available. Tolerable Upper Intake Level (UL) is not available for this population.

and strawberries. Use the minimum time required to cook fresh vegetables and fruits to reduce the destruction of vitamin C in the food.

**Vitamin C (Ascorbic Acid) Deficiency**
Vitamin C (ascorbic acid) deficiency can eventually lead to scurvy, a serious disease with the following symptoms in infants: poor bone growth, bleeding, and anemia.36

**Minerals**
Minerals come from inorganic, or nonliving, sources, such as soil and water. For an infant to grow and develop normally, the infant needs an adequate supply of both major minerals and trace minerals. Major minerals are not more important than trace minerals. Both are essential. It is simply that major minerals are present in larger quantities in the body and therefore needed in greater amounts in the diet. Major minerals include calcium and phosphorus, and trace minerals include iron and zinc. Table 1.4 (see page 17) lists the key major and trace minerals and the amounts needed for an infant’s optimal development.

**Calcium**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>AI for Infants</th>
<th>RDA for Infants</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–6 months</td>
<td>200 mg/day of calcium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–12 months</td>
<td>260 mg/day of calcium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Functions of Calcium**
Calcium plays an important role in the following body processes:
- Bone and tooth development
- Blood clotting
- Intracellular signaling and hormonal secretion
- Critical muscle and nerve function

**Sources of Calcium**
Older infants can obtain additional calcium from dairy products such as yogurt and cheese; vegetables such as legumes and some green leafy vegetables, including collards, kale, mustard greens, and turnip greens; meat; poultry; fish; eggs; fortified or enriched grain products; and tofu (if the food label indicates it was made with calcium sulfate).

Nearly all of the body's calcium is stored in the bones and teeth. Calcium supports bone structure and function. A small portion of the body's calcium supports the muscles and nerves. Bone undergoes constant remodeling, with constant **bone resorption**, or breakdown, of calcium in existing bone and **bone deposition**, or depositing, of calcium to make new bone. The depositing of calcium to create new bone is aided by the presence of other nutrients, such as vitamin D. In an infant, vitamin D must be available in the body for the infant to retain and use the calcium consumed.37

**Calcium Deficiency and Lead Poisoning**
Calcium deficiency is related to increased blood lead levels and perhaps increased vulnerability to the adverse effects of lead in the body.38 Infants at risk for lead poisoning should receive adequate calcium in their diet.

**Iron**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>AI for Infants</th>
<th>RDA for Infants</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–6 months</td>
<td>0.27 mg/day of iron</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–12 months</td>
<td>11 mg/day of iron</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0–12 months</td>
<td>40 mg/day of iron</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Functions of Iron**
The following are the major functions of iron:
- Proper formation and growth of healthy blood cells
- Transportation of oxygen throughout the body
- Prevention of iron-deficiency anemia

Most of the iron in the body is a component of two proteins: hemoglobin in red blood cells and myoglobin in muscle cells. Hemoglobin in the red blood cells carries oxygen from the lungs to tissues...
Infant Nutrition and Feeding

and he or she is not receiving iron-containing complementary foods, the recommendation remains the same as for fully breastfed infants.

**For infant formula-fed infants.** Iron-fortified formula should be used from birth through the entire first year of life. ➤ See also: Chapter 4, “Iron-Fortified Infant Formula,” page 94.

Iron Deficiency

The symptoms of iron deficiency anemia include irritability, pallor, lethargy, and poor food intake. Iron deficiency in infants and older children may be associated with irreversible behavioral abnormalities and abnormal functioning of the brain. Elevated blood lead levels may interfere with the utilization of iron, causing hypochromic normocytic anemia (lower than normal of paler red blood cells).

**NOTE:** If the infant has signs of iron deficiency, refer him/her to a health care provider immediately.

### Two Kinds of Iron

Iron in your food occurs in two major forms:

- **Heme iron.** This form of iron is well absorbed into the body. It is found primarily in animal food sources, including red meat, liver, poultry, and fish. Commercially prepared infant foods in the form of individual meats contain more heme iron than the combinations of meat and other ingredients.

- **Nonheme iron.** This form is not as well absorbed into the body. It is found in foods from plants. It comes in iron-fortified breads, cereals, or other grain products; legumes; fruits; and green leafy vegetables. Consumption of vitamin C–rich foods and meat, fish, or poultry (which contain the absorption-enhancing MFP factor) increases the absorption of nonheme iron.

### Iron for Breastfed and Formula-Fed Infants

To ensure that breastfeeding infants will not be affected by iron deficiency, the AAP recommends:

- **For exclusively breastfed infants.** Iron in human milk is highly bioavailable, but it contains little iron, so infants who are exclusively breastfed may be at increased risk of iron deficiency after 4 months of age. Parents and caregivers should be encouraged to talk with their health care providers about iron supplementation of 1mg/kg per day of oral iron beginning at 4 months of age until appropriate iron-containing complementary foods are introduced into the diet.

- **For partially breastfed infants.** If more than half of the infant’s daily feedings are from human milk

### Sources of Iron

Iron passes from mother to infant in the last 3 months of pregnancy. Most full-term infants are born with adequate iron stores, which are not depleted until about 4–6 months of age. In comparison, preterm infants are at greater risk for iron deficiency at birth.

Sources of iron for older infants and children include meat, liver, poultry, legumes such as navy beans, fortified or enriched grain products such as pasta, whole-grain breads and cereals, and green leafy vegetables. The ability to absorb the iron in food depends on the infant’s iron status and the form of iron in the food. Absorption of iron from the diet is relatively low when body iron stores are high, and absorption may increase when iron stores are low.

It is important to note that vitamin C (ascorbic acid) helps a food’s natural iron remain absorption-friendly and helps enhance the iron’s uptake by the body’s cells.

Sources of iron for infants and children include meat, liver, poultry, legumes such as navy beans, fortified or enriched grain products such as pasta, whole-grain breads and cereals, and green leafy vegetables. The ability to absorb the iron in food depends on the infant’s iron status and the form of iron in the food. Absorption of iron from the diet is relatively low when body iron stores are high, and absorption may increase when iron stores are low.

It is important to note that vitamin C (ascorbic acid) helps a food’s natural iron remain absorption-friendly and helps enhance the iron’s uptake by the body’s cells.

Iron for Breastfed and Formula-Fed Infants

To ensure that breastfeeding infants will not be affected by iron deficiency, the AAP recommends:

- **For exclusively breastfed infants.** Iron in human milk is highly bioavailable, but it contains little iron, so infants who are exclusively breastfed may be at increased risk of iron deficiency after 4 months of age. Parents and caregivers should be encouraged to talk with their health care providers about iron supplementation of 1mg/kg per day of oral iron beginning at 4 months of age until appropriate iron-containing complementary foods are introduced into the diet.

- **For partially breastfed infants.** If more than half of the infant’s daily feedings are from human milk

### Two Kinds of Iron

Iron in your food occurs in two major forms:

- **Heme iron.** This form of iron is well absorbed into the body. It is found primarily in animal food sources, including red meat, liver, poultry, and fish. Commercially prepared infant foods in the form of individual meats contain more heme iron than the combinations of meat and other ingredients.

- **Nonheme iron.** This form is not as well absorbed into the body. It is found in foods from plants. It comes in iron-fortified breads, cereals, or other grain products; legumes; fruits; and green leafy vegetables. Consumption of vitamin C–rich foods and meat, fish, or poultry (which contain the absorption-enhancing MFP factor) increases the absorption of nonheme iron.

### Iron for Breastfed and Formula-Fed Infants

To ensure that breastfeeding infants will not be affected by iron deficiency, the AAP recommends:

- **For exclusively breastfed infants.** Iron in human milk is highly bioavailable, but it contains little iron, so infants who are exclusively breastfed may be at increased risk of iron deficiency after 4 months of age. Parents and caregivers should be encouraged to talk with their health care providers about iron supplementation of 1mg/kg per day of oral iron beginning at 4 months of age until appropriate iron-containing complementary foods are introduced into the diet.

- **For partially breastfed infants.** If more than half of the infant’s daily feedings are from human milk

### Iron Deficiency

The symptoms of iron deficiency anemia include irritability, pallor, lethargy, and poor food intake. Iron deficiency in infants and older children may be associated with irreversible behavioral abnormalities and abnormal functioning of the brain. Elevated blood lead levels may interfere with the utilization of iron, causing hypochromic normocytic anemia (lower than normal of paler red blood cells).

**NOTE:** If the infant has signs of iron deficiency, refer him/her to a health care provider immediately.

MFP factor: A substance in meat, fish, and poultry that promotes the absorption of nonheme iron from other foods eaten with them
**Zinc**

**AI for Infants**
0–6 months 2 mg/day of zinc

**UL for Infants**
0–6 months 4 mg/day of zinc
7–12 months 5 mg/day of zinc

**RDA for Infants**
7–12 months 3 mg/day of zinc

**Functions of Zinc**
Zinc, an essential mineral, is needed in small quantities in the human body. Zinc affects behavior and learning, assists in immune function, and is essential to wound healing, taste perception, and growth and development in infants.

It works with proteins in every organ, helping more than 300 enzymes to perform the following functions: 

- To make parts of the cell’s genetic material
- To make heme in hemoglobin
- To help the pancreas with its digestive functions
- To help metabolize carbohydrates, protein, and fat
- To liberate vitamin A from storage in the liver
- To dispose of damaging free radicals

Daily adequate intake of this mineral is important because there is no storage system for zinc in the body.

**Sources of Zinc**
Top food sources of zinc include meat and seafood. Among plant sources, some legumes and whole grains are rich in zinc, but the zinc is not as well absorbed into the body as when it comes from meat. That is because fiber and phytates bind, or hold, zinc as well as iron, preventing absorption into the body. Therefore, diets high in these products put the consumer at risk for zinc deficiency.

**Avoiding Lead Toxicity**
The AAP recommends these guidelines from the CDC to prevent lead exposure before it occurs:

- The local health department should be contacted about testing paint and dust in the home for lead if the home was built before 1978.
- Avoid common home renovation activities like sanding, cutting, and demolition, which can create hazardous lead dust and chips by disturbing lead-based paint.
- Renovation activities should be performed by certified renovators who are trained by Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)–approved training providers to follow lead-safe work practices.
- If paint chips or dust are visible in windowsills or on floors because of peeling paint, these areas should be cleaned regularly with a wet mop.
- Shoes should be wiped on a mat or removed before a person enters the home, especially if someone works in an occupation where lead is used.
- Recalled toys and toy jewelry should be removed from children. To stay current with recalls, visit the U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission’s website: [http://www.cpsc.gov](http://www.cpsc.gov).
- As part of a healthy diet, make sure to provide iron, calcium, and vitamin C–rich foods.

Zinc Deficiency
Although severe zinc deficiencies have not been seen in developed countries, they do occur in some groups, such as infants. Zinc deficiency not only affects growth but also alters the digestive function and causes diarrhea, which worsens malnutrition. Zinc deficiency drastically impairs the immune response, making infections likely.

Zinc and Lead Poisoning
Zinc competes with lead for absorption in the gastrointestinal tract, so some may think that ingesting zinc may help prevent lead poisoning. However, high levels of dietary zinc or zinc supplementation have not been proven effective in preventing or treating lead toxicity.

Fluoride

| AI for Infants | 0–6 months | 0.01 mg/day of fluoride |
| 7–12 months   | 0.5 mg/day of fluoride |
| UL for Infants| 0–6 months | 0.7 mg/day of fluoride |
| 7–12 months   | 0.9 mg/day of fluoride |

Functions of Fluoride
Fluoride is not considered an essential nutrient, but it is a beneficial mineral. If consumed at appropriate levels, fluoride decreases the susceptibility of the teeth to dental caries (tooth decay). When allowed to come in contact with teeth and to some extent when consumed before teeth erupt, this mineral is incorporated into the mineral portion of the teeth. Once fluoride is an integral part of the tooth structure, teeth are stronger and more resistant to decay.

Sources of Fluoride
Fluoride is present in small but varying concentrations in water supplies and in plant and animal foods. U.S. Public Health Service recommends a fluoride concentration of 0.7 mg/L (parts per million [ppm]) to maintain caries prevention benefits and reduce the risk of dental fluorosis. The major dietary sources for infants are fluoridated water and some marine fish. Human milk contains little fluoride even in areas where the mother’s intake of fluoridated water is adequate.

The AAP and the CDC recommend no fluoride supplementation for infants under 6 months of age. After that time, infants need appropriate fluoride supplementation if local drinking water contains less than 0.3 parts per million (ppm) of fluoride. Parents or caregivers should address these concerns with the health care provider.

Fluoride Deficiency and Toxicity
When an infant or young child has too little fluoride intake, dental caries can develop because the tooth enamel is more susceptible to the effects of bacteria. On the other hand, too much fluoride can result in fluorosis. Fluorosis changes the appearance of the tooth enamel, which appears mostly as white lacy spots. Fluorosis occurs only during tooth development, and it is irreversible.

To prevent fluorosis, people in areas with fluoridated water should limit other sources of fluoride for infants and children, such as fluoride supplements, unless prescribed by a physician or a dentist.

Sodium

| AI for Infants | 0–6 months | 0.11 g/day of sodium |
| 7–12 months   | 0.37 g/day of sodium |

Functions of Sodium
Sodium is a major part of the body’s fluid and electrolyte balance system because it is the chief ion used to maintain the volume of fluid outside the cell. Sodium also is required for the following body functions:

- Maintaining acid-base balance
- Ensuring muscle contraction and nerve transmission

Sources of Sodium
Healthy, full-term infants who consume primarily human milk or infant formula receive an adequate amount of sodium for growth. Added salt is not recommended for infants younger than 12 months.
Water

**AI for Infants**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Water Intake (L/day)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–6 months</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–12 months</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** Total water intake includes all water contained in food, beverages, and drinking water.

Water is key to survival and is the main ingredient in our bodies. Although everyone must stay hydrated, infants under 6 months of age should not be given extra water.

The total body water (TBW) as a percentage (range) of total body weight in infants is the following:

- **0–6 months**: 74 (64–84)
- **6 months–1 year**: 60 (57–64)

The total amount of fluid in the body is kept in balance by delicate mechanisms. Imbalances such as dehydration and water intoxication can occur, but the balance is restored as promptly as the body can manage it. The body controls both intake and excretion to maintain water equilibrium.

**Functions of Water**

Water is responsible for the following vital functions in the body:

- Incorporated into the chemical structures of compounds that form the cells, tissues, and organs, and serves as the solvent for amino acids, glucose, minerals, and many other substances needed by the cells
- Participates actively in chemical and metabolic reactions
- Aids in maintaining body temperature
- Transports nutrients throughout the body
- Cleanses the tissues and blood of waste generated during metabolism, before buildup of toxic concentrations
- Acts as a lubricant around joints
- Serves as a shock absorber inside the eyes, spinal cord, joints, and amniotic sac surrounding a fetus in the womb

**Sodium Deficiency**

A deficiency of sodium would be harmful, but few diets lack sodium. Most foods include more salt than is needed. The kidneys filter the surplus sodium out of the blood and into the urine. The kidneys also can store sodium and release it into the bloodstream in the event of deficiency.

**Sources of Water**

Water is formed in the body by chemical reactions that metabolize proteins, fats, and carbohydrates. Supplemental water is not necessary for infants, even in hot, dry climates, and may have severe consequences if given in excess. In early infancy, human milk or infant formula provides enough water for a healthy infant to replace water losses from the skin, lungs, feces, and urine. When the older infant starts eating complementary foods, additional water may be required.

Conditions that cause rapid fluid loss, such as hot weather, vomiting, diarrhea, or sweating, can propel an infant into life-threatening dehydration. In these cases, consult with a health care provider.

➤ **See also:** Chapter 8, “Parasitic, Bacterial, and Viral Contaminants,” pages 201–202.

**Vitamin and Mineral Supplements**

Vitamins and minerals are important for infant growth and development. Most are obtained through appropriate daily nutritional intake. Therefore, a parent or caregiver should not supplement an infant’s diet with vitamins or minerals during the first year of life unless prescribed by a health care provider. If a supplement is prescribed, it is important that only the dosage prescribed be given to the infant and that instructions from the health care provider are carefully followed. Excessive amounts of certain vitamins and minerals, in the form of drops or pills, can be toxic or even fatal to infants.
TABLE 1.5 – Nutrients: Function, Deficiency and Toxicity Symptoms, and Major Food Sources

This table provides a quick look at the key nutrients in this guidebook with their function, deficiency symptoms, toxicity symptoms, and the major food sources in which they occur.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nutrient</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Deficiency symptoms</th>
<th>Toxicity symptoms</th>
<th>Major food sources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protein</strong></td>
<td>Anabolism of tissue proteins; helps maintain fluid balance; energy source; formation of immunoglobulins; maintenance of acid-base balance; important part of enzymes and hormones</td>
<td>Kwashiorkor-edema; reddish pigmentation of hair and skin; fatty liver; retardation of growth in infants; diarrhea; dermatosis; decreased T-cell lymphocytes with increased secondary infections</td>
<td>Azotemia; acidosis; hyperammonemia</td>
<td>Meat; fish; poultry; eggs; dairy products (cheese, yogurt); legumes (soy, garbanzo, and other beans); quinoa, tofu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Carbohydrate</strong></td>
<td>Major energy source; protein sparing; necessary for normal fat metabolism; glucose is the sole source of energy for the brain; many sources also provide dietary fiber</td>
<td>Ketosis</td>
<td></td>
<td>Grain products (whole-grain breads, cereals, rice, pasta, other fortified or enriched grain products); starchy vegetables (potatoes, corn, legumes); fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fat</strong></td>
<td>Concentrated energy source; protein sparing; insulation for temperature maintenance; supplies essential fatty acids; carries fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E, K</td>
<td>Eczema; low growth rate in infants; lowered resistance in infection; hair loss</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dairy products (yogurt, cheese); eggs; vegetable oils; some plant products (avocados); meat; poultry; fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vitamin D</strong></td>
<td>Necessary for the formation of normal bone; promotes the absorption of calcium and phosphorus in the intestines</td>
<td>Rickets (symptoms: costochondral beading, epiphyseal enlargement, cranial bossing, bowed legs, persistently open anterior fontanelle)</td>
<td>Abnormally high blood calcium (hypercalcemia); retarded growth; vomiting; muscle weakness; nephrocalcinosis</td>
<td>Fatty fish; fish and liver oil; egg yolks; fortified dairy products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vitamin A</strong></td>
<td>Preserves integrity of epithelial cells; formation of rhodopsin for vision in dim light; necessary for wound healing, growth, and normal immune function</td>
<td>Night blindness; dry eyes; poor bone growth; impaired resistance to infection; follicular hyperkeratosis of the skin</td>
<td>Fatigue; night sweats; vertigo; headache; dry and fissured skin, lips; hyperpigmentation; retarded growth; bone pain; abdominal pain; vomiting; jaundice; hypercalcemia</td>
<td>Liver; eggs; dairy products; orange, red, green, and dark yellow vegetables (sweet potatoes, carrots, spinach); fruits (apricots, cantaloupes, peaches)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrient</td>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Deficiency symptoms</td>
<td>Toxicity symptoms</td>
<td>Major food sources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>Functions as an antioxidant in the tissues; may also have a role as a coenzyme; neuromuscular function; immune function</td>
<td>Hemolytic anemia in premature infants; hyporeflexia, and spinocerebellar and retinal degeneration</td>
<td>May interfere with vitamin K activity leading to prolonged clotting and bleeding time; in anemia, suppresses the normal hematologic response to iron</td>
<td>Vegetable oils (sunflower, cottonseed, canola, olive, wheat germ, soybean, corn); unprocessed cereal grains; meat (especially the fatty portion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin K</td>
<td>Catalyzes prothrombin synthesis; required in the synthesis of other blood-clotting factors; synthesis by intestinal bacteria</td>
<td>Prolonged bleeding and prothrombin time; hemorrhagic manifestations (especially in newborns)</td>
<td>Possible hemolytic anemia; hyperbilirubinemia (jaundice)</td>
<td>Green leafy vegetables (collards, spinach, lettuce) and other green vegetables (broccoli, Brussels sprouts, cabbage); vegetable oils (soybean, canola, olive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ascorbic acid</td>
<td>Essential in the synthesis of collagen (thus strengthens tissues and improves wound healing and resistance to infection); iron absorption and transport; water-soluble antioxidant; functions in folacin metabolism</td>
<td>Scurvy; pinpoint peripheral hemorrhages; bleeding gums; loose teeth; osmotic diarrhea</td>
<td>Nausea; abdominal cramps; diarrhea; possible formation of kidney stones</td>
<td>Fruits (citrus, papayas, cantaloupes, strawberries); vegetables (potatoes, Brussels sprouts, cabbage, broccoli, cauliflower, spinach, red and green peppers)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B12</td>
<td>Essential for biosynthesis of nucleic acids and nucleoproteins; red blood cell maturation; involved with folate metabolism; central nervous system metabolism</td>
<td>Megaloblastic anemia; loss of appetite; lethargy; vomiting; diarrhea; neurologic deterioration</td>
<td>Masking of B12 deficiency symptoms in those with pernicious anemia not receiving cyanocobalamin</td>
<td>Meat; liver; fish; poultry; cheese; eggs; fortified cereal and soy products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folate</td>
<td>Essential in the biosynthesis of nucleic acids; necessary for the normal maturation of red blood cells</td>
<td>Poor growth; megaloblastic anemia (concurrent deficiency of vitamin B12 should be suspected); impaired cellular immunity</td>
<td>Masking of B12 deficiency symptoms in those with pernicious anemia not receiving cyanocobalamin</td>
<td>Liver; green leafy vegetables; grain products (fortified cereals and other fortified or enriched grain products); legumes; fruits (oranges, cantaloupes, avocados)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyridoxine</td>
<td>Aids in the synthesis and breakdown of amino acids and unsaturated fatty acids from essential fatty acids; essential for conversion of tryptophan to niacin; essential for normal growth</td>
<td>Microcytic anemia; convulsions; irritability</td>
<td>Sensory neuropathy with progressive ataxia; photosensitivity</td>
<td>Meat; fish; poultry; legumes; green leafy vegetables; potatoes; noncitrus fruits (bananas)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrient</td>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Deficiency symptoms</td>
<td>Toxicity symptoms</td>
<td>Major food sources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thiamin (vitamin B1)</td>
<td>Combines with phosphorus to form thiamin pyrophosphate (TPP) necessary for metabolism of protein, carbohydrate, and fat; essential for growth, normal appetite, digestion, and healthy nerves</td>
<td>Beriberi; neuritis; edema; restlessness; hoarseness; loss of appetite; cardiac failure</td>
<td></td>
<td>Pork; grain products (whole-grain and enriched breads, fortified cereals and other grain products); legumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riboflavin (vitamin B2)</td>
<td>Essential for growth; plays enzymatic role in tissue respiration and acts as a transporter of hydrogen ions; synthesis of FMN and FAD</td>
<td>Photophobia; cheilosis; glossitis; corneal vascularization; poor growth</td>
<td></td>
<td>Meat; dairy products; egg yolks; legumes; green vegetables; grain products (whole-grain breads, fortified cereals, fortified or enriched grain products)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niacin (vitamin B3)</td>
<td>Part of the enzyme system for oxidation, energy release; necessary for synthesis of glycogen and the synthesis and breakdown of fatty acids</td>
<td>Pellagra (characterized by dermatitis, diarrhea, dementia)</td>
<td>Transient due to the vasodilating effects of niacin (does not occur with niacinamide); flushing; tingling; dizziness; nausea; liver abnormalities; hyperuricemia; decreased LDL and increased HDL cholesterol</td>
<td>Meat; poultry; fish; grain products (whole-grain breads, cereals, fortified or enriched grain products)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>Builds and maintains bones and teeth; essential in clotting of blood; influences transmission of ions across cell membranes; required in nerve transmission, muscle function</td>
<td>Rickets (abnormal development of bones)</td>
<td>Excessive calcification of bone; calcification of soft tissue; hypercalcemia; vomiting; lethargy</td>
<td>Dairy products (yogurt, cheese); vegetables such as legumes and some green leafy vegetables (collards, kale, mustard greens, turnip greens); meat; poultry; fish; eggs; fortified or enriched grain products; tofu (if made with calcium sulfate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>Essential for the formation of hemoglobin and oxygen transport; increases resistance to infection; functions as part of enzymes involved in tissue respiration</td>
<td>Hypochromic microcytic anemia; malabsorption; irritability; anorexia; pallor; lethargy</td>
<td>Hemochromatosis; hemosiderosis; nausea; fatigue; vomiting; headache; grayish color to skin</td>
<td>Meat; liver; legumes; fortified or enriched grain products (whole-grain breads, fortified cereals, pasta); green leafy vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrient</td>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Deficiency symptoms</td>
<td>Toxicity symptoms</td>
<td>Major food sources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>Component of many enzyme systems and insulin; supports normal growth and development during pregnancy and childhood</td>
<td>Decreased wound healing; hypogonadism in males; mild anemia; decreased taste acuity; hair loss; diarrhea; growth failure; skin changes</td>
<td>Acute gastrointestinal upset; vomiting; sweating; dizziness; copper deficiency</td>
<td>Meat; seafood; poultry; grain products (fortified cereals, other fortified or enriched grain products)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluoride</td>
<td>Helps protect teeth against tooth decay; may minimize bone loss</td>
<td>Increased dental caries</td>
<td>Mottled, discolored teeth (severe dental fluorosis)</td>
<td>Fluoridated water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloride</td>
<td>Helps regulate acid-base equilibrium and osmotic pressure of body fluids; component of gastric juices</td>
<td>Usually accompanied by sodium depletion; see Sodium</td>
<td>Increased blood pressure; edema in people with congestive heart failure, kidney disease, or cirrhosis</td>
<td>Sodium chloride (table salt); many vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>Required for normal glucose metabolism; insulin cofactor</td>
<td>Glucose intolerance; impaired growth; peripheral neuropathy; negative nitrogen balance; decreased respiratory quotient</td>
<td>Wilson’s disease (copper deposits in the cornea); cirrhosis of liver; deterioration of neurological processes</td>
<td>Meat; grain products (whole-grain breads, cereals, other fortified or enriched grain products); brewer’s yeast; corn oil; fruits (apples, bananas, grapes); broccoli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>Facilitates the function of many enzymes and iron; may be an integral part of RNA, DNA molecules</td>
<td>Pallor; retarded growth; edema; anorexia</td>
<td>Wilson’s disease (copper deposits in the cornea); cirrhosis of liver; deterioration of neurological processes</td>
<td>Organ meats; poultry; seafood; legumes; grain products (whole-grain breads, cereals, other grain products); cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iodine</td>
<td>Helps regulate thyroid hormones; important in regulation of cellular oxidation and growth</td>
<td>Endemic goiter; depressed thyroid function; cretinism</td>
<td>Possible thyroid enlargement</td>
<td>Seafood; dairy products; iodized salt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>Required for many coenzyme oxidation-phosphorylation reactions, nerve impulse transmissions, and for muscle contraction</td>
<td>Muscle tremors; convulsions; irritability; tetany; hyper- or hypoflexia</td>
<td>Diarrhea; transient hypocalcemia; extremely high intakes can lead to irregular heartbeat and cardiac arrest</td>
<td>Grain products (whole-grain breads, fortified cereals, other grain products); tofu; legumes; green leafy vegetables; bananas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manganese</td>
<td>Essential part of several enzyme systems involved in protein and energy metabolism</td>
<td>Impaired growth; skeletal abnormalities; neonatal ataxia</td>
<td>In extremely high exposure from contamination: severe psychiatric and neurologic disorders</td>
<td>Grain products (whole-grain breads, cereals, other grain products); legumes; green leafy vegetables; fruits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrient</td>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Deficiency symptoms</td>
<td>Toxicity symptoms</td>
<td>Major food sources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molybdenum</td>
<td>Part of the enzymes xanthine oxidase and aldehyde oxidase; possibly helps reduce incidence of dental caries</td>
<td>Gout-like syndrome</td>
<td>Meat; grain products (breads, cereals, other grain products); green leafy vegetables</td>
<td>legumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphorus</td>
<td>Builds and maintains bones and teeth; component of nucleic acids, phospholipids; as coenzyme, functions in energy metabolism; buffers intracellular fluid</td>
<td>Phosphate depletion unusual—affects renal, neuromuscular, and skeletal systems as well as blood chemistries</td>
<td>Hypocalcemia (when parathyroid gland not fully functioning)</td>
<td>Cheese; egg yolks; meat; poultry; fish; grain products (whole-grain breads, cereals, other grain products); legumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium</td>
<td>Helps regulate acid-base equilibrium and osmotic pressure of body fluids; influences muscle activity, especially cardiac muscle</td>
<td>Muscle weakness; decreased intestinal tone and distension; cardiac arrhythmias; respiratory failure</td>
<td>Fruits (especially oranges, bananas); yogurt; meat; fish; poultry; soy products; vegetables (potatoes)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>May be essential to tissue respiration; associated with fat metabolism and vitamin E; acts as an antioxidant</td>
<td>Myalgia; muscle tenderness; cardiac myopathy; increased fragility of red blood cells; degeneration of pancreas</td>
<td>Hair and nail loss; dizziness; tremors; irritation of mucous membranes</td>
<td>Grain products (whole-grain breads, fortified cereals, other fortified or enriched grain products); meat; seafood; vegetables (dependent on soil content)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium</td>
<td>Helps regulate acid-base equilibrium and osmotic pressure of body fluids; plays a role in normal muscle irritability and contractility; influences cell permeability</td>
<td>Nausea; cramps; vomiting; dizziness; apathy; exhaustion; possible respiratory failure</td>
<td>Sodium chloride (table salt); abundant in most foods except fruit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Food should be prepared in both texture and consistency in accordance with the developmental age of the infant. For more information on complementary foods and guidance, see chapter 5 (pages 116–51); for more information on allergic reactions, see chapter 6 (pages 152–78); for definitions of all words in bold, see Glossary, pages 233–40.

Endnotes


11 Food and Nutrition Board, Institute of Medicine of the National Academies, Dietary Reference Intakes for Energy, Carbohydrate, Fiber, Fat, Fatty Acids, Cholesterol, Protein, and Amino Acids (Macronutrients), 620.

12 Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 371.

13 Kleinman, and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 379.


15 Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 376.

16 Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 383.


19 Mahan and Raymond, Krause’s Food & the Nutrition Care Process, 284.


32 “Riboflavin: Fact Sheet for Health Professionals,” NIH, Office of Dietary Supplements.


34 Kleinman and Greer, *Pediatric Nutrition*, 675.


“Nutrient Recommendations: Dietary Reference Intakes (DRI),” NIH, Office of Dietary Supplements.


An infant’s developmental stage determines the type and texture of foods he or she should be fed. An infant should be fed with human milk or formula starting at birth while being gradually introduced to a variety of solid foods of different textures at around 6 months, when he or she is developmentally ready. Although an infant’s age and size often correspond with his or her developmental readiness, these should not be the only factors a parent or caregiver considers when deciding what and how to feed an infant, as each infant develops at his or her own rate. The rate at which an infant progresses to each new food texture and feeding style is also determined by the infant’s individual skills and attitudes. For example, some infants are cautious, others adventurous; it is always best to allow infants to set their own pace for feeding. It is important for parents and caregivers to be aware of the stages of development for an infant’s oral skills, gross motor skills, and fine motor skills. When this awareness is present, a parent or caregiver is more open to nutrition counseling regarding food types, texture, feeding methods, and social skills appropriate for his or her own infant at each stage.

**Infant Behavior**

Infant behavior ranges from the earliest oral skills, such as sucking, to the development of fine motor skills, such as maneuvering food into the mouth. It is important for a parent or caregiver to understand the stages of development in an infant’s life and to know the signs that indicate an infant’s temperament and needs. The first signs a parent or caregiver will notice are the infant’s reflexive responses, which help the infant find and take in food. These reflexes also indicate when an infant is full, needs something to be different, or is ready to sleep. As an infant grows and develops, new skills are learned and practiced, such as self-feeding and drinking. At each age, an infant’s hunger and satiety cues will differ. It is vital to recognize the infant’s cues.

**Reflexive Responses During Early Infancy**

**Oral Skills**

Infants are born with the instinctive ability to suck and swallow liquids. These skills are integral to their survival. Their ability to feed well at birth can be attributed to a combination of reflexive responses that enable them to locate the source of nourishment, suck, and swallow the liquid.

**Oral skills:** Movement and coordination of the lips, cheeks, tongue, and palate that allows milk to be extracted from the breast or bottle (sucking) and to make safe transport through the mouth into the stomach (swallowing)

**Gross motor skills:** Movement and coordination of large body parts—e.g., arms and legs—allowing trunk stability for standing, walking, and running

**Fine motor skills:** Movement and coordination of smaller body parts—e.g., wrists, hands, and fingers—allowing ability to pick up objects between the thumb and finger

**Social skills:** The series of supportive behavioral interactions between parents or caregivers and infants that results in effective feeding and a healthy nutritional status
Reflexive responses important for successful feeding during early infancy are described as follows:\(^3\)

- **Rooting reflex.** An infant is born with a rooting reflex that prompts him or her to turn the head toward the mother’s hand or nipple if the mother strokes the infant’s oral area. The oral area includes the cheeks, corners of the mouth, upper and lower lips, and chin. When this area is stimulated by a nipple or finger, the infant turns his or her head in the direction of the side touched and opens the mouth, making sucking motions. The rooting reflex allows the infant to locate the nipple at feeding time and to orally grasp it. At first, the infant will root from side to side, turning the head toward the nipple, then away, in decreasing arcs. By about 3 weeks of age, this reflex changes into voluntary behavior. Then the infant will simply turn the head toward the nipple and move the mouth into position to suck. In all, the rooting reflex lasts from birth to about 4 months of age.\(^4\)

- **Sucking/swallowing reflex.** The sucking reflex is present even before birth. A mother who has had an ultrasound test may have seen her infant sucking his or her thumb. After birth, the infant automatically begins to suck when the nipple from the breast or bottle is put inside the infant’s mouth and touches the roof of the mouth. There are two stages of sucking:\(^5\)
  - The infant places his or her lips around the nipple’s areola and squeezes the nipple between the tongue and palate to express the milk.
  - Next, the infant’s tongue moves from the areola to the nipple as a continuous milking action takes place. The process is aided by suction, which secures the breast in the infant’s mouth.

As liquid moves into the mouth, the tongue immediately moves it to the back of the mouth for swallowing. The sucking/swallowing reflex is fairly complex because it requires a newborn to coordinate the motions of sucking with swallowing and breathing. That means some infants will not suck efficiently at first. But with practice, all infants can manage the process well. The sucking/swallowing reflex facilitates feeding from the breast or bottle, but not from a spoon or cup. This reflex is seen from birth to about 4 months of age.\(^6\)

---

**Reflex:** A muscle reaction that happens automatically in response to stimulation. Certain sensations or movements produce specific muscle responses.

**Areola:** The circular area of pigmented skin surrounding the nipple

**Express:** To force milk out of the breast. Expression may occur through an infant’s sucking or through the mother’s pumping of the breast.
Tongue thrust reflex. When something touches an infant’s lips, the infant’s tongue extends out of the mouth. This natural reflex does two things:
- It helps an infant to locate and suck on a breast or bottle.
- It helps protect the infant from choking. If a solid substance—foreign to an infant—is placed on the tongue, the tongue reflexively juts out, rather than back into the mouth. (At this young age, such a substance would likely cause choking.)

This reflex is seen from birth to about 4 to 6 months of age. As the reflex diminishes, it is a physical sign that the infant is ready to take food from a spoon. The food will no longer be rejected.

Gag reflex. Related to the tongue thrust reflex, the gag reflex also helps guard an infant from choking. This reflex takes place when the back of the mouth is stimulated. When any object, such as a spoon or a piece of solid food, is placed toward the back of the mouth, the infant gags. This propels that object forward on the tongue. This reflex helps to protect an infant from swallowing inappropriate food or objects that could cause choking. The gag reflex can happen in young infants until they get down the rhythm of sucking, breathing, and swallowing. In early feedings, some infants may gag on human milk or formula, mainly because it is flowing too swiftly for them. The gag reflex diminishes by 4 months of age, but it is retained to some extent in adults. This reflex is one reason for delaying the introduction of complementary foods. Once the reflex diminishes, solid foods more easily move down the infant’s throat, although the gag reflex will still take place if solid foods are being fed too quickly or in amounts difficult to swallow.

NOTE: Infants with developmental disabilities may retain these reflexes longer or the reflexes may be stronger or weaker than normally expected.

Infant Developmental and Feeding Skills

Gross and Fine Motor Skills
As infants mature, they gain the skills necessary to progress from eating strained complementary foods from a spoon to feeding themselves finger foods and eventually to beginning to feed themselves with a spoon. This acquisition of skills follows a sequential pattern that is similar in most infants. However, each infant is unique, and there is always a range of time in which an infant develops his or her own skills. Table 2.1 (see page 38) outlines this range of skill development. Development stages will vary with individual infants. The table shows the infant’s development and associated feeding skills.
The concurrent development of gross motor, fine motor, and oral skills allows an infant to progress to the next level of feeding. Between 4 and 6 months of age, most infants are developing gross motor skills. As an infant develops, there is an increase in the ability to control the neck and head as well as to balance the trunk. These gross motor skills are required for the infant to sit without support.

It is recommended that pacifier use cease by 12 months of age because there are several potential problems with the practice. Adverse effects include:

- Dental issues
- Increased risk of ear infections

**NOTE:** It is important to discuss the use of a pacifier with the health care provider.

Other Early Reflexes to Watch For

Besides basic skills for seeking food, newborns exhibit other early reflexes that parents and caregivers should be aware of. The following are examples of the innate awareness, motor skills, and the protective instinct in all of us:

Birth to 2 months

- **Moro reflex.** If the infant is startled by a loud noise, or the head falls backward suddenly, the reaction will be to throw out the arms and legs and extend the neck. Then the infant will pull the arms together. Loud crying may accompany the action. Different infants have different degrees of this “startle” reflex.

- **“Stepping.”** The earliest example of an infant’s ability to walk happens with the parent or caregiver’s help. Hold the infant under the arms, taking care to support the head, and let the soles touch a flat surface. The infant will set one foot before the other. The reflex disappears in a month or 2, but it will return as learned voluntary behavior when the infant begins to walk later in the first year.

Birth to 5–7 months

- **Tonic neck reflex.** Also called the “fencing posture,” this reflex occurs when the infant’s head turns to one side. The arm on that side will straighten and the opposite arm will bend, as if the infant is fencing. This posture is subtle and not always easy to see.
Developing Skills at the Rate That’s Right

Every infant is unique, and infants develop the skill to feed themselves at varying rates. Although parents and caregivers may expect an infant to acquire certain feeding skills at specific ages, they must be aware that there is always a range associated with “normal development.” Parents and caregivers need to be aware of an infant’s developmental capabilities and nutritional needs when deciding the type, amount, and texture of food to feed their infant, as well as the method of feeding (e.g., using a spoon to feed, or allowing an infant to self-feed with fingers).

Hunger and Satiety Cues by Age

Infants use multiple cues together, or clustered cues, to convey their needs. They may bring their hands to their face, clench their hands, root, and make sucking noises. All these behaviors together help us know when an infant is hungry. A single cue alone does not necessarily indicate hunger or satiety. Table 2.2 lists cues to recognize as the infant advances to 1 year old.

See also: Appendix A, “Infant Hunger and Satiety Cues,” page 222.

### TABLE 2.1 – Sequence of Infant Developmental Skills

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Mouth patterns</th>
<th>Hand and body skills</th>
<th>Feeding abilities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Birth–3 months</td>
<td>• Has tongue thrust, rooting, and gag reflex</td>
<td>• Needs head support</td>
<td>• Coordinates the suck-swallow-breathe action while breast- or bottle-feeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Begins to babble</td>
<td>• Brings hands to the mouth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4–7 months</td>
<td>• Transfers food from front to back of the tongue to swallow</td>
<td>• Has head and neck control</td>
<td>• Takes in a spoonful of pureed/strained food and swallows without choking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Opens the mouth when sees spoon approaching</td>
<td>• Sits with support</td>
<td>• Drinks small amounts from cup (with spilling) held by another person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Begins to control the position of food in the mouth</td>
<td>• Brings objects to the mouth</td>
<td>• Begins to eat mashed foods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Uses up-and-down munching movement</td>
<td>• Begins to sit unaided</td>
<td>• Eats from a spoon easily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Uses the jaw and tongue to mash food</td>
<td>• Tries to grasp small objects such as toys and food</td>
<td>• Begins to feed self with his or her hands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8–12 months</td>
<td>• Uses rotary chewing (diagonal movement of the jaw as food is moved to the side or center of the mouth)</td>
<td>• Sits easily unaided</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Has good eye-hand-mouth coordination</td>
<td>• Easily grasps and/or brings small objects to the mouth, such as finger foods</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Begins to hold a cup with two hands</td>
<td>• Begins to eat ground/finely chopped food and small pieces of soft food</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Has good eye-hand-mouth coordination</td>
<td>• Begins to eat less finely chopped food and small pieces of soft, cooked table food</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Bites through a variety of textures</td>
<td>• Demands to spoon-feed self</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hunger and Satiety Cues by Age

Infants use multiple cues together, or clustered cues, to convey their needs. They may bring their hands to their face, clench their hands, root, and make sucking noises. All these behaviors together help us know when an infant is hungry. A single cue alone does not necessarily indicate hunger or satiety.

Table 2.2 lists cues to recognize as the infant advances to 1 year old. See also: Appendix A, “Infant Hunger and Satiety Cues,” page 222.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Hunger cues</th>
<th>Satiety cues</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Birth–3 months</td>
<td>• Opens and closes mouth</td>
<td>• Slows or decreases sucking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Brings hands to face</td>
<td>• Extends arms and legs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Flexes arms and legs</td>
<td>• Extends/relaxes fingers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Roots around on the chest of whoever is carrying the infant</td>
<td>• Pushes/arches away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Makes sucking noises and motions</td>
<td>• Falls asleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Sucks on lips, hands, fingers, toes, toys, or clothing</td>
<td>• Turns head away from the nipple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Slows or decreases sucking</td>
<td>• Decreases rate of sucking or stops sucking when full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4–7 months</td>
<td>• Smiles, gazes at parent or caregiver, or coos during feeding to indicate wanting more</td>
<td>• Releases the nipple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Moves head toward spoon or tries to swipe food toward mouth</td>
<td>• Seals lips together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• May be distracted or pays attention to surroundings more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Turns head away from the food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8–12 months</td>
<td>• Reaches for spoon or food</td>
<td>• Eating slows down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Points to food</td>
<td>• Clenches mouth shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Gets excited when food is presented</td>
<td>• Pushes food away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Expresses desire for specific food with words or sounds</td>
<td>• Shakes head to say “no more”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


NOTE: Crying is a distress signal. Hunger cues occur prior to crying. Watching and responding early to cues can help prevent crying. Hungry infants might cry, but they will also exhibit hunger cues noted above. See also: “Six Months and Under: Understanding the Infant’s Cues,” page 40.

The Feeding Relationship

The feeding relationship is made up of social skills—a series of interactions and communications between a parent or caregiver and infant during feeding that influences the infant’s ability to progress in feeding skills and to consume a nutritionally adequate diet. Through the feeding relationship, the infant’s health and nutritional status is promoted.

A positive feeding relationship is nurtured when the parent or caregiver does the following:

- Correctly interprets the infant’s feeding cues and abilities, such as mouth opening and rooting
- Is attentive to the infant’s needs, such as feeding on demand and burping at regular intervals
- Responds appropriately to satisfy those needs
- Sits still during the feeding and lets the infant eat at the desired pace

Feeding relationship: The social skills used between the parent or caregiver and infant that include appropriate food selection, supportive feeding techniques, appropriate caloric intake, and attention to infant cues and behavior.
Six Months and Under: Understanding the Infant’s Cues

Young infants will give the most basic cues. Some cues are obvious; others may be harder to pick up. Looking for cues can make it easier for parents or caregivers and infants to be calm and happy. Here are some cues that will help clarify an infant’s needs.

“I’m hungry”
- Stirring movements
- Opening mouth
- Turning head
- Seeking or rooting

“I’m really hungry”
- Stretching
- Increasing physical movement
- Moving hand to mouth or sucking on fist

“Calm me, and then feed me”
- Making agitated body movements
- Reddening of facial color
- Crying

“I want to be near you”
- Staring at a parent or caregiver’s face
- Rooting or making sucking motions
- Making feeding sounds
- Smiling
- Relaxing the face and body
- Following the parent or caregiver’s voice and face
- Raising his or her head

“I need something to be different”
- Looking or turning away
- Arching his or her back
- Extending fingers with a still hand
- Falling asleep
- Frowning or showing a glazed look
- Yawning

A dysfunctional feeding relationship can result in poor dietary intake and impaired growth. Such a negative relationship is characterized by a parent or caregiver who does the following:

- Consistently misinterprets, ignores, or overrules the infant's feeding cues.
- Regularly forces an infant to consume additional food after he or she has become full and satisfied (e.g., urging the infant to finish the entire bottle to avoid “waste” when the infant indicates fullness).

Nutrition during the first year of the infant's life is important for proper growth and development of oral and motor skills that lead to social and other developmental skills. When the parents and caregivers work to understand and respond to the infant's cues, the parent or caregiver creates a healthy feeding relationship and establishes a secure place in the family for the infant. Table 2.3, below, lists the general observations of skills developed by both infant and the parent or caregiver and family. Note that each infant is different and may achieve developmental skills earlier or later than his or her peers.

**TABLE 2.3 – Desired Outcomes for the Infant and the Role of the Family in the Feeding Relationship**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFANTS</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Educational/attitudinal</strong></td>
<td><strong>Behavioral</strong></td>
<td><strong>Health</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Has a sense of trust</td>
<td>• Breastfeeds successfully</td>
<td>• Develops normal rooting, sucking, and swallowing reflexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Bonds with parents or caregivers</td>
<td>• Bottle-feeds successfully if not breastfeeding</td>
<td>• Develops fine and gross motor skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Enjoys eating</td>
<td>• Consumes supplemental foods, when developmentally ready, to support appropriate growth and development</td>
<td>• Grows and develops at an appropriate rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Maintains good health</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FAMILY</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Educational/attitudinal</strong></td>
<td><strong>Behavioral</strong></td>
<td><strong>Health</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Bonds with the infant</td>
<td>• Meets the infant's nutrition needs</td>
<td>• Maintains good health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Enjoys feeding the infant</td>
<td>• Responds to infant’s hunger and fullness cues</td>
<td>• Adopts a healthy eating pattern as a lifelong goal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Understands the infant’s nutrition needs</td>
<td>• Holds the infant when breastfeeding or bottle-feeding and maintains eye contact</td>
<td>• When developmentally ready, introduces nutrient-rich complementary foods to infant across all food groups, limiting sugars, fats, and sodium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Acquires a sense of competence in meeting the infant’s needs</td>
<td>• Talks to the infant during feeding</td>
<td>• Follows signals for infant hunger and satiety so infant is not underfed, leading to malnutrition, or overfed, leading to obesity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Understands the importance of a healthy lifestyle, including healthy eating behaviors and regular physical activity, to promote short-term and long-term health</td>
<td>• Provides a pleasant eating environment</td>
<td>• Involves infant in regular activity, helping increase gross and fine motor skills and muscle strength</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Uses nutrition programs and food resources if needed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Infants whose feeding cues are not eliciting the expected response from their parents or caregivers tend to become dissatisfied and confused about their sensations of hunger and satiety (fullness). Ultimately, they may become unusually passive.

Conversely, infants whose intake is too strictly regulated by their parents or caregivers may develop unhealthy food preferences. Evidence indicates that infants will self-regulate their energy intake when they can control how much they consume. However, when infants are not allowed some measure of self-control in the feeding process, they may not learn to pay attention to their own internal cues of hunger and satiety. This lack of attention to hunger and satiety cues has been linked to childhood obesity.

Help Infants Maintain a Healthy Weight

The prevalence of overweight tendencies in infants and toddlers has increased dramatically over the past three decades and can lead to childhood obesity. To prevent overfeeding their infants, parents and caregivers need to understand that infants will stop eating when they are full; and how to recognize an infant’s satiety cues.

Pay attention when he or she:

- Stops sucking;
- Turns the head away from or spits out the nipple;
- Seals the lips together; or
- Falls asleep while feeding.

Avoid the urge to:

- Push the infant to finish the bottle to avoid waste; or
- Pressure the infant to finish feeding.


Instruct parents and caregivers to observe the hunger and satiety cues listed in Table 2.2 (see page 39), so that parents and caregivers can develop positive feeding relationships with their infants.

Parents and caregivers should be instructed to do the following:

- Be sensitive to the infant’s hunger, satiety, and food preferences.
  - Act promptly and watch for the infant cues that indicate hunger.
  - Avoid putting the infant on a rigid feeding schedule. An older infant can be offered food at around the time when he or she usually eats. But, in general, the parent or caregiver should watch for the infant to indicate hunger.
  - If an infant has certain medical conditions or is a sleepy infant who needs to be awakened to feed, specific intervals of time may be necessary.
- Remember the infant’s developmental capabilities and nutritional needs.
  - Thoughtfully decide the type, amount, and texture of food and the method of feeding (e.g., use a spoon for feeding; allow self-feeding with fingers). See also: Table 2.1, “Sequence of Infant Developmental Skills,” page 38.
  - Offer food in a positive and accepting fashion without forcing or enticing the infant to eat.
  - Do not withhold food. Infants are biologically capable of regulating their food intake to meet their needs for growth. Their diets may vary in the amount and types of foods eaten each day.
Help the infant have positive feeding experiences and learn new eating skills.

- Provide a relaxed and calm feeding environment, such as designating a specific comfortable place in the home.
- Have patience and take time to communicate with and learn about the infant during feeding.
- Show the infant lots of love, attention, eye contact, and cuddling in addition to feeding.
- Avoid distractions such as use of cell phones, TV, or computers while feeding.

**NOTE:** Reassure parents and caregivers that being sensitive to an infant's cues and acting on them with patience and vigilance will decrease fussiness and will not “spoil” the infant.

Family dysfunction can promote failure to thrive (FTT). Dysfunctions can include parent/caregiver-infant interactive disorders and disorders of feeding during infancy and early childhood. Cognitive limitation in a parent or caregiver has been recognized as a risk factor for FTT as well as for abuse and neglect. Maternal mental illness such as severe depression and maternal chemical dependency also represent social risk factors for FTT. All of these maternal conditions may contribute to a lack of synchrony between the infant and mother during feeding and therefore interfere with the infant’s growth process.16

If it is perceived that a parent or caregiver is exhibiting cognitive limitations, and he/she is not recognizing an infant’s feeding cues, responding to them inappropriately, or cannot feed the infant properly, the infant and parent or caregiver should be referred to resources appropriate to their situation:

- A health care provider for advice (either a physician or nurse practitioner)
- Classes or other guidance offering help with parenting skills
- A specialist or other services for psychosocial evaluation
- The Early Periodic Screening, Diagnosis, and Treatment Program (EPSDT) for additional assessment, counseling, and follow-up services

**Nutrient intake depends on the synchronization of maternal and infant behaviors involved in feeding interactions.**17

### How Developmental Delays Affect an Infant’s Feeding Skills

An infant’s development does not always match his or her chronological age. Infants may be developmentally delayed in their feeding skills for various reasons.18 Here is a sampling of factors that may influence them:

- **Medical risk factors** (which may result in failure to thrive)
  - Prematurity
  - Low birth weight
  - Multiple hospitalizations due to illness
  - Congenital anomalies, such as cleft lip or palate
  - Genetic issues, such as Down syndrome
  - Neuromuscular delay, such as cerebral palsy or muscular dystrophy

- **Psychosocial risk factors**
  - Poverty
  - Abuse or neglect
  - Parent or caregiver depression
  - Substance abuse
  - Poor parenting skills

Infants affected by these medical and psychosocial risk factors may not be developmentally ready for complementary foods at similar chronological ages as healthy, full-term infants.

**NOTE:** A parent or caregiver of a developmentally delayed infant will need instructions on feeding techniques from the infant’s health care provider or a trained professional in feeding developmentally disabled infants.
Endnotes


4 Shelov, *Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5*, 161.

5 Shelov, *Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5*, 159–60.


9 Shelov, *Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5*, 161.

10 Shelov, *Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5*, 241–44.


14 Holt et al., *Bright Futures: Nutrition*, 31–43.


Scientific knowledge about the benefits of breastfeeding, not only for infants and mothers but also for families and their communities, has advanced considerably in recent years. These benefits include the positive effects breastfeeding has upon the immunological, nutritional, developmental, psychological, social, and economic status of mothers and their children, which in turn influence those around them. New evidence demonstrates both the short- and long-term effects of breastfeeding, including its protective effect upon chronic conditions.

The American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) states that “breastfeeding and human milk are the normative standards for infant feeding and nutrition” and has established exclusive breastfeeding for the first 6 months as the standard against which all alternative feeding methods must be measured with regard to growth, health, development, and all other short- and long-term outcomes for children.

Breastfeeding Recommendations

The AAP Section on Breastfeeding, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, the American Academy of Family Physicians, the Academy of Breastfeeding Medicine, the World Health Organization, the United Nations Children’s Fund (UNICEF), and many other health organizations recommend exclusive breastfeeding for the first 6 months of life, except in a few cases in which breastfeeding is contraindicated. Exclusive breastfeeding is defined as an infant’s consumption of only human milk, with no supplementation by any other type of food or liquid (e.g., no water, juice, nonhuman milk, or foods). Moreover, it is recommended that breastfeeding be continued for the first year of life and after that for as long as it is mutually desired by both the mother and infant. However, even if a mother breastfeeds only for a limited time, doing so provides benefits for both her and her infant.

In the early 20th century, most mothers in the United States breastfed their infants, but by the 1970s, the number had declined to 24.7 percent. Since then, the rates have continued to rise steadily. Among infants born in 2002, some 37.9 percent were breastfeeding at 6 months of age. This increased to 47.5 percent for infants born in 2010. By 2014, four out of five infants born that year (82.5 percent) started to breastfeed, more than half (55.3 percent) were breastfeeding at 6 months of age, and more than one-third (33.7 percent) were breastfeeding at 12 months. According to the 2018 Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) Breastfeeding Report Card, 36 States and Puerto Rico have already met the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) Healthy People 2020 goal of 81.9 percent of mothers to initiate breastfeeding. Many other States continue to improve both in number of mothers starting to breastfeed and the duration of breastfeeding, but they are still working to meet their target goals.

In 2011, given the importance of breastfeeding for the health and well-being of mothers and infants, HHS issued The Surgeon General’s Call to Action.
to Support Breastfeeding.? The document describes specific action steps for a society-wide approach to support mothers and infants who are breastfeeding. This approach includes the public health impact of everyone’s efforts: mothers and families, employers, health care providers including hospitals, and community settings.

**Benefits of Breastfeeding**

**Health Benefits of Breastfeeding for the Infant**

Human colostrum and human milk have been studied extensively. They are composed of a mixture of nutritive components and other bioactive factors that are easy to digest and absorb and have strong physiologic effects upon the infant. Their composition changes over time to meet the infant’s changing nutritional needs.

The bioactive factors include **immunoglobulins** (IgA, IgG, IgM, and IgD), which act against viruses and bacteria; the bifidus factor that promotes development of intestinal flora (bifidobacteria); and lysozyme, which may be associated with the development and maintenance of the special intestinal flora of breastfed infants. These and other factors such as **lactoferrin** protect against a number of microorganisms that threaten the newborn.

The greater resistance to disease is especially evident in reduced hospitalization rates for severe respiratory tract infections, gastrointestinal disorders (such as diarrhea, necrotizing enterocolitis, and inflammatory bowel disease), and acute otitis

---

**How WIC Supports and Promotes Breastfeeding**

The WIC program promotes and supports breastfeeding as the best source of infant nutrition. As part of its mission to improve the health of its target audience, the WIC program has long provided breastfeeding promotion and support services for pregnant and postpartum participants. Benefits and services include the following:

- Accurate breastfeeding information through anticipatory guidance, counseling, and breastfeeding educational materials
- One-on-one breastfeeding support from peer counselors
- Eligibility for breastfeeding mothers to participate in WIC longer than nonbreastfeeding mothers
- Enhanced food package with a greater variety and quantity of food for breastfeeding mothers
- Breast pumps and other breastfeeding aids (e.g., nipple shields, nursing supplements) to help support the initiation and continuation of breastfeeding


---

**Immunoglobulins:** Proteins in the body that are major components of the immune response system. They perform antibody activity—for example, they protect against viruses, bacteria, and any foreign proteins in the body.

**Lactoferrin:** It is one of the main proteins found in human breast milk. It may be one of the reasons an infant can absorb the iron in human milk.
possibly because breastfeeding guards against long-term obesity. \textsuperscript{18} In addition, the long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids (LCPUFAs) in human milk may help develop skeletal muscle membrane. This protects against insulin resistance and β-cell failure, which lead to type 2 diabetes. Without this protection, formula-fed infants have higher concentrations of insulin and increased diabetes risk. \textsuperscript{19}

- **Leukemia.** The duration of breastfeeding has been correlated with a reduction in childhood leukemia and lymphoma, \textsuperscript{20} although the mechanism by which this association operates has yet to be understood.

- **Sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS).** Breastfeeding has been shown to be protective against SIDS, and its effect is stronger when breastfeeding is exclusive. \textsuperscript{21}

### Other Benefits for the Infant

Breastfeeding allows the mother to have skin-to-skin contact with her infant, which is important for making the infant feel secure and loved, and for promoting bonding between mother and infant. In addition, breastfeeding has been reported to provide an analgesic effect for infants during painful procedures. \textsuperscript{22}

Ideally, the first skin-to-skin contact will take place moments after delivery, when the infant is placed on the mother’s abdomen or chest, with bare skin against bare skin. This is the first opportunity for mother and infant to bond and for the infant to feel warm, comfortable, and nurtured. A mother’s oxytocin levels are elevated between 15 and 45 minutes after she gives birth. Because the high levels are associated with positive maternal feelings and increased bonding, it is recommended that mothers take advantage of this period for skin-to-skin contact. \textsuperscript{23}

Skin-to-skin contact is also an infant’s introduction to the mother’s breasts and to connecting their sight, smell, and feel with satisfying hunger. \textsuperscript{24} When the infant suckles the mother’s nipple, the stimulation releases oxytocin, which in turn causes the \textbf{milk let-down reflex}. \textbf{See also: “Role of the Brain,” pages 54–55.} Suckling also

---

**Milk let-down reflex:** Also called milk ejection reflex. The mother’s milk is ready to flow. Signs are tingling in the breast or milk dripping from the nipple.
releases prolactin, which is responsible for milk production. Oxytocin can also be released when a mother sees, hears, smells, touches, or thinks about her infant, so skin-to-skin contact may contribute to the mother’s oxytocin level.\textsuperscript{25}

Research shows that infants who attach within the first hour breastfeed more successfully and for a longer period of time than those who do not attach and feed for 2 hours or more after delivery. Early breastfeeders are also more likely to still be breastfeeding at 2 to 4 months of age.\textsuperscript{26}

**Health Benefits for the Mother**

By breastfeeding, the new mother will not only provide her infant with the best nutrition, but also experience many benefits for herself.

**Immediate Benefits**

Benefits to a breastfeeding mother are both immediate and long term, including the following short-term examples:

- Mothers who breastfeed their infants soon after birth experience milk let-down reflex, which helps to start the process of establishing a mother’s future milk supply.\textsuperscript{27} Breastfeeding will stimulate a mother’s postpartum uterine contractions and she will lose less blood because the infant’s sucking causes the uterus to contract. In many mothers, exclusive breastfeeding delays the resumption of normal ovarian cycles and the return to fertility. This process is known as lactational amenorrhea. Optimal intervals between births allow the mother’s body to replenish its stores of iron and to correct anemia. This recovery helps with future pregnancies.\textsuperscript{28}

- Breastfeeding triggers the release of the hormone oxytocin. The hormone oxytocin also promotes nurturing and relaxation and may act as a buffer against the effects of stress.\textsuperscript{29}

**Long-Term Benefits**

Many recent studies suggest that breastfeeding may help protect against a number of diseases in the mother.

- **Type 2 diabetes.** A longer duration of breastfeeding is associated with a reduced incidence of type 2 diabetes. Two large cohort studies of women in the United States have concluded that breastfeeding may reduce the risk of type 2 diabetes in young and middle-aged women by improving glucose homeostasis.\textsuperscript{30}

- **Cancer.** Breastfeeding has been associated with a decreased risk of both breast and ovarian cancers. Also, the anovulation associated with lactation may protect against ovarian cancer.\textsuperscript{31}

- **Hypertension.** Increased duration of breastfeeding may have long-term positive influences reducing the prevalence of high blood pressure.\textsuperscript{32}

**Social and Economic Benefits of Breastfeeding**

All research points to the fact that a mother who breastfeeds sets the stage for a healthier child. At the same time, she benefits society.

Statistics show that breastfed infants require fewer visits to the doctor for illness, fewer prescriptions, and fewer hospitalizations. A 2016 study published by the Lancet Breastfeeding Group estimates that if 90 percent of U.S. families followed guidelines to breastfeed exclusively for 6 months or continued breastfeeding for 1 to 2 years, the United States would annually save some $2.45 billion in reduced medical and other costs. In addition, the death rate for breastfed infants plummets dramatically: research has shown that if 90 percent of mothers breastfed exclusively for 6 months, nearly 1,000 infant deaths could be avoided each year.\textsuperscript{33}

Because their infants are healthier, breastfeeding mothers who work may be less likely to take sick days to care for an infant who is ill. Therefore, breastfeeding not only supports the Nation’s workforce, but also may lower employers’ medical costs.

---

**Anovulation:** Failure of the ovaries to release ova, the female reproductive cells, over a time period of more than 3 months.
Some mothers are challenged with combining breastfeeding and other competing demands and so may focus on the barriers to breastfeeding rather than the benefits. Exploring both the barriers and benefits is an effective way to counsel a new mother about breastfeeding.

Recent data collected from a nationally representative sample of participants in WIC who joined WIC either before their infants were born or before the infants were 3 months old show that overall views regarding breastfeeding have shifted to be more positive in the last 20 years. Notably, there has been an increase in mothers affirming the benefits of breastfeeding, such as that breastfed babies are healthier and that breastfeeding protects the child from diseases, brings a mother closer to her child, and helps women lose weight. Also, the perception of barriers, such as the belief that breastfeeding ties a mother down and takes too much time, has decreased. However, many

### WIC Breastfeeding Support

WIC Breastfeeding Support: Learn Together, Grow Together is a social marketing campaign from USDA. The goal of the campaign is to equip WIC moms with the information, resources and support they need to successfully breastfeed, as much as they can for as long as they can – ideally 6 months exclusively.

Launched in 2018, it is a rebrand of the 1997 Loving Support Makes Breastfeeding Work campaign and is based on a strong foundation of research. The brand WIC Breastfeeding Support highlights what WIC offers (i.e., in-person support through counseling and breastfeeding classes, access to trained peer counselors and designated breastfeeding experts), while leveraging the familiarity, equity, and credibility of the program. The brand aims to deliver on the promise that breastfeeding gets easier, while the tagline, Learn Together, Grow Together speaks to the breastfeeding journey, acknowledging that it is a wonderful, emotional experience, but it takes mom and baby time to find success.

New campaign resources include an updated robust website, posters, educational materials, videos, social media products, and a buddy program. The website: https://wicbreastfeeding.fns.usda.gov provides moms with information based on where they are on their breastfeeding journey, whether it’s learning to breastfeed, starting to breastfeeding, facing challenges, or thriving with breastfeeding. All of the campaign resources are offered through WIC clinics and are available online so they are easily accessible and convenient. Moms can find information on breastfeeding basics, latches and holds, common challenges, going back to work, breastfeeding in public, expressing milk, and more.

WIC partners and staff can access resources to download, print, and share with moms to help support them in their breastfeeding journey. Family and friends will find resources, including videos from real dads and grandparents, to learn more about breastfeeding and how they can support mom and baby on their breastfeeding journey.

### Factors Affecting the Decision to Initiate or Continue Breastfeeding

Mothers typically know that breastfeeding is the best way to feed their infants. However, several factors have been identified as having a significant impact on a mother’s decision to initiate or continue breastfeeding:

- A mother’s support network, which may include fathers/partners, family members, and/or friends
- The attitudes of health care providers
- Hospital practices, such as providing infant formula to newborns
- A mother’s personal experience with prior breastfeeding
- A mother’s workplace environment

Some mothers are challenged with combining breastfeeding and other competing demands and so may focus on the barriers to breastfeeding rather than the benefits. Exploring both the barriers and benefits is an effective way to counsel a new mother about breastfeeding.
women still report that breastfeeding is painful and that they feel uncomfortable with breastfeeding in public.

**Methods to Support Breastfeeding Mothers in Your Program**

Appropriate and accurate education, encouragement, and support can help women breastfeed successfully. It is important for WIC staff to become familiar with the methods that support breastfeeding mothers and to make the clinic or program site breastfeeding-friendly and accessible to them.

- Make a place or room available for mothers to breastfeed their infants when visiting a clinic or program site.
- Offer all breastfeeding mothers a list of professional and peer resources (e.g., WIC clinic breastfeeding coordinators, WIC peer counselors, public health nurses, breastfeeding mothers group, etc.) to contact for ongoing encouragement, information, breast pumps, and assistance.
- Display culturally appropriate posters and materials on breastfeeding at the clinic or program site. (Do not display infant formula and materials with infant formula brand names and logos.)
- Demonstrate positive attitudes toward breastfeeding and deliver positive and supportive messages about breastfeeding.
- Provide education about the benefits of breastfeeding to individuals and groups. Use printed materials and audiovisuals that portray breastfeeding as the preferred infant feeding choice and are appropriate to participants’ cultural and ethnic background, language, and reading level.
- Encourage the mother’s family and friends to participate in breastfeeding education and support sessions.
- Coordinate breastfeeding support with other health care programs in the community.
- Encourage hospital practices that support breastfeeding.

- Ensure that peer counselors and/or staff are available to provide regular and ongoing counseling and support services to breastfeeding women.

The WIC Nutrition Services Standards (WIC NSS) are intended to assist State and local agencies in their continual efforts to improve the services they provide by focusing on core elements that are essential to providing high-quality nutrition services. Core elements include breastfeeding education and promotion and support, including peer counseling activities.

The WIC NSS describes elements of staff training, clinic environment, coordinated efforts, program evaluation, breastfeeding education and support, and food packages for breastfed infants and breastfeeding women in a guide available at https://wicworks.fns.usda.gov/resources/wic-nutrition-services-standards

**The Basics of Breastfeeding**

**Characteristics of Human Milk**

Human milk is unique in its physical structure and types and concentrations of protein, fat, carbohydrates, vitamins and minerals, enzymes, hormones, growth factors, host resistance factors, inducers and modulators of the immune system, and anti-inflammatory agents. Because it is the best source of nutrition required for the first 6 months of an infant’s life, its nutrient content has been used by the National Academy of Medicine’s Food and Nutrition Board to establish adequate intakes (AIs). Human milk composition changes during a feeding, throughout the day, and over time to meet each infant’s nutritional needs.

**Infant’s First Milk**

The first milk that is produced by the breast for an infant right after birth is thick, yellow-colored fluid called colostrum. The yellow color results from colostrum’s high concentration of beta-carotene (vitamin A precursor). Although colostrum is
produced in limited quantity, it is rich in nutrients and substances the infant needs in the initial days following birth. It offers nutrition high in protein and low in fat that is easily digested by the newborn infant. It also provides antibodies, primarily secretory immunoglobulin A (SIgA), which protect the infant’s immune system by identifying and destroying foreign objects such as bacteria and viruses.

Mothers should not express any colostrum from their breasts before their infant’s birth because the pumping of the breasts may stimulate uterine contractions, risking premature delivery.

Over the first 2 to 3 weeks after birth, the colostrum is gradually replaced by mature human milk. The intermediate or transitional milk is produced from about day 2 to day 5 postpartum to 2 weeks postpartum. During the transition to mature milk, concentrations of fat, lactose, water-soluble vitamins, and total calories increase in the milk, while those of protein, immunoglobulins, fat-soluble vitamins, and minerals decrease.

**Mature Milk**

Colostrum changes into mature milk by the 15th day after birth to fit the infant’s growth needs. This milk looks thinner than colostrum, but it has just the right amount of nutrients such as protein, fat, sugar, water, and bioactive factors for the infant’s healthy growth.

**Making a Good Milk Supply**

For most new breastfeeding mothers, making enough milk is their most important concern. The main reasons women wean their infants from the breast in the first 6 months of life is their perception that they are not making enough milk and that their infant is not getting enough. Making milk for one’s infant is a natural, integrated process, with the mother’s breasts, her brain, and the infant all playing a role in keeping the milk supply ample and flowing. Nearly all mothers can breastfeed successfully with the proper support and direction. The amount of milk a mother produces in the first 2 or 3 weeks naturally fluctuates. During this time it is key to establish good techniques, address problems and challenges to successfully carry out exclusive breastfeeding. Feeding a newborn frequently will stimulate milk production and increases the mother’s supply. See also: “Factors That May Increase and Decrease Milk Supply,” page 62; and “Planning Time Away From the Infant,” pages 73—74.

**FIGURE 3.1 – How the Breast Makes Milk**


**Role of the Breasts**

During pregnancy, the breasts undergo physiological and anatomical changes that enable them to produce milk for an infant. Different parts of the breast have different functions in making and transporting milk to the mother’s nipple. Milk production occurs within the alveoli, which are grape-like clusters of cells located deep within the breast. Once the milk is produced, it is squeezed out through the alveoli into the milk ducts—which resemble highways—and is transported through the breast (see figure 3.1, above). The milk is released through openings in the nipple that many mothers cannot see until lactation begins.
Assessing the Breastfeeding Dyad

Refer breastfeeding mothers who request infant formula to a nutritionist for nutrition assessment and counseling.

Staff should assess and listen to the mother to determine the reason she is requesting formula and ensure that the mother receives support from WIC staff with breastfeeding training, a peer counselor, a WIC designated breastfeeding expert, or other health care professional who can adequately address the mother’s concerns and help her to continue to breastfeed. ➤ See also: “Planning Time Away From the Infant,” pages 73–74.

When WIC staff receive a request for formula from a breastfeeding mother, an assessment should be done to support the mother’s breastfeeding plan. The assessment should probe for the reason for the formula request, exploring what breastfeeding concerns may exist, among other points. If formula is issued, amounts should be tailored to meet but not exceed the infant’s nutritional needs.

Key points to discuss during the assessment include, but are not limited to, the following:

- WIC breastfeeding counselors and experts available to help the mother with breastfeeding questions and concerns.
- The infant’s weight and growth. Encourage mothers to follow up with the infant’s pediatrician to monitor for appropriate weight gain, especially in the early days/weeks after birth.
- Number of wet diapers and bowel movements, and color and texture of movements.
- The infant’s sleeping patterns.
- Breastfeeding concerns, such as positioning; discomfort signs; feeding frequency and duration of feedings; and changes in breasts before and after a feeding.
- Feeding cues and normal behavioral patterns.

Care must be exercised to ensure that providing infant formula does not interfere with or undermine the breastfeeding mother’s desire to maintain lactation. It is also important to convey to mothers that sometimes it may be possible to resume exclusive breastfeeding even after using supplemental formula and that WIC is available to provide support and counseling to help her achieve her goals.


Fatty tissue is woven throughout the breast tissue. Fat helps determine the size of a woman’s breasts, not how they function in the breastfeeding process. Women with small breasts produce the same quantity and quality of milk as those with larger breasts. No matter their initial size, a woman’s breasts should increase in size from pre-pregnancy to after delivery; typically, they double or triple in weight by the time a woman is near term.

Role of the Brain

When the infant suckles, important nerve endings inside the mother’s breast send a message to her brain. The brain then signals the pituitary gland to release two important hormones: prolactin causes the alveoli to begin making milk, and oxytocin causes the muscles around the alveoli cells to contract and squeeze the milk out through the ducts. The release of milk is called a “milk let-down reflex,” also known as a “milk ejection reflex.” Being relaxed helps oxytocin release milk, so the more relaxed and comfortable a mother is, the greater her let-down is, and the more milk her infant will receive. ➤ See also: Figure 3.2, “How Mothers Make Milk: The Role of the Brain,” page 55.

Dyad: The mother and infant unit
There are many methods to encourage the milk let-down reflex:

- Relaxation exercises
- Warm compresses before breastfeeding (e.g., a warm washcloth on the breast)
- Breast massage
- Manual expression of a little milk
- Breastfeeding in a calm setting without distractions
- Breastfeeding while lying down

If a woman is concerned that her milk is not letting down, she should be referred to a WIC-designated breastfeeding expert for proper assessment, counseling, and follow-up services.

**Role of the Infant**

The infant also plays an important role in milk production through suckling at the breast and removing milk. When the infant is latched on correctly so that he or she has the nipple and most of the areola in his or her mouth, the special nerve endings that signal the brain to release milk-producing hormones are stimulated. The infant also helps by removing milk. The more milk the infant removes, the more milk the mother will make. Length of time at the breast is not an indicator that the infant is removing milk. Some infants are efficient at removing milk quickly, while others take longer or are latched on incorrectly so that they are removing very little milk. If the infant cannot breastfeed at the breast, the milk needs to be removed with a breast pump or through hand expression so the mother can establish a good milk supply.

**FIGURE 3.2 – How Mothers Make Milk: The Role of the Brain**


---

**Making a Good Milk Supply—Naturally**

The first 1 to 2 months of effective nursing or pumping are important for establishing a good milk supply. Frequent breastfeeding or milk removal (8 to 12 times every 24 hours) helps mothers make a good milk supply.
Practical Breastfeeding Techniques and Tips

This section reviews basic information and techniques that can help mothers have a successful breastfeeding experience. Once a mother knows what to expect and how to handle common concerns in advance, she can better prevent and cope with most breastfeeding problems that might occur.

Comfort During Breastfeeding

Breastfeeding is easier and more enjoyable when the mother and infant are able to breastfeed in a relaxed setting. Encourage mothers to find a comfortable place. Special equipment is not necessary, but pillows and a footstool may help the mother get into a comfortable position and bring her infant closer to her breasts. In the early weeks postpartum, a mother may be more comfortable during breastfeeding if she has privacy and can relax with her infant. During this period, mothers should be encouraged to take time to interact with and learn about their infants.

Strategies for Breastfeeding in Public

Although some mothers will express discomfort about breastfeeding in public, it is important for WIC staff to confirm that breastfeeding is both a vital and appropriate action, and that support exists for mothers to breastfeed in public. Encourage mothers to be proud that they are providing the best possible nutrition for her infants through breastfeeding.

To guide a parent or caregiver in building confidence and effectively feeding an infant in public, the following advice may be shared:

- Identify clothes that give coverage and allow easy access to the breasts, such as button-down shirts or pull up loose-fitting tops. Mothers can also wear a tank top under the shirt so the stomach won’t show.
- A blanket or scarf may be draped around the shoulders and infant during feeding.
- While traveling, a sling or other soft carrier helps comfort and keep the infant close to the breast during feeding.

More establishments now have designated areas for mothers who are looking for a private setting to breastfeed. Department stores, malls, and even baseball stadiums often have breastfeeding rooms. If there isn’t a special room, find a private or quiet space.

Know the infant’s hunger cues so that feeding takes place before the infant is fussy.

Some mothers may find it hard to breastfeed in public. Recommend them to practice breastfeeding in front of others or using a mirror, or practice in front of friends who are also new moms.

It is important to support their choice to breastfeed and to instill confidence in them. They should consult their WIC peer counselor or nutritionist with questions and concerns and for ongoing support.

State Laws That Protect Breastfeeding Mothers

A majority of States and the District of Columbia have specific laws that permit a mother to breastfeed her child in any public or private location. Visit http://www.ncsl.org/research/health/breastfeeding-State-laws.aspx for a list of States and their specific laws.

Feeding Positions

There is no one “right” breastfeeding position for every situation. No single position can meet the needs of every infant or mother all the time. Many women like to try different positions. However, the way a mother holds her infant and the position of the infant on the breast can influence successful breastfeeding. Incorrect positioning can make it difficult for an infant to suckle properly on the breast, which results in inadequate milk consumption by the infant and leads to sore nipples for the mother.
There are several commonly used positions that allow an infant and mother to breastfeed comfortably. See them illustrated below. To help a mother learn feeding positions, the WIC staff should try demonstrating them using a doll. Regardless of the feeding position, a mother should be comfortable. The infant should be positioned so that the head, shoulders, and hips are in alignment and the infant faces the mother’s body. As the infant grows, the “right” position can be anything the mother feels works for her as long as the infant gets milk and the mother is comfortable. No matter which position is used, it is important to avoid pushing on the back of the infant’s head because doing so may cause the infant to arch away from the breast.

**Position 1: Lying Down or Side-Lying**

In this position (below), the mother lies on her side with pillows under her head and behind her back, as needed. The infant lies on his or her side facing the mother with his or her chest to the mother’s chest and with his or her mouth level with the nipple. This position is recommended for a mother who has had a cesarean birth because it allows her to breastfeed without putting pressure on her incision. Special care should be taken not to surround the infant with loose clothing or bedding. If the mother is drowsy she should take precautions to prevent the infant’s entrapment or suffocation.

**Position 2: Across the Lap or Cradle Hold**

In this position (above), the mother sits upright in a chair or couch with her back supported while holding her infant securely. The mother’s same-sided arm supports the infant at the breast on which the infant is nursing, with the infant’s chest facing the mother’s chest. The infant’s head is cradled near the mother’s elbow, while the arm supports the infant along the back. It is easier for the mother to support her infant up to the level of her nipples if she places one or more pillows under her arm that support the infant. Alternatively, she could cross her legs and bring the infant up to nipple level with her raised leg. To prevent straining her back, the mother should avoid leaning down to the infant and instead bring the infant to her. This position may be useful for the infant who has difficulty latching on because the mother can easily guide the infant’s mouth to the breast.

**Position 3: Cross-Cradle Hold**

This hold (next page) uses nearly the same positioning as the cradle hold, but it supports the infant on the arm opposite the breast being used. The infant’s head is then supported at the base of the neck by the palm of the mother’s hand. The infant’s bottom rests in the crook of the arm. The mother rotates the infant’s body so that the infant’s mouth is lined up with her nipple. The infant can be
Position 5: Laid-Back Hold

As soon as possible after the infant is born, a mother can prop herself up, or be helped, to lie in a slightly reclining position (below). The infant then lies on top of the mother, with full skin-to-skin contact and with the infant’s face near the mother’s breasts. The mother can use a blanket or towel for warmth as needed. Gravity holds the infant to the mother so that the mother can stroke and touch the infant freely. Gradually the infant will find the nipple, latch, and begin to suck. This method can be carried out in the coming weeks as well, as long as it is comfortable for the mother and the infant’s needs are satisfied.

Attachment (Latch-On)

Before positioning the infant to start breastfeeding, it is advisable for mothers to wash their hands with soap and water. It is recommended that mothers support the breast while breastfeeding by using the C-hold or palmar grasp. This hand position involves placing only the thumb on the top of the breast well behind the areola, with the other four fingers on the bottom of the breast to lift and support it. With the breast well supported,
the nipple and breast can be easily directed into the infant’s mouth. It is especially helpful for the mother to support the breast in this manner while breastfeeding the young infant.

How to Initiate Breastfeeding

A mother can initiate breastfeeding by aiming the infant’s mouth so that his or her chin is touching the mother’s breast and the nose is aimed toward the top of the mother’s nipple. Next, she should stroke the lower lip of the infant with the nipple of the breast she is holding, which will cause the infant to respond by opening his or her mouth, ready to accept the nipple. When the mouth is wide open and the infant’s tongue is down on the floor of the mouth, the mother should move the infant quickly onto the breast. It is important to make sure that the infant has both the nipple and a large part of the areola in his or her mouth with his or her lips sealed around the areola. When the infant suckles in this position, the infant’s gums press against the base of the areola, causing the milk to eject into the mouth.

When attached properly, the infant’s nose should be touching the skin of the breast. (The infant’s nose is designed to permit breathing during breastfeeding.) The infant’s lips should be flanged out (curved outward) and relaxed with neither the upper or lower lip curled inward (see figure 3.3 on this page).

In order to take in adequate milk, an infant needs to suckle more than the nipple. The infant’s mouth needs to rhythmically compress the milk-containing ducts located under the mother’s areola both to draw the milk out and to provide the stimulation needed to bring on the milk let-down reflex. An infant’s attempts to breastfeed when attached only to the nipple may result in the mother’s inadequate milk production and also nipple soreness.

If the infant is not attached correctly the first time, a mother may need to repeat the attachment procedure until her infant is latched on properly. The mother should be reassured that sometimes

**FIGURE 3.3 – Latching On Correctly**
she may have to try several times to get a good latch-on. If a mother experiences any discomfort or tenderness during latch-on in the early weeks of breastfeeding, it should subside after the first 30 seconds to one minute if the infant is properly attached to the breast. If the mother still continues to feel discomfort, the infant should be repositioned on the breast. If the discomfort continues, refer the mother to a breastfeeding expert to discuss the best approach.

It is vital that mothers be prepared in advance to nurse properly. Before the infant’s arrival, the WIC staff should provide all pregnant women with anticipatory guidance so women are informed about resources available to them.

**Coming Off the Breast**

Some infants will automatically come off the breast when they are finished breastfeeding. At the end of a feed, the infant will slow or stop suckling, and his or her fists will relax. Some infants fall asleep. A mother can either wait until the infant stops suckling and comes off the breast naturally, or she may break the suction between the mouth and breast by slipping a finger down into the corner of the infant’s mouth along the gums until the release can be felt or heard. If a mother pulls her infant off without breaking the suction first, she could hurt her nipple.

**Characteristics of Feedings**

**Feeding Cues**

Breastfed infants should be fed when they show signs of hunger. Crying is not a cue, but rather a distress signal. Cues occur prior to crying. Watching and responding early to cues can help prevent crying. Hungry babies might cry, but they will also exhibit hunger cues. ➤ See also: Chapter 2, “Six Months and Under: Understanding the Infant’s Cues,” page 40. Mothers should be encouraged to understand the infant’s early feeding cues and begin feeding when the infant shows any of the following signs:

- Roots (opens mouth and turns toward mother’s breast)
- Brings hands to face
- Flexes arm and legs
- Makes sucking noises and motions
- Sucks on lips, hands, fingers, toes, toys, or clothing
- Fusses or makes pre-cry facial grimaces
- Smiles, gazes at mother, or coos during feeding to indicate wanting more

Healthy, full-term infants express signs of hunger and satiety, learn trust, and feel secure when their mothers respond to these cues. Thus, putting healthy, exclusively breastfed infants on a strict feeding schedule is not recommended. Remind mothers that it is normal for infants to have fussy times and cry when they are not hungry. They may cry because they need a diaper change, want to be held, or need something to be different.

➤ See also: Chapter 2, “Does an Infant Want to Eat—or Simply Suck?,” page 36.

**Frequency and Duration**

Frequent breastfeeding helps to maintain and increase a mother’s milk supply. Encourage mothers to feed on demand by watching their infants for signs indicating hunger and putting them to the breast when those signs are apparent. A newborn infant should go no longer than 2 to 3 hours during the day or 4 hours at night without breastfeeding. If a newborn sleeps longer than 4 hours at night, the infant should be awakened for a feeding. As an infant grows older, the amount of time between feedings will increase. Each infant establishes a feeding pattern. Some infants breastfeed for shorter periods at more frequent intervals, while others may feed for longer periods and less often. After a usual pattern of breastfeeding is established, an infant may suddenly demand to be fed more frequently—for example, during appetite spurts (resulting from growth spurts) or when teething. Also, the longer an infant sleeps at night, the more frequently the infant may demand to be fed during the day.

Daily breastfeeding patterns will vary from infant to infant, and an individual infant’s breastfeeding pattern may change from day to day while the infant grows. Just as a mother should learn her infant’s cues for feeding on demand, she should likewise
Infant Nutrition and Feeding

Learn the satiety cues that determine the length of each feeding: for example, the infant comes off the breast spontaneously, falls asleep, or pushes away. An infant’s feeding period should not be restricted by time, but should be as long as indicated by the infant. ► See also: Chapter 2, “The Feeding Relationship,” pages 39–43.

If a newborn is breastfeeding and is not gaining weight properly, WIC staff should refer the mother to her pediatrician and a WIC-designated breastfeeding expert.

Waking Sleepy or Placid Infants To Feed

An exception to using the on-demand feeding approach is to waken and feed an infant who is lethargic, sluggish or drowsy. Infants who display these characteristics are primarily newborns recently discharged from the hospital. Breastfed infants who fail to “act hungry” may not gain weight adequately because they are not fed often enough and may not consume enough while they are at the breast. Remind mothers and caregivers to check up with the pediatrician within the first three to seven days of birth.44

To wake a sleepy infant, a mother can try these methods:

- Stroking the infant’s cheek with the nipple
- Rubbing or stroking the infant’s hands and feet
- Unwrapping or loosening blankets
- Giving the infant a gentle massage
- Undressing the infant or changing his or her clothing or diaper
- Playing with and talking to the infant

NOTE: If the newborn is increasingly unresponsive and hard to arouse, the parent or caregiver should seek medical help immediately.

Normal Breast Fullness and the Feeding Process

It is normal for a mother of a newborn to experience her breasts becoming larger, heavier, and more tender a few days after birth. This normal postpartum fullness is caused by an increased volume of milk and blood flow to the breasts, as well as temporary swelling of the breast tissue. Breastfeeding 8 to 12 times every 24 hours (about every 1½ to 3 hours) during the first few weeks after birth removes the colostrum and incoming milk so that painful engorgement will not develop. Engorgement hampers the infant’s ability to latch on and breastfeed and may lead to the infant’s poor weight gain. Normal breast fullness usually decreases within the first 2 or 3 weeks after birth if the infant breastfeeds frequently and without restriction after birth.45 ► See also: “Engorgement,” pages 68–69.

When the infant stops suckling, the mother should gently remove the infant from the breast, burp the infant, and switch the infant to the other breast. Breastfed infants ingest less air during feeding than do bottle-fed infants. During the infant’s first 4 months, the average exclusively breastfed infant feeds between 10 and 20 minutes per breast for a total period of 20 to 40 minutes. Some infants are very efficient and will spend less time at the breast; others are slower and tend to spend more time. Limiting breastfeeding to specific times is not recommended.

Milk production by both breasts is stimulated by offering both at every feeding. It may be beneficial to alternate which breast is offered first if the infant does not equally stimulate both breasts. The breast is never truly “empty” because the secretory cells in the alveoli continue to produce milk, but frequent feedings at each breast will stimulate greater milk production. As the demand increases, so will the milk production.

The sucking patterns and needs of breastfeeding infants vary. While some infants’ sucking needs are met primarily during feedings, other infants may need additional sucking at the breast soon after feeding, even though they are not hungry. They may have the desire to suck for various reasons, such as when they are lonely, frightened, or in pain. This is referred to as nonnutritive sucking. ► See also: Chapter 2, “Does an Infant Want to Eat—or Simply Suck?,” page 36.


**Bowel Movements of Breastfed Infants**

The bowel movements of breastfed infants are different in color, consistency, and frequency than those of formula-fed infants. In the first few days after birth, all infants eliminate the meconium; this is the first stool the infant passes, which is dark greenish black and sticky. After that, the stools of an exclusively breastfed infant generally look like mustard-colored cottage cheese (although stools may be a darker brown or green color) and have a mild odor. In comparison, the stools of formula-fed infants are darker, more formed, and infrequent compared with those of breastfed infants.

**Indicators of Whether an Infant Is Getting Enough Milk**

Breastfeeding mothers cannot see how much human milk their infants are consuming, so they may ask how to determine whether the infant is taking in a sufficient amount. They should be reassured that the size and shape of the breasts do not affect the ability to produce and give milk. Then they should be guided to watch for several indicators.

An exclusively breastfed infant is probably consuming a sufficient amount of human milk if the following factors are apparent:

- The infant gains weight consistently. Weight gain is the most important indicator of whether an infant is receiving sufficient milk and breastfeeding effectively. It’s not uncommon for an infant to lose some weight immediately after birth. However, the amount of weight loss should not exceed 8-10 percent and infants should return to their birth weight by 2 weeks of age.
- The infant breastfeeds frequently and is satisfied after each feeding.
- The infant wakes to feed.
- The infant can be heard swallowing consistently while breastfeeding in a quiet room.
- The infant has plenty of wet and soiled diapers, with pale yellow or nearly colorless urine. The urine should not be deep yellow or orange.

(Infants should not being given any extra fluids besides human milk.)

**Factors That May Increase and Decrease Milk Supply**

It is always important for a mother to check with her health care provider if she is having any issues with her milk production, as many factors can cause a decrease in milk supply. She should not take any over-the-counter medications or supplements without first discussing them with her health care provider.

**Possible reasons for a decrease in milk:**

- Smoking
- Drinking alcohol
- Taking certain medications, including antihistamines, decongestants, diuretics
- Stress
- Use of estrogens such as those in low-dose contraceptives
- Dehydration
- Not getting enough sleep

**Tips to try for an increase in milk:**

- Getting plenty of sleep
- Breastfeeding often and offering both breasts at each feeding
- Eating a healthy diet
- Stimulating breast after nursing by using breast pump or manual expression technique
- Making skin-to-skin contact with infant, which promotes milk let-down


Breastfeeding mothers also have their own physiological indicators as to whether their infant is consuming an adequate amount of milk. An exclusively breastfed infant is probably consuming a sufficient amount if the mother experiences the following changes:

- She has a tingly sensation of the milk let-down reflex during the feeding.
- Her breasts would feel less full after a feeding.
**Breast Care**

Mothers can take these simple steps when caring for their breasts to minimize the development of some common feeding-related breast and nipple concerns:

- Allow nipples to air dry between feedings, and replace breast pads (washable and disposable ones) frequently, as soon as they are moist, to reduce the likelihood of bacterial or fungal growth. Expressing some milk onto the nipples at the end of a feeding and letting it dry may help sore nipples to heal.

- Do not dry the nipples with a hair dryer or heat lamp after breastfeeding. This removes the internal moisture in the skin and may cause drying and cracking, or may even burn the skin.

- Avoid using harsh soap, shampoo, detergent, or alcohol on the nipples and areolae. They remove natural lubricants and dry out skin. Soap and shampoo that drip onto nipples and areolae during a bath or shower can be rinsed off with clean water. Excessive washing or rubbing may remove the protective outer layer of cells of these areas, contributing to soreness.

- Avoid “toughening” the nipples by rubbing them with a towel or cloth or otherwise “preparing the nipples” for breastfeeding before delivery. This practice can remove natural lubricants and some of the outer cell layer from the breast and increase irritation to the nipple. Rubbing can also cause micro cuts, which could lead to infection such as mastitis.

- Do not use creams, ointments, or oils on the nipples or areolae on a routine basis to heal sore nipples, abrasions, or cracks. The Montgomery’s glands in the areola secrete oils that naturally cleanse, lubricate, and protect the nipple and the areola during breastfeeding. This process usually eliminates the need for other lubricants. 

---

**Counting Wet Diapers and Bowel Movements**

An infant’s release of urine and bowel movements will vary from the earliest days to 6 weeks of age and after. Typical number of wet diapers and bowel movements in an infant first week could be as follows:

- At least 1 wet diaper in the first 24 hours, and 1 bowel movement occurs within 8 hours after birth.
- At least 2 wet and 3 soiled diapers by 2 days of age.
- 5 to 6 wet and 3 soiled diapers by 3 days of age.
- At least 6 wet and 3 soiled diapers per day by 4 to 7 days of age.
- A varying number of soiled diapers per day after 6 weeks of age, based on the varying number of bowel movements an infant may have per day—from fewer than one to many.


---

She feels cramping in her lower abdomen, which indicates uterine contractions. (Some mothers feel these contractions in the early postpartum period.)

If there is any question whether the infant is receiving adequate nourishment, it would be appropriate to assess the infant’s breastfeeding history, feeding patterns, and growth using CDC growth charts. Refer the infant to the health care provider or a WIC-designated breastfeeding expert for further assessment. 

➤ See also: Chapter 1, “Anthropometric Data,” page 2.
Expressing Human Milk

A woman may need or want to express, or extract, some of the human milk from her breast under these circumstances:

- Her breasts are engorged.
- Mother and infant are separated (e.g., milk is needed while the infant is with a with another caregiver in a day care).
- Mother or infant is sick or hospitalized.

All breastfeeding mothers can benefit from knowing how to express their human milk. Human milk can either be expressed manually or by breast pump—either hand or electric. Breast pumps are medical devices regulated by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Pumps can be used to maintain or increase a mother’s milk supply and to relieve plugged milk ducts and engorged breasts. They also help pull out flat or inverted nipples so that an infant can more easily latch on to the mother’s breast. See also: “Choosing a Breast Pump,” page 67.

Manual Milk Expression

In order to express milk cleanly and efficiently by hand, the mother should follow these basic steps:

- A washcloth with warm water may be placed on the breast about 5 minutes before milk expression.
- Wash hands thoroughly with soap and warm water.
- Gently massage the breast from the outside quadrants toward the areola; avoid applying deep pressure or friction.
- Place the hand with the fingers below and the thumb above, about 1¼ inches away from the nipple base to form a “C” (see image above, right).
- Press toward the chest wall and then compress the thumb and fingers together, rolling them toward the nipple.
- Move the hand around the areola area of the breast where milk ducts may still contain milk.
- Use the free hand to massage the breast from the outer quadrants toward the nipple. Do not squeeze the nipple.

Breast Pump Milk Expression

For working mothers or for those who must travel or otherwise be away from their infant, a breast pump is often a necessity rather than a convenience. The milk can be stored for easy use by another parent or caregiver. The following basic steps may be used for pumping milk:

- Wash hands thoroughly with soap and water and dry them fully with a clean paper towel before using the pump.
- It is not necessary to wash the breasts unless a mother has been using a cream or balm that should be removed before the infant attaches.
- Assembled the pump correctly, following the pump manufacturer’s instructions.
- Pumping should take place in a clean, and comfortable place where a mother can relax. An outlet may be needed if the pump is electric. Some mothers find that looking at a picture of the infant, or even holding the child, helps them relax.
- Place the nipple into the center of the flange or breast shield so that the shield is comfortable and does not irritate the nipple or breast tissue.
Human Milk Storage

Tips for Collecting and Storing Expressed Human Milk

Pumped/expressed human milk is a perishable food, which must be stored properly for safe consumption. Table 3.1 on page 66 gives human milk storage guidelines. The mother should also follow these steps to collect and store the milk:

- Wash hands thoroughly with soap and water.
- Wash bottles and pumping supplies in hot soapy water in a clean wash basin used only for washing infant feeding equipment, or in the dishwasher. (Be sure to check the manufacturer information on whether pump parts are dishwasher-safe.)
- Store human milk in clean glass or BPA-free plastic bottles with tight-fitting lids. Do not use disposable bottle liners or other plastic bags to store human milk. (Bottles or milk storage bags that are made for freezing human milk, with the recycle symbol number 7 indicate that the container may be made of a BPA-containing plastic)
- Put the collection date on the container and then place it in the refrigerator or freezer. Do not store milk on the shelves in the refrigerator or freezer door because the temperature there varies due to the frequency of opening and closing the door.
- If giving the milk to a childcare provider, put the infant’s name on the container and talk to the provider about guidelines for storing, thawing, and reheating human milk.
- When traveling for short periods of time, such as to and from work or school, store expressed milk in an insulated cooler bag with ice packs.

Know Your Milk—and Keep It Safe

Since human milk is not homogenized, the fat in it will separate and come to the top. Also, if human milk sits for a while, there may be small lumps of cream that do not dissolve. These characteristics are all normal. For optimal safety, human milk should always be collected in a very clean container: rigid plastic or glass containers are generally recommended.

Freezing Milk

Human milk can be frozen immediately after it is collected. Freeze in portions generally needed for a single feeding. See portion sizes and other tips below:

- Freeze milk in small batches of 2 to 4 ounces.
- Freeze some 1-ounce portions for times when the infant wants extra milk.
- Leave an inch or so of space at the top of the container because milk will expand as it freezes.
■ Store milk in the back of the freezer, not on the shelves of the freezer door.
■ To add freshly pumped milk to milk already frozen, chill the fresh milk before adding it.

Thawing and Warming Milk
When it is feeding time, these tips should be followed for preparing frozen human milk for an infant:

■ Read the labels created with collection dates and use the oldest stored milk first. Practice FIFO (first in, first out).
■ Milk may be thawed in several ways: in the refrigerator overnight, under lukewarm running water, or in a container of warm water.
■ Thawed milk should be used within 1 to 2 hours or placed in the refrigerator.
■ Thawed milk placed in the refrigerator should be used within 1 day (24 hours) after it is thawed.
■ Milk should be gently swirled (not shaken) to mix it, as it is normal for human milk to separate.
■ Human milk does not need to be warmed. It can be served cold or at room temperature.

If the milk is warmed, parents or caregivers should test the temperature by dropping some on their wrist. The milk should be comfortably warm.
■ Discard unused milk left in the bottle within 1 to 2 hours after the infant is finished feeding.
■ Human milk should not be microwaved. Microwaving creates hot spots, which can burn the infant’s mouth.
■ Never refreeze thawed human milk, even if it had been refrigerated.

Common Concerns
Flat or Inverted Nipples
Women get concerned that they may not be able to breastfeed successfully when they have flat or inverted nipples. Remember, for breastfeeding to work, the infant must latch on to both the nipple and the breast. Often, flat and inverted nipples will protrude more over time as the infant sucks more.53

TABLE 3.1 – Human Milk Storage Guidelines for the Special Supplemental Nutrition Program for Women, Infants, and Children (WIC)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Storage temperatures*</th>
<th>Countertop or table</th>
<th>Refrigerator</th>
<th>Freezer with separate door</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Freshly pumped / expressed human milk</td>
<td>Up to 4 hours</td>
<td>Up to 4 days</td>
<td>Within 6 months is best, up to 12 months is acceptable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thawed human milk</td>
<td>1–2 hours</td>
<td>Up to 1 day (24 hours)</td>
<td>Never refreeze human milk after it has been thawed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Note: These guidelines are for healthy full-term babies and may vary for premature or sick babies. Check with your health care provider. Guidelines are for home use only and not for hospital use.
Choosing a Breast Pump

Before buying a breast pump, a mother should discuss individual needs with a WIC-designated breastfeeding expert. Working or staying at home can make a difference in time and efficiency needed.

Many WIC participants obtain pumps through health insurers, group health plans, and Medicaid. State Medicaid programs, accessed at https://www.medicaid.gov/, may cover pump costs; also, military families may gain aid through TRICARE, accessed through http://www.tricare.mil/CoveredServices/IsItCovered/BreastPumpsSupplies.aspx. Some State agencies may also supply breast pumps to a group of mothers and infants based on Agency issuance protocol.

Manual Pumps

Many mothers like to use manual breast pumps because they are inexpensive, have few parts to manage, and will work as well or better than low-cost electric or battery-powered pumps. They may just take a little longer to use. Below are examples of pumps. Choices are the handle-style (below left) and the piston-style (below right).

**NOTE:** The rubber bulb-style manual pump (not shown here) is not recommended; bacteria can build up inside the bulb and contaminate the milk.

What to Do

- Talk to a breastfeeding expert or a physician.
- Use the fingers to try and pull the nipples out.
- Some experts believe that a woman can correct these conditions by wearing breast shells or milk cups in her bra toward the end of her pregnancy and, if still needed, between feedings during the postpartum period. However, the use of breast shells has not proven to be effective in the limited studies done to date.

**NOTE:** If a woman has or thinks she has flat or inverted nipples, refer her to a health care provider or a WIC-designated breastfeeding expert for assistance.

**Sore Nipples**

Although mild nipple discomfort may occur when breastfeeding is initiated, pain that continues or becomes severe is not normal and should be assessed by a breastfeeding expert or physician.

Sore nipples beyond postpartum or soreness accompanied by visible damage to the breast or nipples may be caused by these and other factors:

- **Incorrect positioning and latch-on to the breast.** If an infant is not positioned appropriately for breastfeeding or the mouth is not attached to the breast with a good portion of the areola in the mouth, the nipple can become irritated. The infant’s grasp on the nipple should not feel painful to the mother if the infant is properly attached to her breast. ► See also: “Attachment (Latch-On),” page 58; and “How to Initiate Breastfeeding,” page 59.
- **Trauma that produces cracking.** This may come from failing to release suction before removing the infant from the breast, overzealous breast cleansing (mothers should be instructed to avoid harsh soaps), climate variables, or other potential causes of nipple pain.
- **Delaying feedings.** Delaying feedings can cause more pain and harm your milk supply. If you find yourself wanting to delay feedings because of pain, get help from a lactation consultant. ► See also: “Frequency and Duration,” pages 60–61.
- **An infection called thrush.** The nipples suddenly become sore and cracked, with pink, flaky skin. They may itch and burn. Thrush may also appear as white spots on the inside of the infant’s cheeks, tongue, or gums. In this case, a health care provider should be consulted for both the mother and infant.

**Infant’s medical reason.** Conditions such as ankyloglossia (tongue-tie) or cleft palate may not allow an infant to latch on to the breast correctly.

**Engorgement**

Engorgement refers to the firm and painful overfilling and edema of the breasts. Normal fullness, common in the first weeks of lactation, is the result of new milk production along with increased blood flow to the breasts. By the 2nd or 3rd week postpartum, this normal fullness decreases and the breasts will feel softer, even when the milk supply is plentiful.

Engorgement may occur when milk is infrequently or ineffectively removed from the breast because of sore nipples, a sleepy infant, or mother-infant separation. When engorgement occurs, the breasts will feel full, hard, warm, tender, and painful. It may be difficult to attach the infant to the breast because the nipple and areola become very taut and hard to grasp. Cases of severe engorgement are associated with abrupt changes in breastfeeding frequency, such as when a mother skips several feedings in a day without pumping. Also, untreated engorgement can lead to mastitis.
What to Do

There are a number of ways to relieve engorgement:

- Apply moist heat (hold a washcloth soaked in warm water to the breasts or stand under a warm or hot shower) for 10 to 20 minutes before a feeding to facilitate the milk let-down reflex.
- Express some milk to soften the areola and breast and allow the nipple to protrude easily.
- Try reverse pressure softening. This makes the areola soft around the base of the nipple and facilitates the infant’s latch. (Refer to the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services’ Your Guide to Breastfeeding for examples of engorgement relief measures.)
- Massage the breasts to encourage the flow of milk and to relieve fullness.
- Apply cold compresses to the breasts after feedings to reduce swelling and pain.
- The best management for engorgement is prevention, by having the infant breastfeed frequently and effectively every 1 to 3 hours, or by pumping/expressing milk as needed.

Speak with a WIC breastfeeding peer counselor or WIC-designated breastfeeding expert for advice on how to address these conditions.

Plugged Milk Ducts

A plugged milk duct can occur when a milk duct becomes clogged with milk. A mother with a plugged milk duct will commonly complain of a localized tender area on her breast or a lump she can feel in her breast, but she does not have fever or other flu-like symptoms. Plugged ducts can be caused by improper positioning of the infant on the breast, severe engorgement, consistent breastfeeding on one breast only, infrequent or skipped feedings, or pressure applied on the breast by a tight bra or other constricting clothing, certain sleeping positions, and other means.

What to Do

To release a plugged milk duct, a mother can take the following steps:

- Massage the breast from the plugged area down to the nipple before and during breastfeeding.
- Breastfeed frequently (at least every 2 hours) and use different positions.
- Position the infant’s chin toward the plugged duct and empty the affected breast first.
- Express after feeding on the affected side.
- Loosen tight clothing, especially the bra.
- Get plenty of rest.

Because mastitis can result if plugged milk ducts are not relieved, a mother should contact her health care provider if the plugged duct does not go away or if she starts developing symptoms of mastitis.

Mastitis

Mastitis is an infection of the breast. The infection commonly enters through a break in the skin, usually a cracked nipple. It can occur if a mother does not breastfeed frequently and effectively, and thus often appears following engorgement or plugged ducts. This condition frequently occurs at times of stress or change in usual routine (e.g., visitors, holiday time, returning to work). Frequent and effective breastfeeding, which empties the milk from the breasts regularly, can prevent most cases of mastitis from developing. A mother with mastitis may have any of a number of symptoms: tenderness and/or redness of the breast, yellowish discharge from the nipple that looks like colostrum, or flu-like symptoms such as body aches, headache, nausea, vomiting, fever, chills, malaise, or fatigue.

NOTE: A breastfeeding mother complaining of any of the above symptoms should contact or be referred to her health care provider immediately.

The management for mastitis is the same as for a plugged duct: apply heat, get plenty of rest, drink adequate fluids, and breastfeed often, preferably from the affected breast first. The milk is not harmful to the infant. Antibiotics will usually be prescribed to cure the infection. To prevent the recurrence of mastitis, it is important that a mother take the entire course of prescribed medication, even if her symptoms have disappeared before the medication is finished. It is recommended that the mother continue
breastfeeding, using both breasts at each feeding, and breastfeed frequently to remedy and prevent this condition.

**Poor Suckling**

An infant who does not appear to be correctly attached to the breast, chews on the nipple, or pushes the nipple out of his or her mouth may not be suckling effectively. Poor suckling may result from improperly positioning an infant, incorrect use of the tongue while breastfeeding, nipple preference, and other problemssuch as ankyloglossia (tongue-tie). An infant who suckles poorly may be breastfeeding often but ineffectively, and thus possibly not receiving sufficient milk from the breasts. Ultimately, poor suckling can result in a decrease in the mother’s milk supply as well as an infant who is frustrated, gaining weight inadequately, has a low urinary output, and has abnormally infrequent stools.

**NOTE:** If a mother complains that her infant has any of these symptoms, refer the infant to a health care provider or WIC-designated breastfeeding expert who can provide assessment, counseling, and follow-up services to correct suckling problems.

**Jaundice**

After the birth of an infant, it is important to watch the newborn’s health closely. One thing that the health care provider will monitor is jaundice. Mild jaundice is common in most newborns and often disappears on its own. However, for moderate or severe cases of jaundice the infant may need medical care. Jaundice is visible in the yellowing of an infant’s skin and eyes. Jaundice occurs when a substance called bilirubin builds up in the infant’s system faster than it can be broken down by the liver and eliminated through the infant’s stool and urine. Extra feedings usually help rid the infant’s body of the extra bilirubin. However, if the bilirubin level is unusually high and not treated immediately and effectively, there is risk of damage to the infant’s brain and nervous system.

- **Breastfeeding jaundice** occurs within the first week of life when an infant does not take in enough milk. One out of 10 infants develops this condition. Too little milk intake can lead to decreased bowel movements, thus causing bilirubin levels to reabsorb and not be eliminated from the body. With increased feedings, the condition usually improves within two weeks.

**NOTE:** In all cases of jaundice, the parent or caregiver’s health care provider should be consulted immediately for guidance.

**Appetite Spurts and Growth Spurts**

Appetite spurts and growth spurts are short periods of time when the infant breastfeeds more frequently than normal. When the infant is around 2 to 3 weeks of age, mothers may notice the infant acts hungrier than normal and may not seem satisfied. A mother may feel these signs indicate that she is not producing enough milk for her infant. Many mothers begin to supplement their feedings with infant formula, or even stop breastfeeding completely. Mothers should not stop breastfeeding, and this is why: the infant is actually signaling the mother’s body to produce more milk to meet the infant’s growing needs. The mother should be encouraged to keep the infant at the breast as often as the infant demands to feed during this period. Frequent feeding will increase her milk supply to meet her infant’s increased needs, and eventually the infant will resume a more normal feeding pattern.

Appetite spurts can also occur around 6 weeks, 3 months, and 6 months of age. The duration of each appetite spurt may vary. By giving breastfeeding mothers guidance in advance, WIC breastfeeding staff can help them anticipate and recognize changes in feeding patterns and keep mothers from supplementing or premature weaning.
NOTE: If a mother expresses concern that an appetite spurt lasts longer than a few days, refer her to a WIC-designated breastfeeding expert.

Teething and Biting
Teething and biting are not reasons to wean an infant from the breast. Infants can continue to breastfeed while growing teeth without causing pain to the mother. As teeth emerge, babies learn how to breastfeed without biting. If the infant bears down on the mother before the teeth come in, the mother can discourage this behavior by slipping a finger in the infant’s mouth to break suction, then removing the infant from the breast with a firm “No” (without yelling, which can scare the infant). Another option for mothers is to put the infant down for a moment to show that biting brings a negative consequence; the infant can then be picked up again and be provided comfort. Infants learn quickly not to bite down if the feeding is stopped. Offering a cold teething toy or frozen wet washcloth to the infant before breastfeeding may also help soothe the infant’s gums and prevent biting. ► See also: Chapter 6, “Teething,” page 152; and “Home Remedies and Teething Gels: What to Avoid,” page 153.

Refusing to Breastfeed
An infant’s sudden refusal to breastfeed is often referred to as a “nursing strike” and may occur at any time. Mothers may perceive this as a personal rejection, and a nursing strike may lead to early or unplanned weaning. Many mothers never figure out what causes a nursing strike, but the following may be among the reasons:57

- Onset of a mother’s menses
- Maternal stress
- Change in maternal diet
- Infant being distracted while breastfeeding, perhaps by surrounding activities
- Infant being upset by hearing arguing or harsh speaking tones while breastfeeding
- Ear infection, which causes the infant pain when sucking or pressure when lying on one side
- Mouth pain from teething, a fungal infection, or a cold sore
- Change in the mother’s soap, deodorant, or perfume
- Infant nasal congestion
- A mother’s return to work, or a period of separation of the dyad
- Infant nasal obstruction, gastroesophageal reflux disease, or teething

Efforts to restore or continue breastfeeding may take several days. Mothers will need reassurance to continue the breastfeeding relationship and should be encouraged to continue putting the infant to the breast, especially when the infant shows signs of hunger or when he or she is just awakening or sleepy. Mothers can also minimize distractions and increase the amount of time holding or cuddling the infant, including using skin-to-skin contact. Mothers should be advised to maintain their milk supply by pumping or hand expression to ensure continued adequate milk production. Mothers should be instructed to provide the infant with pumped human milk in a cup, spoon, or dropper until breastfeeding resumes.

Slow Weight Gain
An infant’s weight gain is the most reliable sign of breastfeeding success. When an infant does not gain weight adequately, action should be taken to increase weight and prevent premature weaning. It is common for breastfed and formula-fed infants to lose a few ounces of weight in the first three or four days of life. During this time, infants pass their first stools and eliminate the extra fluids they are born with. After this period the infant’s weight loss should reverse, and by the time the infant is 14 days old the birth weight should be exceeded.58 An infant usually gains about 1 ounce per day during the first six months. ► See also: “Indicators of Whether an Infant Is Getting Enough Milk,” page 62–63.

NOTE: If an infant is under birth weight by 2 weeks of age or a mother is concerned about her infant’s weight, she should consult her infant’s health care provider.
Sleeping Through the Night

Although many parents and caregivers worry about getting their infant to sleep through the night, the reality is that an infant’s digestive system is not designed to go an extended amount of time without food.

Infants need the important nutrition that night feedings can provide for growth and development. Night feedings are also important for the breastfeeding mother because they help maintain a healthy milk supply and prevent the mother’s breasts from becoming overly full. Mothers may feel pressure from family members and friends who indicate that their infant slept through the night at an early age; however, it is important to remind mothers that infants have different feeding patterns with different time intervals. Some infants cluster feed in the late evening and sleep longer at night. Other infants feed every two to three hours through the night.59

Sleep deprivation is natural in the early weeks after childbirth. Getting to know an infant’s feeding and sleeping patterns is a learning process for parents and caregivers whether they breastfeed or formula-feed their infant. Both feeding methods may disrupt sleep, but breastfeeding eliminates having to get up and prepare a bottle of formula. Mothers can use strategies such as keeping the infant close to the bed in a bassinet, sleeping when the infant sleeps, resisting the temptation to do too much in the first few weeks, and accepting help from others in order to get more rest. Assure parents and caregivers that as infants grow, they will sleep for longer intervals.

NOTE: Sleep deprivation can place a mother at risk for postpartum depression. It is essential that she seek help from her health care provider if she is noticing excessive mood changes, anxiety, or depression.60

Complementary Bottles and Pacifier Use

In order to establish a good human milk supply, advise mothers to avoid feeding complementary bottles of fluids other than human milk or using pacifiers until breastfeeding is well-established, unless instructed to do so by a doctor or lactation consultant.61 Infant feeding should not be supplemented with water or any fluids other than human milk unless medically indicated.

Some problems that may be caused or aggravated by feeding complementary bottles or using a pacifier:

- **Preference for artificial nipples.** Artificial nipples on bottles and pacifiers require different movements of the infant’s tongue, lips, and jaw and may make it difficult for infants to easily go back to the mother’s nipple and breast.

- **Engorgement.** Bottles and pacifiers decrease the amount of time the infant spends breastfeeding, potentially leading to a mother’s breast engorgement. Mothers can prevent this by starting frequent breastfeeding immediately postpartum.62

- **Refusal of the breast.** After bottle-feeding, the infant may become frustrated with the change and not easily go back to suckling from the breast.

- **Early weaning.** Some mothers may wish to partially breastfeed and feed some infant formula. Because the infant fills up on infant formula and suckles less from the breast, a reduction in the mother’s milk production occurs. This often leads a mother to wean the infant early. If a mother desires to wean her infant from the breast over the first few weeks of life, she should be advised to see a WIC-designated breastfeeding expert.

NOTE: Sleep deprivation can place a mother at risk for postpartum depression. It is essential that she seek help from her health care provider if she is noticing excessive mood changes, anxiety, or depression.60

Mothers who report any of the above problems can be referred to a WIC-designated breastfeeding expert for assistance. ► See also: “Weaning the Breastfed Infant,” page 75.

Sleep through the night: Parents and caregivers have different definitions of what “through the night” means. Researchers use midnight to 5 a.m. as the standard definition; however, many mothers consider it to be much longer.

Cluster feed: Also called “bunch feed,” this is when an infant feeds close together at certain times of the day, most commonly in the evening.
Planning Time Away From the Infant

Many mothers need or want to return to work or school outside the home shortly after their infant’s birth. Mothers who are temporarily separated from their infants can successfully continue to provide their human milk for the infant through another parent or caregiver. Some mothers can successfully continue breastfeeding by bringing the infant along. The following tips may improve a mother’s ability to do both:

- **If possible, delay the return to work or school.** The period from birth to 4 to 6 weeks of age is critical for establishing a mother’s milk supply. Or, return only part time if possible in the early months after birth. If a mother returns to work or school before that time and is away from her infant for long periods, she may have difficulty maintaining her milk supply.

- **Learn to express human milk.** A mother who is comfortable expressing human milk manually (by hand) or mechanically (using a breast pump) can collect her milk while away from her infant. Mothers who begin expressing, collecting, and freezing small amounts of milk each day are able to build up a stored supply of milk. One recommendation is to pump twice a day, in addition to breastfeeding the infant, beginning several weeks before the mother returns to work or school. This allows the milk supply to increase gradually over the weeks so there is plenty for another parent or caregiver to feed the infant while the mother is away, or for the mother to supplement breastfeedings when she returns.  
  
  See also: “Expressing Human Milk,” pages 64–65.

- **Inquire about breastfeeding support at work or school.** Some venues may feature supportive policies (e.g., allowing breaks or flexible work hours for pumping or breastfeeding) and facilities or equipment for breastfeeding mothers (e.g., special rooms or areas for breastfeeding with privacy, an electric breast pump for employees’ use, or a refrigerator to store expressed milk).

- **Make childcare arrangements for the infant.** These will vary by circumstance and can include care by relatives, center-based care, care provided in a temporary caregiver’s home, and care provided in the infant’s home by another parent or a temporary caregiver. Mothers should be encouraged to choose an arrangement that supports breastfeeding and, in the case of a childcare center, allows her to breastfeed if she visits. Instructions for the other parent or the temporary caregiver should include the following:
  - How to use frozen human milk  
    See also: “Thawing and Warming Milk,” on page 66.
  - How much expressed human milk (or infant formula) the infant usually consumes and how often he or she usually eats (depending on the infant’s stage of development and other factors).

Know Your Workplace Rights as a Nursing Mother

On March 23, 2010, the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (PPACA) was signed into law. It amended Section 7 of the Fair Labor Standards Act (FLSA) of 1938 and provided general information on employee requirements to allow break time for certain nursing mothers. The employee shall be provided with the following benefits:

- A reasonable amount of break time to express milk as needed by the nursing mother up to 1 year after the child’s birth. (The frequency and length of breaks will likely vary.)

- A private, functional space for expressing human milk. This cannot be a bathroom, even if private.

Further specifics and guidance on the legislation are provided by the U.S. Department of Labor in the source given below. State legislation may provide more strict guidance on workplace support for breastfeeding mothers than does the Federal legislation.

• How to follow the infant’s hunger and satiety cues in order to determine when and how much to feed the infant

■ Make arrangements for safely storing expressed human milk away from home. It helps if a refrigerator is available for storage at the work site or school. When a mother travels brief distances, such as to and from work or school, the pumped/expressed milk should be stored in a cooler or insulated cooler bag with packed ice or frozen ice packs. The mother should label each milk container with the collection date and always use the oldest milk first. ➤ See also: Table 3.1, “Human Milk Storage,” page 66.

■ Prepare the infant for being fed by another parent or temporary caregiver. The infant needs to be introduced to a bottle about two weeks before the mother starts going to work or school. The infant should be at least 3 to 4 weeks old. By that age, the mother’s milk supply should be established and the infant should be able to move back and forth between the mother’s nipple and a bottle nipple. An older infant may take human milk from a cup.

■ Maintain a good milk supply. Mothers should establish a plan to breastfeed and pump milk consistently throughout the day. Many working mothers begin giving formula to an infant because they believe their milk production lessens when they are not breastfeeding throughout the day. This does not have to be the case if mothers follow these steps:63
  • Determine the number of times the infant is breastfed during a 24-hour period. Write down the number.
  • Within every 24-hour period, the mother will either breastfeed or express her milk to use later. Perhaps the number is nine. She would aim to feed the infant at home six times, and then express milk at work three times.
  • If either a breastfeeding or expression is missed within a 24-hour period, the mother can aim to return to her schedule the following day.
  • It is important for a mother to always replace the expressed milk she has stored in her freezer. Continually expressing replacement milk will keep up her overall milk production.

■ Arrange for milk expression or breastfeeding during the workday or school day. Mothers often express their milk during breaks and/or the lunch hour. Other mothers can go to their infants or have their infants brought to them to breastfeed. Some infants wait until the mother arrives home to do most of their breastfeeding; this is not a problem as long as the infant is consuming an adequate amount to maintain proper growth.

Although additional planning and scheduling is required for a mother to express adequate milk or breastfeed during the day while she is working or attending school, continuing to breastfeed, to whatever degree, benefits both the mother and her infant.64 ➤ See also: Chapter 4, “Guidelines for Safe, Effective Bottle-Feeding,” pages 100–101.

Flight Rules for Carrying Expressed Milk

The Transportation Security Administration (TSA) considers human milk, both liquid and frozen, a liquid medication. It may be carried on the plane whether or not the breastfeeding child is also traveling. Parents and caregivers should know these points:

■ Human milk is allowed in excess of the usual 3.4 ounces in reasonable quantities and does not need to be placed in a resealable bag. It must be labeled appropriately.

■ The parent or caregiver can ask to be directed to the designated family checkpoint and should tell the TSA officer at the screening entrance that the liquids are medically required.

■ Airport X-ray machines have no effect on breastfeeding, human milk, or the process of lactation; however, there may be additional screening that might include opening the milk container.

Weaning the Breastfed Infant

The AAP recommends that breastfeeding be continued through the infant's first year, and then for as long after as is mutually desired by the mother and child. Research demonstrates that the benefits of breastfeeding are dose-responsive; that is, the longer a mother breastfeeds, the more benefit her infant will receive. The HHS, Office of Disease Prevention and Health Promotion (ODPHP) initiative Healthy People 2020 calls for an increase in infants being breastfed up to 1 year of age to 34 percent. While the decision for weaning an infant from the breast is between each mother and infant, the weaning process usually begins as complementary foods are introduced and the infant is breastfeeding less frequently.

Approach to Gradual Weaning

Mothers who wish to wean their exclusively breastfed infants onto infant formula tend to experience less discomfort if the weaning process is gradual (e.g., over several weeks or longer). Gradual weaning also allows infants time to adjust to both the taste of infant formula and to drinking from a bottle or cup. Mothers can formally start weaning from the breast by replacing a feeding of human milk with a feeding of infant formula (or whole cow's milk if the infant is over 12 months old). After the first formula feeding, the infant may be less interested in the next breastfeeding and the mother's breasts may not feel full. The bedtime breastfeeding is often the last to be eliminated. Gradually, over several days or even weeks, additional breastfeedings can be eliminated. When down to one feeding per day, the infant can be breastfed every other day. Some mothers and infants may still want to breastfeed once in a while just for comfort or to relax.

Abrupt or sudden weaning is occasionally necessary due to a mother’s severe illness or prolonged separation of mother and infant. In such cases, mothers should hand express or pump just enough milk to remain comfortable, without draining the breast. They may apply ice to reduce swelling and wear a firm but nonbinding bra for support.

Weaning to a Bottle or a Cup

A mother who wishes to discontinue breastfeeding can wean her infant over 6 months old to infant formula. An infant 12 months or older may be given whole cow's milk in a bottle and/or cup, depending on the infant's developmental ability. Some infants may need to be weaned to a bottle because they are not developmentally ready to drink significant quantities of liquid from a cup. It is advisable to wean infants entirely off the bottle and onto a cup by about 15 months old.

Relactation

Either rebuilding a milk supply after it has been reduced or dried up, or building it from the start, is called relactation. Often a mother weans prematurely because she feels she is not producing enough milk and therefore should feed her infant formula. If she decides to resume breastfeeding, relactation is easiest when attempted soon after weaning, especially if the infant is not yet 6 months of age (although it does work with older infants). The process is also easier if the mother still nurses infrequently. Nonbirth caregivers or parents who have never nursed can also relactate. A WIC-designated breastfeeding expert can guide on this process, which works best if the mother is motivated to follow the key steps, including breast stimulation, and to receive continued support.

NOTE: Refer the mother to a WIC-designated breastfeeding expert for assistance with relactation.

Relactation: Also called “induced lactation,” this is the process of a mother restarting her milk supply after she has weaned and her milk has dried up. The term can also be applied to a mother who has never nursed or to a nonbirth mother who wishes to develop a milk supply.
In general, there are very few true contraindications to breastfeeding. Most women who desire to breastfeed can do so without problems. Under certain circumstances, a physician will need to make a case-by-case assessment to determine whether a woman’s environmental exposure or her medical condition warrants her to interrupt or stop breastfeeding.

Infectious Diseases

Acute infectious illnesses such as colds or gastrointestinal and urinary tract infections are not contraindications to breastfeeding. More significant infectious diseases must be evaluated for the risk of transmission to the infant. Research has conclusively demonstrated that the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) can be transmitted through breastfeeding and/or human milk. In the United States, the AAP and the CDC recommend that HIV-positive mothers should not breastfeed their infants. In addition, in the United States, breastfeeding is not advised for infants of mothers with human T-cell lymphotropic virus type 1 or type 2 (HTLV-1, HTLV-2).

There are a number of other infectious diseases for which breastfeeding may need to be temporarily discontinued while therapy is initiated or until the risk of transmission has passed:

- Varicella-zoster virus
- Herpes simplex virus (when lesions occur on the breast)
- Active tuberculosis
- Brucellosis
- Hepatitis (There is no contraindication to breastfeeding for a mother who has tested positive for hepatitis B or C unless her nipples are cracked and bleeding.)
- Cytomegalovirus (CMV) in preterm infants or infants with weakened immunity

**NOTE:** In all cases of nonroutine infectious illness, the mother’s health care provider should be consulted for appropriate therapy and guidance on continuation of breastfeeding.

Pharmacological Therapy

Few medications are contraindicated while breastfeeding; however, breastfeeding may not be advised if the mother is receiving certain prescription medications for illness. She must talk with her health care provider about her specific medications and how to balance the benefits of breastfeeding for the infant against the risk of exposing the infant to a potentially harmful pharmacological substance. The National Institutes of Health National Library of Medicine provides an online database with information about drugs and the implications for breastfeeding mothers, called LactMed. However, this is not a substitute for discussing the individual’s concerns with a health care provider. See also: “Use of Cigarettes, Alcohol, and Other Substances During Breastfeeding,” pages 77–82.

Metabolic Disorders

If an infant has a metabolic disease that requires a specialized infant formula, breastfeeding may be contraindicated (e.g., in the case of infants with galactosemia, a rare medical condition). Infants with the metabolic disorder phenylketonuria (PKU) can breastfeed on a limited basis as long as their diet is supplemented with a special low-phenylalanine infant formula and they are carefully monitored by their health care provider. Screening for both disorders takes place via a newborn screening blood test performed before the infant leaves the hospital after birth.

Breast Surgery or Piercing

Medically indicated or cosmetic breast surgery and nipple piercing have become more common in recent years. Although most mothers who have had breast or nipple surgery are able to produce some milk, establishing a full milk supply

**Galactosemia:** A rare genetic metabolic disorder that affects an individual’s ability to metabolize galactose (a sugar) in the body. If untreated, this disorder can lead to low blood sugar, vomiting, diarrhea, lethargy, brain damage, and death.

**PKU:** An inherited metabolic disorder caused by an enzyme deficiency resulting in an accumulation of phenylalanine and its metabolites in the blood. If untreated, this disorder can lead to mental retardation and seizures.
for their infants may not always be possible. However, these mothers can still have a successful breastfeeding experience by supplementing in a way that supports breastfeeding. In fact, breastfeeding should be encouraged in most cases. Additional assistance, monitoring, and encouragement should be provided during the first few days and beyond to ensure sustained, successful milk production. The following women may successfully breastfeed:

- Women with a history of breast cancer
- Women with previous radiation or lumpectomy
- Women with breast tissue trauma and burns requiring grafting
- Women with a single mastectomy who can breastfeed from the remaining breast
- Women who have undergone breast enlargement with silicone or saline implants
- Women with pierced nipples (Rings or studs should be removed to prevent the infant from choking. If a pierced nipple was infected at any time, scar tissue may have developed that could make breastfeeding more difficult. If scarring has not occurred, milk may flow through the piercings; this will not harm the infant.)

Breast reduction surgery is more likely to interfere with successful breastfeeding because milk ducts and nerves may have been cut.

**Use of Cigarettes, Alcohol, and Other Substances During Breastfeeding**

In a 2012 policy statement, “Breastfeeding and the Use of Human Milk,” the AAP states that maternal substance abuse is not a categorical contraindication to breastfeeding; however, it is best for a breastfeeding mother to avoid alcohol, tobacco, and illegal drugs because most maternally ingested substances are transmitted to human milk. Still, a variety of factors affect the concentration of a harmful substance and its potential danger to a breastfed infant.73


This section provides information on the use of cigarettes, alcohol, nonprescriptive drugs, caffeine-containing products, herbal teas, and other products during breastfeeding.

**Smoking**

Whether a mother or other parent or caregiver smokes cigarettes or marijuana, or both, there can be significant effects on an infant’s health—and on the smoker’s health. To help create an optimal environment in which an infant can sustain health and thrive, it is recommended that a parent or caregiver work to make that environment smoke-free.

**Cigarettes**

The AAP does not consider maternal smoking to be an absolute contraindication to breastfeeding; therefore, a mother who smokes cigarettes can still provide her infant the benefits of breastfeeding and should be encouraged to do so. However, due to its association with an increased incidence in infant respiratory illness and SIDS, and because smoking is a risk factor for low milk supply and poor infant weight gain, breastfeeding mothers should be actively discouraged from smoking. At least one study links exposure to cigarette smoke and its metabolites to colic.74

Second-hand smoke is the combination of smoke from the burning end of a cigarette and the smoke exhaled; it contains more than 7,000 chemicals.75 The U.S. Surgeon General designated second-hand smoke as “harmful and hazardous to the health of the general public and particularly dangerous to children” and stated that exposure to it “causes premature death and disease in children and in adults who do not smoke.” In addition, second-hand smoke can lead to these other concerns in children:76

- Ear infection
- Slowed lung growth
- Impaired lung function
- Acute respiratory infections
- Severe asthma
Third-hand smoke can negatively impact infants and children as well since it contains many of the same compounds as secondhand smoke as well as some highly toxic compounds unique to aged tobacco smoke. Exposure to third-hand smoke occurs via toxic substances that remain in the air and dust and on surfaces in the physical environment (e.g., couches, pillows, clothing, blankets, carpets/rugs, walls, draperies, car interiors, toys, etc.) where someone has smoked, even weeks and months after the smoking stops. Infants who live in a home with a smoker are at particular risk since during their first year of life, they spend much of their time indoors and in close proximity to contaminated dust and objects.\(^77\)

Once smoking has occurred indoors, third-hand smoke cannot be eliminated by airing out rooms, opening windows, using fans or air conditioners, or confining smoking to only certain areas of a home.\(^88\) Replacing items is often the only way to reduce, though not eliminate, third-hand smoke residue and mitigate some of the off-gassing of tobacco toxins into the environment (note that if walls and ceilings are not thoroughly washed prior to repainting, the off-gasses and nicotine stains can seep through even multiple layers of paint). Initiating a ban on smoking indoors is advised, even for homes where smoking has already occurred indoors, and those who smoke outside should do so away from open doors or windows, as the smoke can still enter a home.\(^78\)

**E-cigarettes/vaping**\(^79\)

Electronic cigarettes deliver nicotine or other substances in the form of a vapor, which the user inhales. The FDA has not evaluated e-cigarettes for safety and effectiveness; thus, there is no information on their safety, health effects of long-term use, which chemicals they contain, or how much nicotine a user inhales. Limited FDA-conducted laboratory studies of certain samples demonstrated that there are substandard or nonexistent quality control processes used to manufacture these products: “FDA found that cartridges labeled as having no nicotine in fact contained nicotine and that three different electronic cigarette cartridges with the same label emitted a markedly different amount of nicotine with each puff.”

**Recommendations on Cigarettes**

The AAP recognizes pregnancy and lactation as opportune times to promote smoking cessation but indicates that mothers who smoke should still breastfeed because of the numerous benefits it provides the infant, including protection against respiratory illnesses.\(^80\) Smoking mothers may be advised in the following ways:

- **Encourage mothers who smoke to quit.** Refer breastfeeding mothers who smoke, and/or are having difficulty quitting, to smoking cessation programs in your area. If a breastfeeding mother is unable to completely quit smoking, recommend that she do the following:\(^81\)
  - Cut down on the number of cigarettes smoked to the greatest degree possible.
  - Avoid smoking in infant’s presence (nicotine, via cigarette smoke, can also enter an infant’s system from the air) and change clothing after smoking so as to not expose the infant to smoke particles in clothing.
  - Refrain from smoking while breastfeeding her infant.
  - Refrain from smoking until right after a feeding so that nicotine levels will have time to decrease before the next feeding.

- **Advise mothers to ask other smokers to avoid smoking around their infant or other children because of the effects of second- and third-hand smoke.**

- **Encourage mothers to ban smoking (if possible) inside the home where the infant lives, with any smoking outdoors taking place away from open doors or windows.**

- **Advise a mother to speak with her health care provider for support in stopping smoking.** Only one-third of women successfully stop smoking without pharmacologic aids. Nicotine replacement therapy (e.g., nicotine patches or gums) is often promoted to help smoking cessation and is compatible with breastfeeding; however, a mother must consult with her health care provider before using these products. The FDA has not approved e-cigarettes for therapeutic uses, so these products cannot be recommended as a cessation aid.
Marijuana

Marijuana is the most commonly used, and still largely illicit, drug during pregnancy. While most studies cite a self-reported prevalence of use during pregnancy of 2 to 5 percent, this range increases to 15 to 28 percent among young, urban, socially disadvantaged women. Some 48 to 60 percent of marijuana users continue to use during pregnancy, with many women believing that this substance is relatively safe; it is also less expensive than tobacco. Due to a growing number of States legalizing marijuana, the prevalence of pregnant women using this drug could potentially increase.

In its committee opinion “Marijuana Use during Pregnancy and Lactation,” the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists states that, because of concerns regarding impaired neurodevelopment and insufficient data to evaluate the effects of marijuana use on infants during lactation and breastfeeding, pregnant and breastfeeding women should be discouraged from using marijuana. Moreover, “marijuana smoke contains many of the same respiratory disease-causing and carcinogenic toxins as tobacco smoke, often in concentrations several times greater than in tobacco smoke.”

An important point to highlight is that the underlying justification for using marijuana (medicinal versus recreational) does not change marijuana’s effects on the mother, the fetus, or the child. Therefore, despite States legalizing marijuana for both medicinal and recreational purposes, such legalization does not eliminate the concerns regarding pregnant or breastfeeding women using marijuana.

Another important point to highlight is that the FDA neither regulates nor evaluates marijuana; thus, there are no approved safety precautions, indications, contraindications, or recommendations regarding its use during pregnancy and lactation. Similarly, no standardized formulations, dosages, or delivery systems exist. Smoking, the most common method of use, cannot be medically condoned during pregnancy and lactation.

Recommendations on Marijuana

Given that marijuana smoke contains many of the same harmful toxins as tobacco smoke, the same cautions about second- and third-hand tobacco smoke apply to marijuana smoke. In addition, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists recommends the following:

- Advise pregnant women who report smoking marijuana about concerns regarding potential adverse health consequences of continued use during pregnancy.
- Encourage women who are pregnant, contemplating pregnancy, or breastfeeding to discontinue marijuana use. For those women who use marijuana for medicinal purposes, encourage them to use an alternative therapy for which there are better pregnancy-specific safety data. They should discuss options with their health care provider.

Alcohol

Contrary to centuries-old beliefs that may persist in some cultures, consuming alcoholic beverages has not been shown to have any beneficial effects on breastfeeding. Alcohol is not a galactagogue—an agent that promotes lactation—therefore, drinking any type of alcohol will not increase milk supply. When a lactating woman consumes alcohol, some of that alcohol is transferred into her milk and can enter her infant’s body through that milk.

Although alcohol is not stored in human milk, its level parallels that found in the maternal blood within 30 to 60 minutes after ingestion. That means that as long as the mother has substantial blood alcohol levels, the milk also will contain alcohol. Accordingly, the common practice of pumping the breasts and then discarding the milk immediately after drinking alcohol does not hasten the disappearance of alcohol from the milk; the newly produced milk still will contain alcohol as long as the mother has measurable blood alcohol levels.
Effects of Alcohol on Breastfeeding and the Infant

While the harmful effects of a pregnant woman consuming alcohol are well established, the effects on a breastfeeding woman consuming alcohol have not been nearly as extensively examined, and the literature on the prevalence of alcohol consumption during breastfeeding is limited. What has been demonstrated is that alcohol disrupts hormonal control of lactation: it inhibits oxytocin and therefore decreases the milk let-down reflex and may blunt prolactin response to suckling. It may also negatively affect infant motor development. Finally, exposure to small amounts of alcohol in the mother’s milk has a direct effect on infant sleep patterning; this results in an infant spending significantly less time in active sleep immediately after exposure to alcohol in human milk.85

Excessive alcohol intake is associated with failure to initiate the milk let-down reflex, high alcohol levels in milk, lower volumes of human milk ingested by the infant,86 and disturbances in the infant’s sleep-wake pattern.87 The amount of alcohol that may impair the milk let-down reflex is more than about two alcoholic drinks (0.5 grams of alcohol per kilogram of body weight) per day for the average woman. Two drinks are equivalent to about 2 ounces of liquor, two 12-ounce cans of beer, or 8 ounces of table wine.88

Recommendations on Alcohol

The Scientific Report of the 2015 Dietary Guidelines Advisory Committee recognizes that there is substantial evidence that clearly demonstrates the health benefits of breastfeeding and reaffirms that occasionally consuming an alcoholic drink does not warrant stopping breastfeeding. The report does advise that breastfeeding women should be very cautious about drinking alcohol, if they choose to drink at all, and recommends that for those women who do choose to drink:

“If the infant’s breastfeeding behavior is well established, consistent, and predictable (no earlier than at 3 months of age), a mother may consume a single alcoholic drink if she then waits at least 4 hours before breastfeeding. Alternately, a woman may express human milk before consuming the drink and feed the expressed milk to her infant later.”89

To assist in determining alcohol amounts that may be consumed, the Dietary Guidelines for Americans provides reference beverages that are considered “one drink” (i.e., one drink equivalent): 12 fluid ounces of regular beer (5% alcohol), 5 fluid ounces of wine (12% alcohol), or 1.5 fluid ounces of 80-proof distilled spirits (40% alcohol). Since no alcoholic beverages contain the same alcohol content—packaged (e.g., canned beer, bottled wine) and mixed beverages vary in alcohol content—it is important to determine how many drink equivalents are in a beverage and limit intake. Alcoholic drink equivalents of select beverages can be found in Appendix 9 of the 2015-2020 edition of the Dietary Guidelines for Americans.90

Refer breastfeeding mothers who drink excessively to alcohol assessment, treatment, and counseling services in the community. The National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (http://pubs.niaaa.nih.gov/publications/DrinkingPregnancy_HTML/pregnancy.htm) offer resources for finding treatment locations.

The USDA Substance Use Prevention: Screening, Education and Referral Resource Guide for Local WIC Agencies (see page 77) will give more guidance and other resources about alcohol use/abuse that are appropriate for pregnant or breastfeeding mothers.

Caffeine

The amount of caffeine in beverages and foods can vary widely depending on the product and preparation. Moreover, beverage serving sizes have increased significantly in recent years. With this in mind, moderate caffeine intake (300 milligrams daily) in the form of coffee, tea, or caffeinated sodas is unlikely to affect the breastfed infant.91 The amount of caffeine that appears in human milk is usually less than 1 percent of the amount ingested by the mother. Caffeine is not detected in the urine of an infant whose mother consumes up to three cups of coffee throughout the day.92
Sources of caffeine include beverages (coffee, tea, soda, and energy drinks); chocolate; foods made with coffee, such as ice cream; and some medications, which should be avoided (e.g., certain varieties of stimulants, pain relievers, cold remedies, and weight-control aids).

**Recommendations on Caffeine-Containing Products**

Advise women that consuming 300 milligrams of caffeine a day from coffee, tea, or soda is unlikely to affect a breastfeeding infant:

- If a breastfeeding woman feels that her infant becomes more fussy or irritable after she consumes caffeine, she may wish to decrease or stop her intake, keeping in mind all the possible caffeine sources she ingests.
- Advise breastfeeding women to pay attention to the amount of caffeine consumed from all sources, which includes checking the serving sizes of food and beverages.
- Encourage breastfeeding mothers on caffeine-containing medications to consult their health care providers.

**Herbal Preparations and Products**

Little research on the safety and efficacy of herbal therapies exists, and herbal preparations are not well regulated by the FDA. Herbs contain compounds that may have pharmaceutical effects similar to drugs and, like drugs, may pass into human milk.93 Despite the fact that herbs and herbal products may come from natural sources, “natural” does not always mean safe or healthy, and some products can even be toxic. Kava, for instance, can cause liver damage and Yohimbe has been associated with fatalities in children. The FDA has no definition for the term “natural”; thus, there are no standards that must be met. In addition, herbal products may be contaminated with hazardous substances such as plant chemicals, toxic metals, disease-causing microorganisms, fumigants, and pesticides.

Concern has been expressed about the effects on infants of some herbal teas consumed by breastfeeding mothers. Components in some herbal teas made with buckhorn bark, senna, star anise, comfrey, chamomile, and a tea called “Mother’s Milk Tea” (available in specialty food stores) may have undesirable effects on a breastfed infant whose mother consumes the tea. Additionally, adverse effects have been reported in infants whose mothers took products containing arnica (neonatal hemolysis), seaweed (hypothyroidism from excess iodine), stinging nettle (urticaria), St. John’s wort (possible colic, drowsiness, or lethargy), and herbal tea mixture (hypotonia, lethargy, emesis, weak cry, poor sucking attributed to anethole in anise and fennel).94 Prolonged use of fenugreek may require monitoring the mother’s coagulation status and serum glucose concentrations.95 Safety information is lacking for black cohosh, blue cohosh, chastetree, echinacea, ginseng, ginko, and valerian.96

**Recommendations on Herbal Preparations and Products**

In general, advise breastfeeding mothers to avoid herbal preparations and to discuss use of any herbal teas or other products with their health care provider.97 Other advice includes the following points:

- Inform breastfeeding women who ask about or report using herbal preparations that the composition, purity, and efficacy are not well regulated and advise them to use caution when procuring them and to speak with their health care provider.
- Advise mothers that “natural” does not signify safety for her or her infant. Because the FDA does not regulate herbal supplements, there is no guarantee about their safety or effectiveness.
- Advise breastfeeding mothers who face challenges in producing milk to avoid products touted as galactagogues, said to increase milk supply. Although herbalists may promote them as effectively increasing milk production, there is little scientific evidence that they actually work—or are safe. Mothers should seek consultation with a lactation specialist and use nonpharmacologic measures to increase milk supply, such as ensuring proper techniques, using massage,
increasing the frequency of milk expression, prolonging the duration of pumping and maximizing emotional support.98

Other Drugs
Most nonprescription (also over-the-counter, or OTC), prescription, and recreational or illicit drugs (e.g., marijuana, heroin, cocaine) that a breastfeeding mother uses are absorbed by her system and excreted into her milk. However, not all drugs are excreted into human milk at concentrations that are harmful to the infant.

Over-the-Counter (OTC) and Prescription Drugs
Surveys in many countries indicate that 90 to 99 percent of breastfeeding women will receive at least some medication during the first week postpartum.99 In the 2013 clinical report “The Transfer of Drugs and Therapeutics into Human Breast Milk: An Update on Selected Topics,” the AAP reports that “many women are inappropriately advised to discontinue breastfeeding or avoid taking essential medications because of fears of adverse effects in their infants.”100 It is important to avoid mistakenly applying pregnancy warnings on medications to breastfeeding and to understand that “[t]he risks of medication use during pregnancy have little to do with the drug’s safety during breastfeeding because drug exposure of the fetus is usually much greater, often by 10-fold or more, than the exposure of the infant via human milk.”101 However, while some drugs may not harm the breastfed infant, they may have a detrimental effect on the mother’s ability to produce or secrete milk.

In its policy statement “Breastfeeding and the Use of Human Milk,” the AAP notes that, in general, breastfeeding is not recommended when mothers are receiving prescription medications from classes of medicines including amphetamines, chemotherapy agents, ergotamines, and statins.102 However, previous AAP statements on this topic have been retired, and the AAP now defers to the National Institutes of Health National Library of Medicine’s LactMed online database for the most up-to-date information on drugs and breastfeeding. The site lists prescription and OTC drugs to which breastfeeding mothers may be exposed. Among the data included are maternal and infant levels of drugs, possible effects on breastfed infants and on lactation, and alternative drugs to consider. However, this resource is not a substitute for women talking to their health care provider about medications and their concerns.

Additionally, in 2017 the FDA required several changes to the labels of all prescription medicines containing codeine and tramadol, including one that strengthened the warning to mothers that breastfeeding is not recommended when taking these medicines due to the risk of serious adverse reactions in breastfed infants, including: excess sleepiness, difficulty breastfeeding, and serious breathing problems that could result in death. A breastfeeding mother should talk to her doctor about pain medicines other than codeine or tramadol.

Recreational or Illicit Drugs
Although breastfeeding mothers should be actively discouraged from using illicit drugs, as noted earlier, the AAP does not consider maternal substance abuse to be a categorical contraindication to breastfeeding. However, drugs such as PCP, cocaine, and marijuana can be detected in human milk, and their use by breastfeeding mothers is of concern, particularly with regard to the infant’s long-term neurobehavioral development. Thus, use of these drugs is contraindicated. Affected mothers, regardless of their mode of feeding, should be encouraged to enter a rehabilitative program that makes provision for infants. Pharmacologic therapy must balance the benefits to infant and mother against the potential risk of substance exposure to the infant. The AAP notes in its “Breastfeeding and the Use of Human Milk” report that some mothers who are dependent on narcotics but properly nourished may be able to breastfeed if their HIV and drug screenings are negative and they are in a methadone maintenance program.103
Summary

Breastfeeding provides significant health benefits to both a mother and her infant, often even while the mother is taking medications. While it is best for a breastfeeding mother to avoid alcohol, tobacco, and illegal drugs, maternal substance abuse is not a categorical contraindication to breastfeeding.

Any decisions regarding drug/medicine use during lactation should be made between the mother and her health care provider. Remind all breastfeeding mothers to consult with their providers before taking any type of drug/medicine or supplements (herbal or otherwise). Additionally, using substances (including prescription medications not prescribed to her, as well as those prescribed to her but not taken as the physician intended) may impair a mother’s judgment and interfere with her ability to care for her infant. Depending on her receptiveness, she may benefit from assistance in locating a treatment center, particularly one that makes provision for infants.

For more information on maternal substance use and its prevention, see the U.S. Department of Agriculture’s Substance Use Prevention: Screening, Education, and Referral Resource Guide for Local WIC Agencies.
Endnotes


32 “Breastfeeding Programs and Policies, Breastfeeding Uptake, and Maternal Health Outcomes in Developed Countries”, 84-85.


44 S. P. Shelov, ed., *Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5*, 6th ed., American Academy of


89


62 Schanler, Breastfeeding Handbook for Physicians, 139.


67 Schanler, Breastfeeding Handbook for Physicians, 132.


95 Sachs and AAP Committee on Drugs, “The Transfer of Drugs and Therapeutics into Human Breast Milk: An Update on Selected Topics,” e796–809.


99 Hale and Rowe, *Medications and Mothers’ Milk Online*.

100 Sachs and AAP Committee on Drugs, “The Transfer of Drugs and Therapeutics into Human Breast Milk: An Update on Selected Topics,” e796–809.


104 Sachs and AAP Committee on Drugs, “The Transfer of Drugs and Therapeutics into Human Breast Milk: An Update on Selected Topics,” e796–809.
INFANT FORMULA FEEDING

Human milk is the best source of infant nutrition; however, when human milk is not available, iron-fortified infant formula is an appropriate alternative during the infant’s first year of life. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) defines infant formula as “a food which purports to be or is represented for special dietary use solely as a food for infants by reason of its simulation of human milk or its suitability as a complete or partial substitute for human milk.”

NOTE: This chapter does not address the infant formula needs of and feeding protocols for premature and low-birth-weight infants or infants with medical conditions requiring exempt infant formulas. Since nutritional management of these infants may be complicated by treatment for existing medical conditions, WIC counselors must consult with and follow the recommendations of the infant’s health care provider when counseling parents and caregivers.

This chapter reviews:
- Types of infant formulas
- Infant formula additives
- Formula feeding in the first year
- Formula feeding recommendations
- Common feeding concerns
- Selection, preparation, storage, and warming of infant formula
- Guidelines for using infant formula when access to kitchen appliances is limited
- Guidelines for infant formula use after a natural disaster or power outage
- Weaning from the bottle

Types of Infant Formulas

The Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act mandates that all infant formulas marketed in the United States provide the same nutrition for healthy, full-term infants. These nutrient specifications include minimum amounts for 29 nutrients and maximum amounts for 9 of those nutrients. If an infant formula does not contain these nutrients at or above the minimum level or within the specified range, it is an adulterated product unless the formula is “exempt” from certain nutrient requirements. Because infant formulas are often the only source of nutrition for infants, the FDA monitors infant formula manufacturers very closely to ensure that their products provide the appropriate nutrition for all infants.

The American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) recommends that, if human milk is not available, iron-fortified cow’s milk-based infant formula is the most appropriate milk to give infants up to 12 months of age who either are not breastfed or are partially breastfed. Infant formulas commercially available may be cow’s milk-based, soy-based, and hypoallergenic. Other formulas are designed for infants with special medical or dietary needs. The manufacturers’ websites can be accessed for the most up-to-date information. Parents and caregivers should be informed that generic brand infant formulas are nutritionally equivalent to national brand infant formulas. All infant formulas marketed in the United States must meet the nutrient specifications listed in FDA regulations. Infant formula manufacturers may have their own proprietary formulations, but the formulas must contain at least the minimum levels of all nutrients specified in FDA regulations without going over the maximum levels, when maximum levels are specified.

Each WIC State agency determines its allowed formula list.

Cow’s Milk-Based Infant Formula

The most common infant formulas are made from
modified cow’s milk with added carbohydrate (usually lactose), vegetable oils, and vitamins and minerals. Casein is the predominant protein in cow’s milk. Since the primary protein in human milk is whey rather than casein, some milk-based formulas have been altered to contain more whey. Despite that alteration, the protein in formula is significantly different from that in human milk because of its different amino acid and protein composition. In milk-based formula, about 9 to 12 percent of the kilocalories are provided by protein, 44 to 50 percent by fat, and 40 to 45 percent by carbohydrate. Infant formula is lower in fat and higher in carbohydrate, protein, and minerals than human milk.

Iron-Fortified Infant Formula

Use of an iron-fortified formula ensures that formula-fed infants receive an adequate amount of iron, an important nutrient during the first year. Iron deficiency is associated with poor cognitive development and performance in infants. See also: Chapter 1, “Iron,” pages 18–19. Look for this or a similar statement on the front of the formula package: “Infant Formula with Iron.” All iron-fortified infant formulas must have this type of statement on the package.

Low-Iron Infant Formula

There is no indication for use of low-iron infant formula under any circumstance. If an infant formula has low iron content, the package must carry this or a similar statement: “Additional Iron May Be Necessary.” Some parents and caregivers have requested or used low-iron formula in the past because they believed that the iron in the regular formula caused gastrointestinal problems such as constipation, colic, diarrhea, or vomiting. Studies have shown, however, that these gastrointestinal problems are no more frequent in infants consuming iron-fortified formula than in those who feed on low-iron infant formula. Therefore, only iron-fortified infant formula should be used during the first year of life, regardless of the age when formula is started.

Soy-Based Infant Formula

Soy-based formulas were developed for infants who cannot tolerate cow’s milk formulas. An infant’s symptoms must be evaluated carefully before advising a change from cow’s milk to soy formula, as spitting up, normal gas, and constipation are not indications to make such a change. True intolerance of cow’s milk protein usually presents with more significant symptoms, often in the first few months of life:

- Skin rashes
- Swelling of mucus membranes
- Acute vomiting
- Acute respiratory wheezing

Soy infant formulas contain soy protein isolate made from soybean solids as the protein source, vegetable oils as the fat source, added carbohydrate (usually sucrose and/or corn syrup solids), and vitamins and minerals. These formulas are fortified with the essential amino acid methionine, which exists in very low quantities in soybeans. In soy formulas, 10 to 11 percent of the kilocalories are provided by protein, 45 to 49 percent by fat, and 41 to 43 percent by carbohydrate. All soy-based infant formulas are fortified with similar amounts of iron as milk-based, iron-fortified infant formulas.

The AAP has stated that soy-based infant formulas are safe and effective alternatives to cow’s milk-based formulas but have no advantage over them. There have been concerns that infants who consume soy formulas could develop soy allergies. However, it is unclear whether soy formula predisposes infants to soy allergies. Studies have shown there is no cross-reactivity between cow’s milk allergy (CMA) and soy milk allergy, but about 10 to 14 percent of infants who are allergic to cow’s milk protein will develop an allergy to soy milk protein as well. If an infant is found to be truly allergic to cow’s milk protein, then an alternate formula should be considered—for example, extensively hydrolyzed or amino acid–based formula. See also: “Protein Hydrolysate and Amino Acid-Based Infant Formula,” pages 95–96.
Soy-based infant formulas may be recommended in the following situations:16

- Full-term infants with galactosemia, a rare metabolic disorder, or hereditary lactase deficiency ➔ See also: Chapter 3, “Metabolic Disorders,” page 76.
- Infants with documented IgE-mediated allergy to cow’s milk protein ➔ See also: “Why Does My Infant Have an Allergy?,” below.

The use of soy-based infant formulas is not recommended in the following situations:17

- For a preterm infant with a birth weight less than 1,800 grams
- When an infant has colic or allergy
- When an infant has documented cow’s milk protein-induced entropathy or enterocolitis

Protein Hydrolysate and Amino Acid-Based Infant Formula

A number of infant formulas have been developed, labeled, and marketed for infants with allergies or intolerances to milk- or soy-based formulas, or for infants with a family history of allergies. These formulas vary in the degree to which the allergy-causing protein has been modified. They may contain partially hydrolyzed protein, extensively hydrolyzed protein, or free amino acids. Extensively hydrolyzed and free amino acid-based infant formulas have been demonstrated to be tolerated by at least 90 percent of infants with clinically documented allergies.18

In making infant formula, cow’s milk proteins are broken down so that they are unlikely to cause an allergic reaction. The process of breakdown is called protein hydrolyzation. It can be partial or extensive, depending on the degree of hydrolysis and on a filtering process called ultrafiltration. The probability of an infant formula causing a reaction decreases as the hydrolysis and filtration increase.19

Why Does My Infant Have an Allergy?

There are two broad groups of immune system reactions that can cause food allergies in infants: immunoglobulin E (IgE)—mediated and non-IgE-mediated.

- IgE-mediated reaction. The gastrointestinal tract processes food, which is then absorbed into the body. During that process, the gastrointestinal tract neutralizes foreign antigens, or toxins, and blocks them from entering circulation. An infant’s system is immature and cannot always block those toxins. Most infants develop tolerance against the antigens. But if they cannot, their system will overproduce IgE antibodies. These antibodies in turn react with food antigens to cause an allergic reaction. An allergic reaction may occur as soon as the infant feeds—then it may subside and not appear again. Or it may be immediate, followed by ongoing symptoms such as runny nose, wheezing, hives, eczema, vomiting, and/or difficulty breathing.

- Non-IgE-mediated reaction. This reaction is less understood. Scientists believe that it involves the T-cell, a type of white blood cell that is key to immunity in the body. A non-IgE reaction is typically delayed in onset, and may occur within 4 to 28 hours after the infant has consumed food. Symptoms include diarrhea, malabsorption, colitis, and GERD (gastroesophageal reflux disease) or esophagitis.

NOTE: In all cases of allergic reaction, a health care provider should be contacted for diagnosis and treatment.


Enteropathy: Any condition or disease that keeps the gastrointestinal tract from functioning normally

Enterocolitis: Inflammation of the gastrointestinal tract
Formulas are considered hypoallergenic if they have demonstrated with 95 percent confidence that at least 90 percent of infants with documented cow’s milk allergy will not react with defined symptoms to the formula under double-blind, placebo-controlled conditions.

**NOTE:** Parents and caregivers should be discouraged from automatically changing infant formula without talking to a health care provider.

The AAP recommends that the use of hypoallergenic infant formulas be limited to infants with well-defined clinical indications. If hypersensitivity is diagnosed, a physician may change the infant formula prescribed. The AAP states that formula-fed infants with clinically confirmed CMA may benefit from the use of a hypoallergenic formula that is extensively hydrolyzed or, if symptoms persist, a formula made from free amino acids. A soy-based formula may also be beneficial, especially for infants with IgE-associated symptoms.

Once an infant begins feeding with a hypoallergenic formula, improvement is usually seen within 2 to 4 weeks. Hypoallergenic infant formulas made from extensively hydrolyzed protein or free amino acids may be used for infants with non-IgE-associated symptoms or for those with a strong family history of allergy. These formulas are significantly more expensive than either milk-based or soy-based formulas. In addition, their taste is altered significantly during protein hydrolysis, and they may not be well accepted by some infants.

**Lactose-Reduced or Lactose-Free Infant Formula**

Lactose is the major carbohydrate in cow’s milk-based infant formulas. An enzyme called lactase is needed to break down lactose. A very small number of infants produce insufficient amounts of lactase. These infants cannot metabolize lactose or galactose, a component of lactose.

Several cow’s milk-based formulas are available for infants with clinically documented lactose intolerance. Some specialty infant formulas contain other carbohydrates in the form of modified cornstarch, tapioca dextrin, or tapioca starch. In addition, soy-based infant formulas are lactose-free and may be used for infants with clinically documented lactose intolerance.

It is important to note that true lactose intolerance is rare. Symptoms of lactose intolerance such as diarrhea, flatulence, and abdominal bloating are similar to symptoms that an infant may have when ill. Consultation with a health care provider is encouraged to determine whether lactose intolerance is present, or whether symptoms are related to other causes such as gastrointestinal infection. Therefore, parents and caregivers should not change formulas without consulting their health care provider.

Premature infants may have lower levels of lactase than term infants, proportional to their degree of prematurity, since lactase develops during the last trimester of pregnancy. However, it is recommended that premature infants not be fed lactose-free formula, but rather human milk or formula containing lactose. Lactose intolerance may develop in later childhood (above 2 years of age in some susceptible populations) or adulthood, but very few term infants have true lactose intolerance.
safety standards identical to those of traditional crops so that both formulas are equally safe and effective. In particular, GE formula manufacturers must follow a detailed program for toxicity testing. According to the FDA, “because infancy is a unique, vulnerable period when critical growth and development occur, great care is necessary to ensure the safety of all modifications to infant formula, even if the purpose of the modification is to more closely mirror the composition and health benefits of human milk.” In addition to setting safety standards for the ingredients that make up infant formula, the FDA also sets guidelines for manufacturer labeling of the formulas.

Carotenoids

All infant formulas are required to contain the nutrient vitamin A; additional vitamin A may be added to infant formula in the form of carotenoids. Carotenoids include the nutrients lutein, beta-carotene, and lycopene, which are naturally found in human milk. See also: “Chapter 1, “Vitamin A,” page 11.

Arachidonic Acid and Docosahexaenoic Acid

Long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids include the essential fatty acids linoleic acid (LA) and alpha-linolenic acid (ALA), along with their derivatives, arachidonic acid (ARA) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA). These nutrients are naturally found in human milk. Manufacturers began adding DHA and ARA to infant formulas sold in the United States in 2002 after the fatty acid additions were designated as safe. Research demonstrating better cognitive function and visual acuity in breastfed infants has led to support for the addition of ARA and DHA to infant formula. Therefore, almost all brands of formula sold in the United States are fortified with ARA and DHA. The AAP does not have an official

1 and 2 years of age, there may be decreased lactase activity in approximately 20 percent of children within certain ethnic groups, including Asians, African Americans, and Hispanics.

Always discuss the need for lactose-free formulas with a health care provider. According to the AAP, those who do require a lactose-free formula generally can be rechallenged with a lactose-containing formula after 1 month.

Formulas for Medical and Dietary Needs

An exempt infant formula is one that is represented and labeled for use by infants who have inborn errors of metabolism or low birth weight, or who otherwise have unusual medical or dietary problems. Exempt infant formulas have to be prescribed by the infant’s primary care physician.

There are many varieties of specially designed infant formulas developed for infants with special medical conditions. These may include metabolic and modular formulas.

Infant Formula Additives

Infant formula manufacturers add a variety of nutrients to infant formula to mimic the composition and quality of human milk. The nutrients in these genetically engineered (GE) formulas may include carotenoids, long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids, nucleotides, prebiotics, and probiotics. Some formulas are made with non-genetically modified organisms (non-GMOS) and also contain these key nutrients. While the nutritional value of formula made with non-GMOS is the same as in the GE formula, the ingredients come from traditionally bred crops. The use of genetic engineering, or genetically modified organisms (GMOs), is prohibited in organic products. The FDA ensures that formulas created from GE crops meet

**Metabolic formulas:** Special formulas for infants born with metabolic disorders such as phenylketonuria (PKU) and maple syrup urine disease (MSUD)

**Modular formulas:** Nutritionally incomplete formulas that may be mixed with other products before use (e.g., protein, carbohydrate, or fat modulators); they may be used to increase formula concentration.

**Carotenoids:** A group of natural pigments with potential health benefits. The group includes vitamin A.

**ARA and DHA:** Arachidonic acid (ARA) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) are major fatty acids found in human milk.
position on supplementing full-term infants with long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids like DHA and ARA.36

**Nucleotides, Prebiotics, and Probiotics**

Nucleotides are metabolically important compounds that are the building blocks of ribonucleic acid (RNA), deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), and adenosine triphosphate (ATP), and they are present in human milk. It is thought that nucleotides may enhance immune function and development of the gastrointestinal tract and may be beneficial when added to infant formula.37

Prebiotics are nutrients that support the growth of “good” bacteria in the intestines, while probiotics are nonpathogenic bacteria, including bifidobacteria and lactobacilli. Research has shown that probiotics may lower the risk of conditions such as food-related allergies and asthma. They may also help prevent or treat eczema or infectious diarrhea.38

Since all the organisms above are present in the intestines of breastfed infants and may protect an infant from infection by other pathogenic bacteria, researchers have studied the effect of adding the organisms to infant formula. Subsequently, infant formula manufacturers have included these compounds in many formulas. While this is promising, more research is needed to confirm the benefits of nucleotides, prebiotics, and probiotics in formula.

Parents and caregivers should discuss use of a probiotic-fortified formula with a health care provider before giving it to an infant.39

**Formula Feeding in the First Year**

The amount of formula needed by an infant during a 24-hour period will vary depending on the infant’s age, size, level of activity, metabolic rate, medical conditions, and other source(s) of nutrition (human milk and/or complementary foods). Infants have the ability to regulate their food intake relative to their nutritional needs. In doing so, they express signs of hunger and satiety and expect their parent or caregiver to respond to these cues. Thus, unless medically indicated otherwise, infants should be fed on demand—that is, when they indicate hunger—and should not be forced to follow a strict feeding schedule or to finish a bottle when they are no longer hungry.

**Read the Formula Label**

When reading a formula label, the following information should be checked:

- The “use by” date, which is required by the FDA (Do not buy outdated formula, as it may not provide all the necessary nutrients.)
- Preparation/mixing instructions, as well as storage guidelines

The health care provider should always be consulted about the type and content of formula that is right for the individual infant.


**Responding to Hunger and Satiety Cues**

Infants, especially newborns, may not be consistent or follow a timed schedule as to when and how often they want to eat. A healthy infant eventually establishes an individual pattern according to his or her growth requirements. It is normal for infants to have fussy times. Infants may cry for reasons other than being hungry. They may simply want to be held or need to be changed. Parents and caregivers should be encouraged to learn to recognize and respond appropriately to the infant’s cues of hunger and satiety or fullness, as outlined in detail in Chapter 2, with examples below.40 ➤ *See also: Chapter 2, “Hunger and Satiety Cues by Age,” pages 38–39.*

**Responding to Signs of Hunger**

If an infant is hungry, parents and caregivers may see the infant sucking on a fist, rooting, flexing arms and legs, and more. The parent or caregiver should
respond to such early signs with a feeding and not wait until the infant is upset and crying from hunger. Here are the cues to watch for:

- The infant opens and closes mouth.
- The infant brings hands to face.
- The infant flexes arms and legs.
- The infant roots around on the chest of whoever is carrying them.
- The infant makes sucking noises and motions.
- Sucks on lips, hands, fingers, toes, toys, or clothing.

**Responding to Signs of Satiety**

Encourage the parent or caregiver to feed the infant only until the infant indicates fullness. Signs of fullness include a decrease in sucking, spitting out the nipple, and more. Here are the cues to watch for:

- The infant slows or decreases sucking.
- The infant extends arms and legs.
- The infant extends/relaxes fingers.
- The infant pushes/arches away.
- The infant turns head away from the nipple.
- The infant decreases rate of sucking or stops sucking when full.

If they are not hungry, infants may not eat the full portions offered. A parent or caregiver should never force an infant to finish what is in the bottle. Infants are the best judges of how much they need. They may want to eat less if they are not feeling well and may want more if they are in a growth spurt.41

**NOTE:** If it is perceived that a parent or caregiver is frustrated or having difficulty coping with an infant’s fussiness or crying, the parent or caregiver should be referred to a health care provider for further assessment and assistance.

**Feeding Frequency and Amount of Formula**

Newborn formula-fed infants are generally fed infant formula as often as exclusively breastfed infants are fed human milk, for a total of 8 to 12 feedings within 24 hours. These young infants need to be fed small amounts of formula often throughout the day and night because their stomachs cannot hold a large quantity.
From birth to 6 months of age, infants grow rapidly and will gradually increase the amount of infant formula they can consume at each feeding, the time between each feeding, and the total amount of formula consumed during a 24-hour period. Parents or caregivers should be encouraged to prepare 2 to 3 ounces of infant formula every 2 to 3 hours at first. More should be prepared if the infant seems hungry, especially as the infant grows.42

The partially breastfed infant will consume less infant formula than given in these examples, depending on the frequency of breastfeeding. At 6 months of age, infants begin to shift from dependence on human milk or infant formula as the primary nutrient source to dependence on a mixed diet including complementary foods. Thus, the consumption of human milk or formula tends to decrease as the consumption of complementary foods increases.

Feeding throughout the night is not usually necessary for the older infant with a normal growth rate.

NOTE: An infant whose parents or caregivers complain of the infant’s sleepiness or lack of hunger should be referred to a health care provider for further assessment.

**Formula Feeding Recommendations**

Parents and caregivers can help their formula-fed infants have a positive feeding experience by creating a relaxing setting and giving the infant tender loving care. A comfortable feeding place should be established, and the parent or caregiver should interact with the infant in a calm and relaxed manner while both preparing for and during a feeding by cuddling and talking gently to the infant. Throughout the feeding, the infant should be shown love and attention. This will decrease fussiness and will not “spoil” the infant.

**Guidelines for Safe, Effective Bottle-Feeding**

To make bottle-feeding safe and effective for infants, encourage parents and caregivers to take these steps:

- Wash their hands with soap and water for 20 seconds before feeding.
- Hold the infant in their arms or lap during the feeding.
- Ensure that the infant is in a semi-upright position with the head tilted slightly forward, slightly higher than the rest of the body, and supported by the parent or caregiver with the infant’s head cradled in the crook of the parent or caregiver’s arm.
- Ensure that the infant can look at the parent or caregiver’s face. Take care that the infant’s head is not tilted back or lying flat down; the liquid could enter the infant’s windpipe and cause choking.
- Hold the bottle still and at an angle so that the end of the bottle near the nipple is filled with infant formula and not air, thus reducing the amount of air swallowed by the infant.
- Stroke the infant’s cheek gently with the nipple to stimulate the rooting reflex, causing the infant to open his or her mouth to initiate feeding.
- Ensure that the infant formula flows from the bottle properly by checking if the nipple hole is an appropriate size. ► See also: “Know the Correct Nipple Size,” page 101.
- To burp effectively, a parent or caregiver should

**WIC Infant Formula Calculator**

The WIC Infant Formula Calculator is a web-based tool developed to help WIC staff determine the amount of infant formula that can be issued to parents and caregivers, consistent with WIC regulations.

The calculator can be accessed on the WIC Works Resource Center website: https://wicworks.fns.usda.gov/resources/wic-infant-formula-calculator

For breastfeeding women who do not receive the fully breastfeeding package, WIC staff are expected to individually tailor the amount of formula the women receive based on the assessed needs of the breastfeeding infant. Staff should then provide the minimal amount that meets but does not exceed the infant’s nutritional needs.
Common Feeding Concerns

The following feeding concerns may occur while a parent or caregiver is bottle-feeding an infant. The AAP recommends to address the concerns and to keep the infant calm and feeding well. It is important for parents and caregivers to burp an infant at intervals during feedings, to help eliminate air swallowed as the infant takes in food. Burping may also help with some of the other feeding concerns below. **See also: “Common Feeding Concerns,” this page.**

- **Hiccups.** Most infants hiccup from time to time. Usually the hiccuping bothers the parent or gently pat or rub the infant’s back while the infant is held against the parent or caregiver’s shoulder and chest or supported in a sitting position in the parent or caregiver’s lap. Expect a small amount of spitting up from time to time. It is common in formula-fed infants.

- **An infant should be burped at a natural break in or at the end of a feeding to help remove swallowed air from the stomach.** Avoid burping too often, which disrupts a good feeding. Burping at natural breaks helps slow the feeding, lessens the amount of air swallowed, and may help reduce gastroesophageal reflux and colic in some infants. **See also: “Common Feeding Concerns,” this page.**

- **Take breaks during the feeding to socialize with the infant, talking gently and smiling.** Throughout infancy, it is especially important that bottle-fed infants be fed in a position that both minimizes the chance of choking and allows the infant to have physical and eye contact with the parent or caregiver. When an infant is held closely and can establish eye contact, bonding between the dyad is enhanced. Older infants may prefer to hold the bottle themselves while in the parent or caregiver’s arms or lap or while sitting in an infant high chair.

---

**Propping the Bottle Is Not Recommended**

It is never appropriate to feed an infant by propping a bottle against a pillow or similar object:

- **Liquid in the bottle can accidentally flow into the infant’s lungs and cause choking.**
- **Infants can develop ear infections because fluid enters the middle ear and cannot drain properly.**
- **Infants may overfeed.**
- **Infants do not receive human contact, which is important to make them feel secure and loved.**

Infants should not be given a bottle (whether propped or not) while lying down at nap time or bedtime or while lying or sitting in an infant car seat, carrier, stroller, swing, or walker. In addition to potentially causing choking or ear infection, these practices can lead to dental problems. **See also: Chapter 6, “Oral Health,” pages 151–156.**

---

**Know the Correct Nipple Size**

Nipples come in different sizes, with varying numbers of holes and flow speeds that range from slow to fast—and **nipples can vary per manufacturer.** It is important to tailor the nipple size to an infant’s needs and to change out the nipple as necessary for adequate feeding. The nipple should never be altered to increase or decrease its flow.

**Follow these pointers to ensure the proper flow:**

- **When the bottle is held upside down, a few drops should come out and then stop; the falling drops should follow each other closely and not make a stream.**
- **The nipple hole should not be too big or too small.** Milk flows too fast through a large hole, and an infant could choke. Slow-flowing milk through a small hole will likely cause the infant to gulp air.
- **Be sure to adjust the nipple ring on the bottle so that air can get into the bottle; otherwise, the nipple may collapse.**

The health care provider can direct a parent or caregiver to the ideal nipple and also the best kind of bottle to use.
caregiver more than the infant. If hiccups occur during a feeding, these actions can help:

- Change the infant’s position.
- Try to get the infant to burp.
- Help the infant relax.
- Wait until the hiccups are gone to resume feeding.

- **Choking.** While it may seem that choking could happen only when an older infant graduates to complementary foods, parents and caregivers should be aware that infants could also choke while bottle-feeding. Because an infant’s airway is not always blocked off properly when swallowing, food can enter the airway and prevent breathing. While bottle-feeding, parents and caregivers should do the following to prevent choking:
  - Maintain a calm atmosphere during feeding time.
  - Never prop a bottle in an infant’s mouth.
  - Use a nipple with an appropriately sized hole so that the milk does not flow too quickly.
  - Refrain from feeding complementary foods to an infant who is not developmentally prepared.
  - Never feed an infant who is crying, laughing, walking, talking, or playing.

- **Spitting up and vomiting.** It is normal for young infants to spit up a small amount of infant formula after feedings. Sometimes spitting up means the infant has eaten more than the stomach can hold; other times, the infant spits up while burping or drooling. Because the nose is connected to the back of the throat, spitting up can also come out of the nose instead of the mouth. As long as the infant seems comfortable and is eating well and gaining weight, spitting up shouldn’t be cause for concern. ➤ See also: “Chapter 6, “Common Gastrointestinal Problems,” pages 160–164.

  If the infant vomits forcefully, emptying the stomach contents, or if the parent or caregiver notices blood or a dark green color in the vomit, the health care provider should be contacted immediately.

- **Diarrhea.** Diarrhea isn’t just a loose stool; it’s a watery stool that occurs up to 12 times a day. Contact the health care provider if it is accompanied by lethargy and fever. Acute diarrhea can last several hours or days. Persistent diarrhea may last more than a week. The results can include dehydration, intestinal damage, and malnutrition.

- **Dehydration.** If an infant vomits or develops diarrhea, dehydration is a danger. A parent or caregiver should watch for important signs and contact the health care provider if the following signs are present:
  - Lack of interest in feeding
  - Urinates infrequently and has fewer wet diapers
  - Dry mouth or eyes, so infant has fewer tears when crying
  - Loose stools if dehydration is caused by diarrhea; otherwise, decreased bowel movements

---

How to Minimize Spitting Up

While spitting up is to be expected, tips to minimize spitting up include:

- Try to feed the infant before hunger takes over.
- Ensure that each feeding is a calm, quiet, and leisurely session.
- Avoid distractions such as bright lights and sudden noises.
- Feed the infant in small, more frequent amounts.
- If bottle-feeding, burp the infant about every 3 to 5 minutes.
- Do not feed while the infant is lying down.
- Hold the infant upright for about 20 to 30 minutes after every feeding session.
- Refrain from bouncing or swinging the infant, or playing energetically after feeding.
- Ensure that the bottle’s nipple hole is the optimal size. ➤ See also: “Know the Correct Nipple Size,” page 101.
■ **Dry stools.** Although formula-fed infants tend to have more solid stools, about the firmness of peanut butter, those stools should be easy to pass and should appear to be hydrated. Stools that are difficult for an infant to pass and that are hard and dry, like marbles, signal constipation. Constipation can occur because an infant is not taking in enough human milk or formula, or the formula is not properly prepared and diluted. A health care provider should be contacted for guidance.

■ **Excessive gas.** It is natural for infants to produce gas. While some infants simply pass it, others have buildup and become extremely uncomfortable (see “Colic,” below). These special tips may help manage gas:
  - Never overfeed an infant.
  - Carry the infant upright against the chest or shoulder so that gas bubbles can move up and around the infant’s intestinal curves instead of being trapped there.
  - Lay the infant on his or her back and move the infant’s legs back and forth in a cycling motion to help break up gas.

■ **Cold or ear infection.** If a cold or ear infection has set in, it may be hard for an infant to breathe and painful for him or her to swallow. Nasal congestion can be temporarily cleared with a bulb syringe prior to feeding, but a health care provider should be contacted for guidance.

■ **Hives or rash.** A rash with raised, red bumpy areas may indicate hives. If the rash spreads over the infant’s body, this could be a reaction to milk or medication, or a response to a virus or other infection. If the rash remains localized, it could be caused by something the infant touched. In any case contact the infant’s healthcare provider for guidance.

■ **Colic.** If an infant cries persistently, first check to see if the stomach appears bloated and the infant extends or pulls up the legs as if experiencing pain. A health care provider should be contacted to make sure that the crying is not related to a serious medical condition, such as a hernia, and then the following tips may be tried:
  - For formula-fed infants, a pediatrician may recommend using a protein hydrolysate formula, which helps address food sensitivity issues. If sensitivity has been causing the colic, a change should take place within a few days.
  - Infants should never be overfed; this causes discomfort. The rule of thumb is to start a new feeding 2 to 2½ hours after the last feeding was started.
  - The infant may be soothed by being walked in a carrier, close to the parent or caregiver’s body. The motion and body contact will be calming and reassuring, even if the colic continues.
  - Swaddling in a thin blanket helps an infant feel warm and secure, but be sure the infant’s hips are loose when wrapped, and that the infant is laid on his or her back. The AAP recommends swaddling for promoting sleep, but only up to 2 months of age. After that age, the infant could roll over and potentially suffocate.

---

**Colic a Mystery Ailment**

Doctors are unsure what causes colic (persistent crying), but it is a common ailment: in the first few months of life, approximately one-fifth of all infants—and their parents or caregivers—experience the endless, distressed crying. Formula-fed infants seem to experience it more often than breastfed infants. The onset is usually in the evening, after about 6 p.m. See remedies above.

---

**Selection, Preparation, Storage, and Warming of Infant Formula**

To ensure that infant formula is safe for consumption, it must be properly selected, prepared, and stored—and bottles must be properly sanitized. See also: “Appendix A, “Infant Feeding: Tips for Food Safety,” pages 223–224.

**Selecting and Storing Cans of Infant Formula**

Parents and caregivers should be encouraged to take these steps when selecting and using cans of infant formula:
Carefully check the “use by” date. This is the date after which a package or container of infant formula should not be fed to infants. It indicates that the manufacturer guarantees the nutrient content and the general acceptability of the formula quality up to that date. FDA regulations require this date to be specified on each container of infant formula.

Never use cans that have dents, leaks, bulges, puffed ends, pinched tops or bottoms, or rust spots. These deformities in the can are indications that the product quality may be diminished and the product is unsafe.

Store cans in a cool, indoor place—never in vehicles, garages, or outdoors. Extreme heat can affect the formula quality. However, do not refrigerate or freeze formula.

Keeping Bottles Clean
The AAP does not routinely recommend sterilizing bottles for healthy, term infants unless there is a concern for contamination. Bottles should be thoroughly washed using soap and hot water and bottle and nipple brushes, or cleaned in a dishwasher. These practices will effectively remove germs.

Preparing Infant Formula
Table 4.1, see page 105, provides general guidelines for preparing infant formula that comes in powdered, concentrated, or ready-to-feed forms. As noted by the AAP, different scoop sizes come with different kinds of powdered formulas, so exact measurements must be followed on individual labels.

Despite the general guidelines below for infant formula preparation, the parent or caregiver should always follow the manufacturer’s instructions for preparation or instruction from the health care provider. Although formula cans include written preparation instructions, parents and caregivers may not be able to read or understand them. WIC staff should assess if parents or caregivers have difficulty correctly diluting concentrated or powder forms of formula and determine whether ready-to-feed formula is appropriate. ➤ See also: Chapter 8, “Food Safety,” pages 191–198.

Note: Water contaminants cannot be removed by heating or boiling the water.

Health care providers do not recommend homemade infant formulas, since they tend to be deficient in vitamins and other important nutrients.

Using Fluoridated Water to Mix Infant Formula
The FDA and the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) are both responsible for the safety of drinking water. The EPA regulates public drinking water (tap water); the FDA regulates bottled drinking water.

Ready-to-feed infant formulas and other infant foods are generally manufactured with nonfluoridated water. However, although fluoride is not specifically added to formulas during production, some of the ingredients besides water naturally contain fluoride.

Supplementary fluoride should not be given to a formula-fed infant during the first 6 months of life. After that, supplementation depends on the amount of fluoride in the water used for formula preparation. Given the variability of exposure to fluoride from formula mixtures, a parent or caregiver should consult the infant’s health care provider for advice on fluoride.

If the fluoride content of the home drinking water is unknown, the local water supplier or health department should be contacted for a report. In the case of a private well, the water should be tested by a certified private laboratory. ➤ See also: Chapter 8, “Well Water Contaminants,” page 199.

Certain types of home water treatment systems, such as reverse osmosis and distillation units, may remove fluoride from the water. Carbon and charcoal water filtration systems (the most common types used in homes) and water softeners do not significantly change the fluoride content of water.
Storing Infant Formula

Prepared infant formula is a highly perishable food that must be stored properly for safe consumption. Parents and caregivers should always consult their health care provider and follow the manufacturer’s label instructions for infant formula storage procedures. Several guidelines should be followed to prevent spoilage:

- Bottles and their parts should be thoroughly cleaned and sanitized before reuse. For more information visit: https://www.cdc.gov/healthywater/hygiene/healthychildcare/infantfeeding/cleansanitize.html
- Bottles of prepared infant formula should be stored in a properly functioning refrigerator until ready to use. Bacterial growth is reduced when formula is kept in a refrigerator at temperatures of 40 degrees Fahrenheit or below. (A refrigerator thermometer should be used to monitor the refrigerator’s temperature.)
- Powdered infant formula should be tightly covered and stored in a cool, dry place.
- Formula should be used within 24 hours of preparation to avoid bacterial contamination.63
- Do not freeze infant formula, as it may cause a separation of the product’s components.64
- Prepared formula should be taken out of the refrigerator no more than 2 hours before a feeding. Once the feeding has begun, the contents should be fed within an hour or discarded.65
- Any formula remaining after a feeding should be discarded. The mixture of formula with saliva provides an ideal breeding ground for disease-causing microorganisms.

NOTE: Parents and caregivers should discuss the use of all formulas and potential filtration products with a health care provider.

Manufacturers of bottled water are not required to include fluoride content on the label unless they have added fluoride to the water. Thus, parents and caregivers using bottled water to mix infant formula and to prepare food should contact the manufacturer to determine its fluoride content, or they should have it tested.

In general, it is safe to use bottled water to prepare infant formula as long as parents and caregivers understand key points:

- The amount of fluoride varies in different bottled waters.
- If an infant is consuming only formula mixed with fluoridated water, there is an increased risk of mild dental fluorosis.63
- Bottled waters labeled as deionized, purified, demineralized, or distilled contain no to very small amounts of fluoride, unless fluoride is specifically listed. Using such products for mixing formula may lessen an infant’s chance of developing fluorosis.64

Without knowing the fluoride content in bottled water, it is impossible for a health care provider to adequately assess the amount of fluoride the infant is ingesting. Bottled waters manufactured and marketed specifically for infants may contain fluoride and must be labeled as such. The FDA recommends that manufacturers do not add more than 0.7 milligrams of fluoride per liter of water to bottled waters.

**TABLE 4.1 – Formula Preparation Guidelines**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of infant formula</th>
<th>Mix</th>
<th>Add</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Powdered formula</td>
<td>Because scoop sizes vary, follow instructions on label</td>
<td>Appropriate amount of water as noted on label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concentrated formula</td>
<td>Equal part concentrated liquid</td>
<td>Equal part water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ready-to-feed formula</td>
<td>Ready for infant to consume as is</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Special Concerns About Infant Formula

Infant formula is a safe and effective alternative for infant nutrition when breastfeeding is not possible.

To ensure the safety of infant formula, the FDA in 2014 finalized additional guidelines, specifically requiring that infant formula must test for *Salmonella* and *Cronobacter*, two bacteria that can cause severe illness in infants. In addition, manufacturers must test their products’ nutrient content to demonstrate that their formulas “support normal physical growth.”

Formula is a perishable food, and therefore it must be prepared, handled, and stored properly and in a sanitary manner to be safe for consumption. Infants can be exposed to harmful bacteria from a dirty environment, pets, and other family members.

It is very important to prepare infant formula properly. Improper mixing of infant formula can lead to potential health risks. Increasing the water-to-formula ratio (i.e., adding too much water) is never recommended because it will yield a lower-calorie formula, which will not meet the infant’s caloric requirements. Decreasing the water-to-formula ratio (i.e., not adding enough water) may be recommended for infants who are failing to thrive, but it should only be done when recommended by the health care provider. Infants consuming incorrectly reconstituted formula may develop serious health problems. **Underdiluted** infant formula puts an excessive burden on an infant’s kidneys and digestive system and may lead to dehydration. This problem becomes worse if the infant has increased fluid needs because of fever or infection. **Overdiluted** infant formula may contribute to growth problems, nutrient deficiencies, and water intoxication.


Warming Infant Formula

The following guidelines are recommended for warming refrigerated infant formula:

- For infants who prefer a warmed bottle, warming should take place immediately before serving.
- A safe method is to hold the bottle under warm, running tap water. Next, swirl the bottle contents and test the temperature by squirting a couple of drops of formula onto the back of the wrist. **The formula temperature must always be tested prior to a feeding to make sure it is not too hot or cold.**

**NOTE:** Infants have been seriously burned by liquids warmed in microwave ovens. Covered bottles, especially vacuum-sealed and metal-capped bottles of ready-to-feed infant formula, can explode when heated in a microwave.

Underdiluted: Containing too little water. Underdiluted infant formula can burden an infant’s kidneys.

Overdiluted: Containing too much water. Overdiluted infant formula may lead to nutrient deficiencies.
Guidelines for Using Infant Formula When Access to Common Kitchen Appliances Is Limited

The following guidelines regarding use of standard milk- and soy-based infant formulas are recommended for parents and caregivers who have limited access to a refrigerator or stove, or whose appliances are not functioning properly (e.g., the refrigerator is not keeping foods at or below 40 degrees Fahrenheit).

- If powdered infant formula is used, prepare one bottle at a time. Fill it with the approximate amount of formula an infant can consume in one feeding. The powder must be scooped from the can with a clean, dry scoop. Ensure that no liquid enters the can; liquid will facilitate bacterial growth and spoil of the formula.
- Alternatively, ready-to-feed infant formula in individual servings can be used.
- Use formula immediately after it is prepared or after a ready-to-feed container is opened.
- Discard any formula that has been sitting at room temperature for more than 2 hours.66
- Once the feeding has begun, the contents should be fed within an hour or discarded.67

Natural Disaster or Power Outage: Infant Formula Guidelines

Breastfeeding is the best infant feeding option for an infant during a natural disaster situation, but formula can be safely used. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention recommends taking the following actions for ensuring an infant’s safe feeding after a natural disaster or during a power outage:68

- Continue breastfeeding
- Use ready-to-feed formula if possible.
- Use bottled water to prepare powdered or liquid concentrated infant formula. If bottled water or ready-to-feed formulas are not available, discuss options with a health care provider.
- Clean bottles and nipples with bottled, boiled, or treated water before each use.

Traveling With Infant Formula

When traveling with an infant, a can of powdered infant formula will help the parent or caregiver make formula on demand and only in the amount that an infant is likely to consume at one feeding. These tips for preparing formula for a trip:

- Pack a can of powdered infant formula. Alternatively, put the required scoops of formula into clean bottles, using the mixing amounts as instructed.
- Bring the required measured amount of water in clean bottles.
- Mix the water and formula into a single bottle when ready to feed.
- The more expensive option is to buy prepackaged bottles of ready-to-feed formula.
- It is not recommended to travel with bottles of prepared infant formula.

For information on air travel with formula, go to the TSA (Transportation Security Administration) page “Traveling with Children,” at https://www.tsa.gov/travel/special-procedures/traveling-children.

Weaning From the Bottle

The AAP recommends weaning infants who are bottle-fed by 15 months of age and no later than 18 months. Older infants who bottle-feed longer than this may be prone to excessive milk intake and to iron deficiency because they are not consuming complementary iron-rich foods. The sooner the infant is weaned, the easier it is. The process can begin as early as 6 months of age, when a parent or caregiver can begin introducing a cup. Weaning from the bottle can take place while the infant learns to drink from the cup and tries other new foods. By 12 to 14 months of age, most older infants have mastered cup feeding and are ready to leave the bottle behind. If the older infant insists on a bottle, a slower process may be necessary: the midday bottle may be eliminated first, then the evening and morning bottles, and finally the night bottle. By 12 months of age, an older infant no longer needs to feed at night, and any late-night milk that remains on the teeth can cause tooth decay. If an infant takes milk before bedtime, the parent or caregiver must clean the teeth with either soft gauze or a soft toothbrush. A plush toy or blanket may be used to replace the comfort of an evening milk snack. ➤ See also: Chapter 6, “Oral Health,” pages 151–156.

No Whole Cow’s Milk in the First Year

The AAP Committee on Nutrition recommends that whole cow’s milk not be fed to infants during the first year of life. Iron-fortified infant formulas are preferred for infants not breastfed or partially breastfed for a number of nutritional and medical reasons. ➤ See also: Chapter 5, “Beverages,” page 129.

Endnotes

1. U.S. Code, Title 21—Food and Drugs, Chapter 9, Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, Subchapter II Section 321, Paragraph z, accessed September 2016, http://uscode.house.gov/view.xhtml?req=granuleid%3AUSC-prelim-title21-chapter9&saved=%7CCKGlu3ZmFudCBmb3JtdWxhKQ%3D%3D%7CdHJjZXRnvcQ%3D%7CdHJ1ZQ%3D%7C13%7Ctrue%7Cprelim&edition=prelim.

2. U.S. Code, Title 21—Food and Drugs, Chapter 9, Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, Subchapter II, Section 321, Paragraph z.


5. “Questions & Answers for Consumers Concerning Infant Formula,” FDA.


8. Mahan and Raymond, Krause’s Food & the Nutrition Care Process, 305.


13. Duggan et al., Nutrition in Pediatrics, appendix III.


15. Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 74.


21 Shelov, *Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5*, 117; Kleinman and Greer, *Pediatric Nutrition*, 76.

22 Kleinman and Greer, *Pediatric Nutrition*, 75.


29 Kleinman and Greer, *Pediatric Nutrition*, 61–82.


35 Kleinman and Greer, *Pediatric Nutrition*, 71.

36 Committee to Review WIC Food Packages, Food and Nutrition Board, Institute of Medicine, National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine, “Background and Approach to Considering Food Package Options,” 279–324; Mahan and Raymond, *Krause’s Food & the Nutrition Care Process*, 302.

38 Shelov, *Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5*, 119.


41 Shelov, *Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5*, 112.


46 Shelov, *Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5*, 130, 549–51; “Common Feeding Problems,” AAP; “Infant Vomiting,” AAP.


51 “Common Feeding Problems,” AAP.

52 Shelov, *Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5*, 570–71.


Shelov, Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5, 120.


Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 67.


Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 1175.


Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 67.

“FDA Takes Final Step on Infant Formula Protections,” FDA.

Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 67.


Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 67.


CHAPTER 5
COMPLEMENTARY FOODS

The American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) recommends that all infants be exclusively breastfed for about 6 months; that complementary foods be introduced in a timely manner, when the infant is developmentally ready to consume them, at approximately 6 months of age; and that breastfeeding is continued simultaneously with the consumption of complementary foods for at least the first year of life or longer, as long as it is mutually desired by both infant and mother. These practices should be promoted and supported because of the numerous health benefits for infants and mothers.

Throughout the first year, many physiological changes occur that allow infants to consume foods of varying composition and texture. As an infant’s mouth, tongue, and digestive tract mature, the infant shifts from being able to only suck, swallow, and take in liquid foods—such as human milk or infant formula—to being able to chew and receive a wide variety of complementary foods. At the same time, infants progress from needing to be fed to feeding themselves. As infants mature, their food and feeding patterns continually change.

Complementary foods refer to foods and beverages that are introduced during infancy to complement human milk and/or infant formula. Complementary foods continue as the infant transitions to family foods. Recommendations on the introduction of complementary foods provided to parents or caregivers of infants should take into account the following:

- The infant’s developmental stage and nutritional status
- Coexisting medical conditions
- Cultural, ethnic, and religious food preferences of the family
- The nutritional values of key foods which are accessible and easy to prepare

This chapter reviews:
- Recommendations on transitioning to complementary foods
- Food hypersensitivities/allergies, intolerances, and other adverse reactions
- Choking prevention
- Types of complementary foods to introduce
- Food and beverage selection and preparation
- Foods to avoid
- Recommended amounts of complementary foods
- Mealtimes
- Other practical aspects of feeding complementary foods and beverages

Recommendations on Transitioning to Complementary Foods

The ideal time to introduce complementary foods in the diets of infants varies because infants develop at different rates. When complementary foods are introduced appropriate to the infant’s developmental stage, nutritional requirements can be met and eating using self-feeding skills can develop properly. Pediatric nutrition authorities agree that complementary foods should not be introduced to infants before they are developmentally ready. The AAP acknowledges that infants are often developmentally ready to consume certain complementary foods around 6 months of age.

Despite of these recommendations, studies have demonstrated that earlier introduction still remains a practice. The incidence of early introduction of complementary foods before an infant is 6 months old has been reported to be from 19 percent to 29 percent in the United States, depending on the region.

Complementary foods: Solid foods and beverages that are introduced when an infant is developmentally ready to consume them, around 6 months of age. They include infant cereal, vegetables, fruits, meat, and other protein-rich foods modified to a texture appropriate (e.g., strained, pureed, chopped, etc.) for the infant’s developmental readiness.
Developmental Readiness for Complementary Foods

Healthy infants reach developmental readiness to begin complementary foods when they are around 6 months old. By this age, infants begin to show their desire for food by smiling, opening their mouth when food is presented, and moving their head forward. Conversely, they show lack of interest or fullness by acting distracted, turning away, pushing the spoon or food away, or closing their mouth. 

Each infant develops at his or her own rate and an infant’s weight or age alone does not determine readiness for complementary foods.

In general, around 6 months of age, the following developmental changes occur that allow the infant to tolerate complementary foods:

- The infant’s intestinal tract develops immunologically, gaining defense mechanisms that will protect the infant from foreign proteins. Thus, the risk of hypersensitive, or allergic, reactions to the proteins in complementary foods is reduced.
- The infant’s ability to digest and absorb proteins, fats, and carbohydrates, other than those in human milk and formula, increases rapidly.
- The infant’s kidneys develop the ability to excrete the waste products from foods with a high renal solute load, such as meat.
- The infant develops the neuromuscular mechanisms needed for recognizing and accepting a spoon, masticating, swallowing nonliquid foods, and appreciating variation in the taste, color, and texture of foods.

There are milestones an infant reaches when he or she is ready to consume complementary foods. The infant is usually mature enough to learn to spoon-feed when he or she exhibits the following abilities:

- Has head and neck control
- Sits up, either alone or with support
- Opens the mouth when sees spoon approaching
- Brings objects to the mouth
- Tries to grasp small objects such as toys and food
- Transfers food from the front to the back of the tongue to swallow
- Swallows food rather than pushing it back out onto the chin (By 4 to 7 months of age, the infant’s tongue thrust reflex, which causes the tongue to push most solid objects out of the mouth, usually disappears.)

Introduction of complementary foods from a spoon is developmentally important for infants in order to learn appropriate feeding skills for childhood.

As an infant’s oral skills develop, the thickness and lumpiness of foods can gradually be increased. The texture of foods can progress from plain strained, pureed, and mashed to ground, finely chopped, and diced. Commercially prepared infant foods that progress in texture can also be purchased.

Because of risk of choking, infants should be given only foods that are appropriately textured for their level of development. 

Developmental Delays Can Affect an Infant’s Feeding Skills

An infant’s development does not always match his or her chronological age. Infants experiencing one of the following medical risk factors may be developmentally delayed in their feeding skills:

- Prematurity
- Low birth weight
- Multiple hospitalizations due to illness and possibly the need to be fed intravenously
- Congenital anomalies, such as cleft lip or palate
- Genetic issues, such as Down syndrome
- Neuromuscular delay, such as cerebral palsy
A parent or caregiver of a developmentally delayed infant will need instructions on feeding techniques from the infant’s health care provider. For more information and resources on feeding infants and children with special health care needs, contact the following resources:

- A local pediatrician or health care provider
- A registered dietician or nutritionist specializing in this area, through the State health department or WIC program, through a local hospital, or at a university affiliated program for developmental disabilities
- A State maternal and child health agency

All infants should be monitored individually for growth-faltering or other adverse effects and refer to an appropriate health care provider. This is a population-based recommendation, and the timing of introduction of complementary foods for an individual infant may differ from this recommendation. See also: Chapter 2, “Infant Developmental and Feeding Skills,” pages 35–39; and Table 5.2, “Table 5.2 – Guidelines for Feeding Healthy Infants, Birth to 12 Months Old,” page 138.

Importance of Gradually Introducing Each New Food

When introducing infants to complementary foods, parents and caregivers should follow the guidelines below. By doing so, the infant will have time to become acquainted with each new food, and the parent or caregiver will easily be able to identify any adverse reactions or difficulties an infant has in digesting new foods.

Introduce one new, single-ingredient food at a time to determine the infant’s acceptance to each food. For instance, try plain cereal separately and fruit separately before cereal mixed with fruit. Allow 3 to 5 days between the introduction of each new single-ingredient food to observe for possible allergic reactions such as a rash, wheezing, or diarrhea, or other intolerances, before starting another food.

Start with baby foods such as iron-fortified cereal or baby meat, which are both high in key nutrients such as iron and zinc.

Introduce a small amount, 0.5–1 ounce, of a new food at first. This allows an infant to adapt to a food’s flavor and texture. Small amounts also help an infant avoid choking. Gradually increase the amounts of each food with the infant’s age and/or appetite.

Start with one feeding and gradually increase feedings to three times a day. Gradually increase the variety of foods with the infant’s age. By 7 to 8 months of age, infants should be consuming foods from a variety of food groups along with human milk or infant formula to ensure nutritional adequacy. Establish healthy/appropriate eating patterns (i.e., give the infant a variety of grains, vegetables, fruits, and protein-rich foods).

Check carefully for bones in commercially or home-prepared meals containing meat, fish, or poultry; remove seeds, skin, and pits from vegetables and fruits. See also: “Choking Prevention,” pages 120–123.

Early Introduction of Complementary Foods

Complementary foods introduced too early are of little benefit to the infant and may even be harmful because of the possibility of choking or causing an infant to consume less than the appropriate amount of human milk or infant formula, which can lead to malnutrition. There is also a well-established research that human milk protect against infectious diseases. Early introduction can also contribute to obesity. Parents or caregivers tend to introduce complementary foods at an early age because they feel that their infants are not satisfied with human milk or formula alone or that the foods will make their infants sleep through the night. However, the AAP warns that infants who are fed complementary foods before they are developmentally ready for them may react in the following ways:

- Choke
- Consume less than the appropriate amount of human milk or infant formula
- Be at risk for obesity
Infants who are not introduced to complementary foods when developmentally ready for them may experience the following problems:

- They may reject foods that are introduced at a later age, possibly because they have become comfortable with the easier feeding style of sucking from the breast or bottle. Infants may then have difficulty developing skills to eat independently.22
- They may consume an inadequate variety and amount of food to meet their nutritional needs. Neither human milk nor infant formula alone provides an adequate concentration or balance of nutrients for older infants.23

Because of complementary foods’ contribution to nutrition and motor development, it is highly important that parents and caregivers introduce complementary foods at the appropriate developmental stage.

### Establishing Dietary Variety and Food Preferences

Parents and caregivers should show a positive attitude when introducing new foods to their infant. New foods that are rejected should not be force-fed to an infant and should be offered again in a week or two. Research has demonstrated that it may take more than 10 repeated exposures to a new food for an infant to readily accept the food.24

Infants and children may accept foods previously rejected if time has elapsed since the initial rejection. It may also be helpful if the food is offered to the infant without any comment about the food or pressure to accept it. It may take time to adapt to the flavor and texture of new foods; familiarity plays a significant part in food acceptance.25

One suggested way to ease the transition to complementary foods is to first breastfeed the infant a little and then switch to very small half-spoonfuls of cereal prepared with the mother’s human milk, formula, or water; finally, finish the feeding with more breastfeeding.26 However, there is no medical evidence that introducing...
complementary foods in any particular order has an advantage for the infant.27

Breastfed infants tend to accept the introduction of new foods more readily than do formula-fed infants. This effect is most likely a result of the infant’s exposure to a variety of flavors in human milk from the mother’s diet.28

**Food Hypersensitivities/Allergies, Intolerances, and Other Adverse Reactions**

While the introduction of complementary foods is vital for an infant’s growth, parents or caregivers must also watch carefully for signs that an infant’s system is reacting poorly to or cannot tolerate certain foods. This is why it is important to introduce foods gradually, giving a parent or caregiver time to watch for signs of intolerance as noted below.

**Hypersensitivities/Allergies**

Food hypersensitivities, also called allergies, are defined as an adverse health effect arising from a specific immune response. When a food allergy is present, the immune system reacts to a certain food with symptoms such as the following:

- **Gastrointestinal system:** nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal pain
- **Respiratory system:** coughing, wheezing, mouth itch, runny nose, ear infection
- **Skin:** hives, atopic dermatitis (skin rash, such as eczema)
- **Full system:** life-threatening anaphylaxis

Reactions may occur immediately or hours after eating. Approximately 4 to 8 percent of children in the United States under 3 years of age suffer from food allergies. The most common allergies in infants and children come from milk, egg, wheat, and soy products. These allergies often resolve in childhood, within the first 3 to 5 years of life. Other allergies, from such foods as peanuts, tree nuts, fish, and shellfish can resolve, but they are more likely to persist.29 See also: Chapter 4, “Why Does My Infant Have an Allergy?,” page 95.

An infant is at high risk for developing an allergy if there is a strong family history of allergy, with at least one first-degree relative (a parent or sibling) with an allergic disease.30 While it was once recommended that parents and caregivers wait until a child was 3 years old to introduce the top allergenic foods, recent studies have indicated that the delay likely does not prevent an infant’s development of allergies, and it may actually increase the risk. Early exposure to a variety of food allergens once the infant is developmentally ready to consume complementary foods, through a healthy, diverse diet may be beneficial to the infant’s gastrointestinal tract.31

Because there is no convincing evidence that the introduction of allergenic foods should be delayed beyond 6 months of age, the AAP recommends that an infant without allergic risk be introduced to those foods when the infant is determined to be developmentally ready.32

If an infant appears to have a reaction to a food (i.e. atopic dermatitis), a health care provider should be contacted to ensure that the infant is clinically allergic to the food before removing it from the diet because restrictive diets may be harmful.

The AAP recommends guarding against infant development of allergies through exclusive breastfeeding for the first 6 months; if that is not possible, parents and caregivers should use hydrolyzed formulas for infants with a family history of allergies.

**Food Intolerances**

Food intolerances occur when there is difficulty in digesting foods. This can be caused by an enzyme deficiency, a toxin, or a disease not involving the immune system. Food intolerances, such as the following, may cause similar symptoms to those of the food allergies noted above, but they should not be mistaken for food allergies:33

---

**Anaphylaxis:** A serious allergic reaction involving multiple parts of the body, which can include swelling of the face and tongue. An injection of the drug epinephrine is needed immediately.
Whenever infants begin consuming complementary foods, choking becomes a concern due to their developmental ability to chew or swallow.

Choking is a major cause of fatality in infants and young children, especially for children from birth to 4 years of age. Food items are associated with approximately 40 percent of fatal choking incidents and approximately 60 percent of nonfatal choking episodes in children. Hot dogs, candy, seeds, raw carrots, apples, popcorn, chunks of peanut butter, marshmallows, sausages, chewing gum, and bones are the foods most often implicated.

Normally when someone eats, the airway to the lungs is blocked off as food passes to the esophagus on its way to the stomach. This prevents food from passing into the airway. However, in infants or young children, choking can occur more easily because the airway is still developing. It is not always blocked off properly during swallowing. This allows food to enter the airway and prevent breathing. Choking may also occur when food is inhaled directly into the airway.

To avoid the risk of choking, an infant should consume only foods that can be easily dissolved with saliva and do not require chewing. This way, only small bits of food enter the esophagus instead of large, unchewed chunks. If any of the food is accidentally directed to the airway, it will not be stuck there.

Parents and caregivers need to be familiar with the foods that pose higher choking risks and avoid them until the infant is developmentally ready. These symptoms can occur:

- For lactose intolerance: abdominal discomfort, bloating, loose stools
- For celiac disease: crampy abdominal pain, foul-smelling stools, diarrhea, weight loss, and irritability; apparent after an infant begins eating gluten-containing cereals

**NOTE:** Only a health care provider can make a diagnosis for either an allergy or food intolerance.

**Other Adverse Reactions**

Aside from allergic reactions and food intolerances, there are other reactions that can occur from sometimes unexpected sources:

- Food additives such as artificial food colorings
- Natural substances in foods, such as caffeine or fiber
- Substances or microorganisms that cause food poisoning

After any new food is introduced, watch for the following reactions:

- Excessive intestinal gas after consuming certain foods (e.g., certain vegetables, legumes)
- Vomiting
- Diarrhea
- Skin rashes

**NOTE:** If the parent or caregiver observes any of the above reactions in an infant during or after a feeding, consumption of that food should be stopped immediately and a health care provider consulted. If an infant appears to be having a severe reaction to a food, such as difficulty breathing, the parent or caregiver should call 911 or take the infant to the nearest hospital emergency room.

**Steps to Avoid Choking**

Choking can occur anywhere and anytime an infant is eating or drinking. It is vital for parents and caregivers...
Current Views on Peanut Allergies

Peanut allergy is an adverse response by the body's immune system to otherwise harmless peanut proteins in the diet. The prevalence of peanut allergy has been increasing, especially in some countries such as the United States that advocate avoidance of peanuts by mothers during pregnancy and lactation and by infants.

Emerging evidence shows the potential benefit of peanut introduction during the period of complementary feeding. The 2015 LEAP, or “Learning Early About Peanut Allergy,” study conducted by the Immune Tolerance Network and published in the *New England Journal of Medicine*, was based on a hypothesis that the regular eating of peanut-containing products, when started during infancy, will elicit a protective immune response instead of an allergic immune reaction in the child. The results demonstrated that consuming peanut-containing products likely prevents the development of an allergy among children who were at high risk of peanut allergy.

Based on the LEAP findings, the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, part of the National Institutes of Health, worked with 25 professional organizations, Federal agencies, and patient advocacy groups to develop clinical practice guidelines on preventing peanut allergies. The resulting fact sheet published in January 2017 gives parents and caregivers basic information they can use to discuss prevention of peanut allergy with their health care provider.

During the complementary feeding period, infants who develop the early onset of an atopic disease such as severe eczema might benefit from seeing a health care provider specializing in allergic diseases who can diagnose a food allergy and suggest whether or not to introduce peanuts to the infant.


Protective immune response: The body’s ability to recognize and fight or destroy harmful substances

Allergic immune reaction: The immune system’s response to a potentially harmful substance. Signs of reaction may include coughing, sneezing, and, in severe cases, difficulty breathing.
Solids and liquids should not be swallowed at the same time. Offer liquids between mouthfuls.

**Food Preparation Techniques to Lower Choking Risk**

An infant’s risk of choking on food can be lowered by taking the proper precautions when preparing food. Specifically, make sure that food is in a form that does not require much chewing.

### TABLE 5.1 – Common Foods That Cause Choking in Children Under Age 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vegetables</th>
<th>Fruits</th>
<th>Protein-rich foods</th>
<th>Grain products</th>
<th>Other foods and snacks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tough or large chunks of meat</td>
<td>Plain wheat germ</td>
<td>Hard or round candy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small pieces of raw vegetable (like raw carrot rounds, baby carrots, string beans, or celery), or other raw, partially cooked vegetables</td>
<td>Apples or other hard pieces of raw fruit, especially those with hard pits or seeds</td>
<td>Hot dogs, meat sticks, or sausages (even when cut into round slices)</td>
<td>Whole-grain kernels</td>
<td>Jelly beans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raw green peas</td>
<td>Large, hard pieces of uncooked dried fruits</td>
<td>Fish with bones</td>
<td>Crackers or breads with seeds</td>
<td>Caramels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooked or uncooked whole corn kernels</td>
<td>Whole pieces of canned fruit</td>
<td>Large chunks of cheese or string cheese</td>
<td>Nut pieces</td>
<td>Gum drops, gummy candies, or other gooey or sticky candy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large, hard pieces of uncooked dried vegetables</td>
<td>Whole grapes, cherries, berries, melon balls, or cherry and grape tomatoes</td>
<td>Peanuts, nuts, or seeds (like sunflower or pumpkin seeds)</td>
<td>Hard pretzels</td>
<td>Chewy fruit snacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Chunks or spoonfuls of peanut butter or other nut and seed butters</td>
<td></td>
<td>Marshmallows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Whole beans</td>
<td></td>
<td>Popcorn, potato or corn chips, or similar snack foods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ice cubes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Infants should have enough teeth and the muscular developmental ability needed to chew and swallow the foods being served. Remember, not all infants of the same age will be at the same developmental level. Infants with special health care needs may be at great risk for choking.40

- Remove all bones from poultry and meat, especially from fish, before cooking.
- Cook food until it is soft enough to easily mash with a fork.
- Grind up or puree chicken and other tough foods.
- Mash or puree vegetables, fruits, and other foods until they are smooth.
- Cut soft foods into small pieces (ideally cubes of food not larger than a half inch) or thin slices that can easily be chewed.
- Cut cylindrical foods such as hot dogs or string cheese into short, thin strips rather than round pieces that could become stuck in the airway.
- Cut small spherical foods such as grapes, cherry tomatoes, and grape tomatoes lengthwise and then cut them again, into smaller pieces.
- Remove seeds and hard pits from fruit and then cut the fruit into small pieces.
- Grate or thinly slice cheeses.

- Cook and finely grind or mash whole-grain kernels of wheat, barley, and other grains.
- Spread peanut butter, nut butter, or seed butter thinly on crackers. Or mix them with applesauce and cinnamon and spread thinly on bread. Use only creamy, not chunky, peanut, nut, and seed butters.

**Baby-Led Weaning**

Some parents and caregivers express interest in using a method called baby-led weaning (BLW) to introduce their infants to complementary foods. Although BLW has several proposed advantages, there is concern that BLW may increase the risk of food-related choking. Complementary feeding usually begins with pureed foods being spoon-fed to the infant by a parent or caregiver. In BLW, infants feed themselves all their foods, in the form of graspable pieces. Studies suggest that while gagging continues to be a greater possibility with BLW than with regular spoon-feeding, if the BLW method is followed carefully, choking is no more of a hazard than it is for spoon-fed infants.41

Choking: A Major Cause of Unintentional Infant Death

It is important for all parents and caregivers to learn the skills necessary to save an infant’s life.

The “Infant CPR Anytime” personal learning program, created by the American Heart Association (AHA), makes it possible for anyone to learn how to relieve a choking infant and perform infant CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation). The kit contains everything needed to learn the skills in 20 minutes, and it can be used anywhere, from the home to a large community group setting.

Information on classes held locally can be found on websites for the AHA and the American Red Cross. These organizations conduct classes and provide educational materials on first aid, choking prevention, emergency treatment, and CPR.

The AHA has a wall poster entitled “Heartsaver First Aid for the Choking Infant” appropriate for posting in offices or waiting rooms, with steps and illustrations for emergency treatment. It can be purchased by phone or through their website (1-800-611-6083, http://www.heart.org/en/cpr).

The pamphlet *Choking Prevention and First Aid for Infants and Children*, which addresses choking, first aid, and CPR, can be ordered or downloaded from the AAP website at https://shop.aap.org/product-list/. The pamphlet may also be available from the parent or caregiver’s health care provider.
Types of Complementary Foods to Introduce

Infants can be fed either home-prepared or commercially made infant foods. Research does not support introducing foods in a particular order; however, it is recommended to introduce one single-ingredient food at a time, starting with iron-rich and zinc-rich or fortified baby foods, such as fortified baby cereals or meats. Then an appropriate eating pattern should be established, including a variety of grains, vegetables, fruits, and protein-rich foods, so that by 7 or 8 months of age infants are consuming foods from all the food groups.42 This section reviews the different types and varieties of complementary foods that parents and caregivers commonly feed to infants, with their benefits.

See also: Table 5.2, “Table 5.2 – Guidelines for Feeding Healthy Infants, Birth to 12 Months Old,” page 138; and Chapter 8, “Food Safety,” pages 191–214.

Grain Products

Grain products in the form of iron-fortified infant cereal are appropriate complementary foods for infants because they are easy to digest and contribute important nutrients such as iron and zinc to the diet. Also, iron-fortified infant cereal’s texture can be easily altered to meet an infant’s developmental needs: more liquid makes it a soupy, easy-to-swallow first cereal, and less liquid makes it thicker and lumpier as feeding skills advance. A variety of plain, iron-fortified infant cereals are available.

The AAP recommends that parents and caregivers feed infants a variety of grain products as part of a well-balanced diet. Introduce oat, rice, and barley infant cereals as well as wheat cereal. Mixed grains cereals should be given to an infant only after the infant has tried each grain separately. Ground or mashed barley is another grain food.43

Cereals designed for older children or adults are not for infant consumption because these cereals often have high sugar or salt content. In addition, they may contain vitamins and minerals in forms or amounts that are not ideal for infants.

Tips for Choosing and Preparing Grains

- Always read the product labels to ensure that cereals are infant appropriate, that crackers and breads are made from whole-grain or enriched meal or flour and do not include seeds, and that pastas are an appropriate size that won’t cause choking.
- To prepare dry infant cereal, follow the directions on the box to measure the cereal before adding liquid.
- Cereals can be prepared with expressed human milk, infant formula, or water to produce a mixture that is not too thick and is easy for an infant to swallow and digest.
- A cereal’s consistency may be thickened as the infant matures by adding less liquid.
- Prepared cereals should never be given to an infant in a bottle. This practice promotes tooth decay and obesity and may cause choking.
- Bread should be cut into no larger than half-inch pieces or into small, thin strips before serving.
- Pastas should be cooked to a soft consistency for easy chewing and swallowing.

Protein-Rich Foods

Protein-rich foods are generally introduced to infants when they are about 6 months old. Iron and zinc, found in protein-rich foods such as meat, are important nutrients needed by exclusively breastfed infants as they grow older. Iron stores, especially, begin to diminish after an infant reaches 6 months of age, so this is an important time to introduce meats if the infant is developmentally ready to receive them.

Beyond cereal, many infants are ready to try to eat bread and small pieces of crackers. From 8 to 12 months of age, or when developmentally ready, a wider variety of grain products may be consumed. The variety offers sources of carbohydrates, thiamin, niacin, riboflavin, iron, and other minerals. In the case of whole-grain products, fiber is also added to the diet. Different foods can include small pieces of toast or crusts of bread from white, wheat, whole wheat, French, Italian, and similar breads and rolls without nuts, seeds, or hard pieces of whole-grain kernels; English muffins; pita bread; soft bagels without seeds or kernels; and soft tortillas. Crackers may include teething biscuits, saltines, plain enriched or whole-grain crackers low in salt, snack crackers without hard kernels, and graham crackers without honey. Zwieback and teething biscuits are also choices. Be aware and avoid some products that have a composition that could cause choking in an infant. See also: Table 5.1, “Table 5.1 – Common Foods That Cause Choking in Children Under Age 4,” page 122.

Pasta, noodles, and macaroni are also choices for infants 8 months and older, but a health care provider should give approval for these foods before the parent or caregiver starts introducing them.

Infants should never be fed hard foods that can’t be changed to make them safe options, such as popcorn, or products with seeds because they can obstruct the vulnerable infant’s airway. Barley and other grain products must be carefully ground or mashed before feeding them to an infant. See also: “Table 5.1 - Common Foods That Cause Choking in Children under Age 4,” page 122; “Choking Prevention38,” pages 120–123; Chapter 8, “Preparing and Storing Home-Prepared and Commercial Foods Safely,” pages 193–198.

NOTE: For information on rice and arsenic exposure in infants refer to “FDA Feeding Advice on Reducing Exposure to Arsenic,” page 203. See also: Chapter 8, “Arsenic,” page 203.

An Infant Needs Iron and Zinc

Iron and zinc are essential nutrients for infants. Iron deficiency (ID) and iron-deficiency anemia (IDA) continue to be of concern. This deficiency may adversely affect long-term neurodevelopmental and behavior, and some effects may be irreversible. In general, healthy term infants are born with 75mg/kg of total body iron, and this iron stored usually is sufficient until 4 to 6 months of age. Thus, it is recommended to talk with the pediatrician about screening and iron supplementation until complementary feeding starts. See also: Chapter 1, “Iron for Breastfed and Formula-Fed Infants” page 19.

Complementary feeding needs to continue with appropriate iron- and zinc-rich foods to support the production of red blood cells and normal brain development and to build a healthy immune system.

Meat, Poultry, and Fish

Meats such as poultry and beef should be among the first complementary foods introduced into an infant’s diet; especially to breastfed infants. Fish is another key protein-rich food. Commercially or home-prepared meats are a good source of iron and zinc, in addition to iron-fortified infant cereal. For the infant over 6 months old, protein-rich foods, as with all new foods, should be introduced one at a time, waiting 3 to 5 days between exposing each new food while observing the infant closely for reactions to the foods. See also: Chapter 6, “Vegetarian Diets,” pages 156–160.

Chicken, turkey, seafood, and lean red meats are the recommended choices for an infant’s first pureed proteins—as long as they are thoroughly cooked first. Lamb and pork are also choices, but they carry harmful bacteria that pose great risk for an infant if the food is not fully cooked before being pureed and served. Due to their high salt and/or fat content, hot Meats, Poultry, and Fish

Meats such as poultry and beef should be among the first complementary foods introduced into an infant’s diet; especially to breastfed infants. Fish is another key protein-rich food. Commercially or home-prepared meats are a good source of iron and zinc, in addition to iron-fortified infant cereal. For the infant over 6 months old, protein-rich foods, as with all new foods, should be introduced one at a time, waiting 3 to 5 days between exposing each new food while observing the infant closely for reactions to the foods. See also: Chapter 6, “Vegetarian Diets,” pages 156–160.

Chicken, turkey, seafood, and lean red meats are the recommended choices for an infant’s first pureed proteins—as long as they are thoroughly cooked first. Lamb and pork are also choices, but they carry harmful bacteria that pose great risk for an infant if the food is not fully cooked before being pureed and served. Due to their high salt and/or fat content, hot

Tips for Preparing Meats, Poultry, and Fish

- Remove the fat, skin, and bones from meat, poultry, and fish before cooking. Take particular care to remove all the bones, including small ones, from fish. It is more difficult to find all the bones after cooking, and bacteria from the preparer’s hands are destroyed by heat if bones are removed before cooking. After cooking, additional tough, inedible parts and remaining visible fat can be removed.

- The U.S. Department of Agriculture recommends ways to cook these foods: broiling, baking or roasting, panbroiling, braising, pot roasting, stewing, and poaching (for fish).

- Do not cook food in an oven set at a temperature below 325 degrees Fahrenheit because lower temperatures may not heat the food enough to kill bacteria.

- Cook meat, poultry, and fish thoroughly to kill any bacteria that might be present in the food and to improve the digestibility of the protein. See also: “Never Feed Infants Partially Cooked or Raw Animal Foods,” page 137.

- Color is not a reliable indicator of the food being fully cooked. Always use a food thermometer to ensure that food is fully and safely cooked to the following internal temperatures:
  - Red meats: at least 145 degrees Fahrenheit, with a rest period of 3 minutes after cooking
  - White meat poultry: at least 165 degrees Fahrenheit
  - Dark meat poultry: at least 165 degrees Fahrenheit
  - Fin fish: at least 145 degrees Fahrenheit

- After cooking, cut the deboned meat, poultry, or fish into small pieces and puree to the desired consistency. Warm meat is easier to blend than cold meat; chicken, turkey, lamb, and fish are the easiest to puree. Also, meats are easier to puree in a blender in small quantities.

- Make sure to clean the blender thoroughly before using it to make infant food.

- As an infant’s feeding skills mature, meats, poultry, fish, and legumes can be served ground or finely chopped instead of pureed.

**Fish: The Benefits and Concerns**

Fish is an important part of a healthy diet. Fish is a lean, low-calorie source of protein, rich in micronutrients, and contains a good type of fat (omega-3 fatty acids) that is important for normal growth and development. However, much attention has been focused on the contaminants (methylmercury, polychlorinated biphenyls, and dioxins) that may be in some fish and that could pose health risks if those fish are eaten in large amounts.

Parents and caregivers should discuss with their health care providers the amounts and types of fish to feed their infants. The FDA and EPA guidance regarding seafood consumption for women who are pregnant or breastfeeding and infants and young children is found at https://www.fda.gov/Food/FoodborneIllnessContaminants/Metals/ucm351781.htm. ➤ See also: Chapter 8, “Mercury in Fish,” page 205; and “Meat, Poultry, and Fish,” pages 194–196.


**Eggs**

Eggs are an excellent source of protein for an infant as long as the parent or caregiver takes care to choose and prepare them properly.

Research shows that there is little evidence that waiting longer than 6 months of age to introduce possibly allergenic foods will protect an infant from developing food allergies. Some studies even indicate that eating complementary foods with potential allergens can help infants guard against the development of allergic reactions. Still, special care should be taken when introducing eggs to ensure the infant does not experience an allergic reaction. ➤ See also: “Food Hypersensitivities/Allergies, Intolerances, and Other Adverse Reactions,” pages 119–120.

All eggs and egg-rich foods must be carefully handled and properly prepared to reduce the possibility of contamination with salmonella and other bacteria. Raw or partially cooked eggs or foods that contain them, such as homemade ice cream, mayonnaise, or eggnog, should never be fed to infants (or anyone else) because they may contain bacteria that can cause illness. ➤ See also: Chapter 8, “Eggs and Egg-Rich Foods,” page 196.

**Cheese and Yogurt**

Cottage cheese, hard cheeses, and yogurt can be gradually introduced as occasional protein foods. Since these foods contain proteins similar to those in cow’s milk, infants should be observed closely for reactions after eating these foods. However, cow’s milk should be avoided until 12 months of age. ➤ See also: Chapter 4, “No Whole Cow’s Milk in the First Year,” page 108.

Cheese can be eaten cooked in foods or in the sliced form. Small slices or strips of cheese are easier and safer to eat than chunks of cheese, which could cause choking. ➤ See also: Table 5.1, “Table 5.1 – Common Foods That Cause Choking in Children Under Age 4,” page 122.
Legumes (Dry Beans or Peas) and Tofu

Cooked legumes (dried beans and peas) or tofu (bean curd made from soybeans) can be introduced into an infant’s diet as a protein food. As for any new food, a parent or caregiver should observe whether the infant has a reaction to them, or appears to have difficulty digesting them. If so, legumes and tofu can be introduced again at a later time.

Tips for Choosing and Preparing Legumes and Tofu

- Instructions for cooking dried beans and peas can be found on the package label and in many basic cookbooks.
- If canned beans are used, choose low sodium or drain the salty water and rinse the beans with clean water before using. However, varying amounts of some water-soluble nutrients may also be lost.
- Once cooked until soft, remove the skins and cool and mash the legumes using a strainer and fork.
- Tofu (bean curd) can be mashed with a fork before feeding to infants. Freshness is key to buying high-quality tofu, so check the “use by” date stamped on the package.

Aseptically packaged tofu may be shelf stable for up to 9 months, but it should be used as soon as opened, according to the package instructions.

See also: Chapter 8, “Legumes (Beans and Peas) and Tofu,” page 196.


Legumes can be cooked and modified to a consistency easily eaten by an infant. It is best to introduce small quantities, usually 0.5 or 1 ounce of mashed or pureed and strained legumes initially, because whole beans or peas could cause choking.

Vegetables

Vegetables provide infants with carbohydrates (including fiber), vitamins, and minerals. Although many pediatricians may recommend starting vegetables before fruits, there is no evidence that an infant will develop a dislike for vegetables if fruit is given first. Infants are born with a preference for sweets, and the order of introducing foods does not change this.

The following vegetables are high in nutrients and can be prepared to the desired texture: asparagus, broccoli, Brussels sprouts, cabbage, carrots, cauliflower, collard greens, green beans, green peas, green peppers, kohlrabi, kale, plantains, potatoes, spinach, summer or winter squash, and sweet potatoes. Observe the infant for reactions after feeding any of these as new foods.

NOTE: Foods high in nitrates (spinach, beets, turnips, carrots, and collard greens) that are used in home-prepared baby foods can cause serious health effects in young infants. A varied diet will curb overconsumption of foods naturally high in nitrates.

Fruits
Infants are born with a preference for sweet foods and will enjoy trying fruit foods of varied flavors. Like vegetables, fruits provide infants with carbohydrates (including fiber), vitamins, and minerals. Commercially or home-prepared fruits can be fed to infants. A wide variety of fruits should be introduced over time.

If they are soft and ripe, the following fresh fruits can be mashed after peeling without cooking: apricots, avocados, bananas, cantaloupes, mangoes, melons, nectarines, papayas, peaches, pears, and plums. Apples and pears usually need to be cooked in order to be easily pureed or mashed.

The infant should be watched for adverse food reactions after feeding any of these fruits as new foods.

When preparing fruits for an infant, never add honey because of the risk of infant botulism. See also: “Honey,” page 135.

Beverages
Human milk and infant formula are the only beverages that should be offered to infants younger than 6 months old. Some pediatricians may recommend adding limited amounts of water once protein-rich foods are introduced. Similarly, 100 percent pasteurized fruit juice may be added in limited amounts after 1 year of age. Other beverages should not be fed to infants and may take the place of more nutritious foods or beverages in the diet.

Regular cow’s milk should never be given to an infant during his or her first year of life. Young infants cannot digest cow’s milk as completely or easily as they digest formula. In addition, cow’s milk has high concentrations of protein and minerals; these can stress the kidneys of an infant and cause severe illness, especially if the infant is already suffering from heat stress, fever, or diarrhea. The appropriate amounts of iron, vitamin C, and other nutrients required by infants are lacking in cow’s milk. It may even cause iron-deficiency anemia because calcium can inhibit iron absorption.
Water
In the first 6 months of life a healthy infant does not need extra water. Human milk and/or formula provide all the fluids the infant needs. Once complementary foods are introduced, an infant can have small amounts of water. Very hot weather may also be a time to feed infants a little water, but check with a health care provider to determine how much and how often water may be given. An infant should become accustomed to the taste of plain water early in life and should establish a healthy habit of drinking water that will extend into adulthood. In an area where the water is fluoridated, the drinking water also will help prevent future tooth decay.\(^5\)

\(\text{See also: Chapter 1, “Fluoride,” page } 21.\)

**NOTE:** The parent or caregiver should consult the health care provider concerning the infant’s individual water needs.

Fruit Juice
Infants under 12 months of age should not consume juice unless clinically indicated. After 12 months, any juice consumed should be 100 percent pasteurized fruit juice, and from an open cup (i.e., not bottles or easily transportable covered cups). Be sure to give juice only during a meal or snack, and never offer more than 4 ounces each day. If an infant drinks more than this, his or her appetite for other nutrient-rich foods, such as human milk or formula, may be limited.\(^5\)

\(\text{NOTE: Giving an infant too much juice can result in diarrhea, diaper rash, or unnecessary weight gain.}^{5}\)

**Tips for Choosing and Preparing Fruits**
- It is best to select high-quality fresh fruits whenever possible; however, frozen or canned foods can be used. Try to find products without added sugar, particularly canned fruits that are packed in syrup. Another option is canned fruit packed in water or 100 percent juice.
- Wash fresh fruits with clean, running water to remove dirt. Even if you do not plan to eat the skin, it is still important to wash the fruit first so dirt and bacteria are not transferred to the surface when peeling or cutting it. Drying it with a paper towel will further reduce bacteria on the surface.
- Remove pits, seeds, and inedible peels and other parts.
- When cooking is needed, cook the fruits in a covered saucepan on a stove. Either boil the food with a small amount of water or steam it until it is just tender enough to be pureed or mashed. Avoid excessive cooking of fruits in order to limit the destruction of vitamins.
- After cooking is finished, the food should be allowed to cool slightly. Then the food can be pureed or mashed until it reaches the desired smoothness.


---

100 percent pasteurized fruit juice\(^5\) The FDA mandates that a product must contain 100 percent fruit juice in order to be labeled as such. If a beverage contains less than 100 percent fruit juice, its label must display a descriptive term, such as “drink,” “beverage,” or “cocktail.” Pasteurization rids the juice of harmful bacteria.
The infant may suffer malnutrition and failure to thrive.58 Dental caries may develop.59 The infant is at increased risk for obesity.60

The AAP Committee on Nutrition makes the following recommendations regarding juice consumption by infants:61

- It is optimal to completely avoid the use of juice in infants before 1 year of age. Infants can be encouraged to consume whole fruit that is mashed or pureed. When juice is introduced, offer it only from a cup, not a bottle.
- Whether regular “adult” juices or infant juices are used, infants should be fed juice from a cup without a lid. Cups with lids designed to prevent spilling (sippy cups) are not recommended because they allow the infant or toddler to carry the cup around. This practice allows the infant to consume excessive amounts of liquid because of the constant access. (Many commercial infant juices are available in 4- and 8-ounce bottles designed so that a rubber nipple can easily be attached. Parents and caregivers should not use these bottles in place of a lidless cup.)
- Fruit juice should be part of a meal or snack and not sipped throughout the day.
- Fruit juice should not be consumed at bedtime or in bed.
- Infants should never drink unpasteurized juices.
- If juices are bought in a can that is import, pour them into a glass container once the can is opened to stop lead from leaching into the juice from the can. ➤ See also: Chapter 8, “Lead,” pages 202–204.

Adult or Children’s Juice?

When buying 100 percent pasteurized fruit juices, a parent or caregiver may find them either as adult products or as infant and toddler products. The content is the same. The juices bottled specifically for infants and toddlers are simply in different packaging and are more expensive. Regular adult juices can be consumed using the previous guidelines.
Unpasteurized Fruit Juices Are Not for Infants

Parents and caregivers should never buy unpasteurized juices for infants.

Even though such juices are readily available in the refrigerated sections of grocery or health food stores, cider mills, and farmers markets, they are not safe for infants. The juices may carry the bacteria *Escherichia coli* O157:H7, which can make an infant extremely ill. See also: Chapter 8, “Parasitic, Bacterial, and Viral Contaminants,” page 201.

Labels on unpasteurized juices must contain the following warning: “This product has not been pasteurized and therefore may contain harmful bacteria that can cause serious illness in children, the elderly, and persons with weakened immune systems.”


Caffeine-Containing Beverages

Beverages containing caffeine and theobromine, a caffeine-related substance, are not recommended for infants. Caffeine and theobromine act as stimulant drugs in the body. Coffee; green, black, or oolong nonherbal teas; some carbonated beverages such as colas; and hot chocolate contain these substances. In some cultures, infants are commonly fed coffee or tea as a beverage. This practice should be discouraged.

Sweetened Beverages

Sodas, fruit drinks, punches and “ades,” sweetened gelatin water, sweetened iced tea, and similar drinks are not recommended for infants because of their high sugar content. The sugars in these beverages are fermentable carbohydrates and thus can promote tooth decay.

Herbal Teas

Some parents and caregivers have given infants herbal teas in the belief that the teas would help with fussiness, digestion, colic, and relaxation. While herbal teas or tisanes have been made for children by pouring boiling water over herbal leaves or flowers and allowing them to steep, there is little knowledge of their effect on infants and children or how to use them safely. Several reports have shown adverse effects and general toxicities of drug-herbals or food-herbals, but information on how they affect specific age groups, including infants and children, is limited. A 2011 systematic review of randomized clinical trials on how herbals might help remedy colic was inconclusive. A focused study in 2011 determined that up to 9 percent of infants may be receiving herbal teas from a parent or caregiver, and that health care providers must be aware of this practice. More research is needed to establish the safety of herbal teas for infants, and parents or caregivers should consult a health care provider before using them.

NOTE: Infants with symptoms such as diarrhea, vomiting, or signs of dehydration should be referred to a health care provider. To treat vomiting or diarrhea, parents and caregivers should use only the appropriate oral electrolyte solution prescribed by a health care provider.
Artificially Sweetened “Low-Calorie” Beverages

Beverages such as sodas, iced tea, and fruit-punch mixes that are marketed as “diet” generally contain artificial sweeteners such as saccharin, aspartame, or sucralose. Since infants are growing rapidly and require energy for growth, there is no need for low-calorie beverages in their diets. Furthermore, artificial sweeteners have not been proven safe specifically for consumption by infants. Because of limited studies in children, the AAP has no official recommendations for the use of sweeteners. However, because there is no proven benefit to consuming them, they should not be fed to infants.66

Preparing Infant Foods for Consistency, Size, and Shape

Foods prepared for an infant at home can be equally as nutritious and more economical than commercially prepared infant food. The parent or caregiver also has more control over the variety and texture of the food than with commercially prepared infant foods. However, home-prepared infant foods must be appropriately modified for infants to safely consume. As an infant’s feeding skills progress, changes can gradually be made. For instance, food consistency or texture can progress from pureed to ground to fork mashed and eventually to diced.

When determining the size, shape, and consistency of foods being prepared, it is important to assess the developmental stage of the infant, including oral skills and number and type of teeth for chewing. For instance, a toddler may have the front teeth to bite off foods but not have the molars to chew foods thoroughly. Remember that every infant develops at a different rate. Foods should be introduced when the infant or toddler is ready for them. As an infant or toddler tries each new food, the parent or caregiver should allow him or her to touch it and explore the new texture for a full experience.67

Some kinds of foods are never appropriate for an infant during the first year, or even the first 4 years of life. Foods such as hot dogs, nuts and seeds, hard fruits and vegetables, and sticky foods like marshmallows are choking hazards and must be avoided.

Below are guidelines for preparing foods in the consistency, size, and shape that will allow infants and toddlers to eat a nutritious balance of foods, to explore new textures and food experiences, and to be safe from choking.

Consistency

An infant’s first complementary food can begin as a liquid gruel, and it can gradually be mixed with less and less liquid—human milk or formula—to form a lumpier consistency. To deliver a slightly denser consistency, meats, vegetables, and fruits can be cooked until they are soft and then mashed or pureed. Always remove bones from meat and seeds and hard pits from fruit and vegetables before cooking them. The cooked product should be soft enough to pierce with a fork before mashed or pureed.

Avoid sticky foods such as marshmallows and chunks of peanut butter. Peanut butter can conform to the airway and form a seal over it. If a parent or caregiver wishes to serve nut butters, he or she should be sure they are smooth, not chunky; they may be spread in a thin layer on a cracker or mixed with applesauce and cinnamon and spread thinly on bread.68

Avoid foods that are firm, smooth, or slick: these may slip down the throat. Some examples are whole grapes or cherry tomatoes, nuts, hard candy, hot dog-like products, string cheese, large pieces of fruit with skin, whole pieces of canned fruit, and raw beans or peas.

Dry or hard foods may be difficult to chew and too easy to swallow whole. Some examples are popcorn, pretzels, potato chips, nuts and seeds, and small, hard pieces of raw vegetables. Sticky or tough foods such as chunks of peanut butter, marshmallows, sticky candy, or tough meat may not break apart easily and may be hard to remove from the airway.
NOTE: Parents or caregivers must observe the infant carefully with each new food, as any size can cause choking when not chewed and swallowed properly.

Shape

When preparing infant foods, a parent or caregiver can chop soft foods such as bread, pasta, and cooked vegetables into squares no larger than a half inch.

Cylindrical-shaped foods must be altered or avoided altogether for infants and young children. Hot dogs, for instance, are exactly the size of a child's airway and can easily wedge there. To make cylindrical foods like hot dogs and string cheese more accessible for an infant, cut them into short strips instead of round pieces. Other cylindrical foods, like carrots and celery, can be cooked until soft and then cut into strips.

Some cylindrical foods cannot be altered and should be avoided, such as hard candies.

Chunks of cheese can be altered for safe eating by grating the cheese into small shavings or cutting it into very thin slices.

Any sphere-shaped foods such as grapes, cherries, or cherry tomatoes should be cut in half lengthwise and then cut into smaller pieces before serving. If left whole, they are likely to slip into the throat and block the airway more completely than other shapes.

Introducing Finger Foods

At about 6 months of age, infants develop the innate palmar reflex, a grasping reflex, to begin pushing food into the palm with their fingers. See also: Chapter 2, “Know the Infant’s Grasping Reflexes,” page 37. Between 6 and 8 months old, they develop the ability to hold something between their thumb and forefinger. This is called a pincer grasp. By this time, infants can begin to feed themselves with their hands and try some finger foods. The foods should have the following characteristics:

- Pieces small enough for an infant to pick up
- Food is soft enough for the infant to chew on
- Foods should have the following characteristics:
  - Pieces small enough for an infant to pick up
  - Food is soft enough for the infant to chew on
  - Foods should have the following characteristics:
    - Pieces small enough for an infant to pick up
    - Food is soft enough for the infant to chew on
    - Foods should have the following characteristics:
      - Pieces small enough for an infant to pick up
        - Food is soft enough for the infant to chew on
        - Foods should have the following characteristics:
          - Pieces small enough for an infant to pick up
            - Food is soft enough for the infant to chew on
            - Foods should have the following characteristics:
              - Pieces small enough for an infant to pick up
                - Food is soft enough for the infant to chew on
          - Foods should have the following characteristics:
            - Pieces small enough for an infant to pick up
              - Food is soft enough for the infant to chew on
              - Foods should have the following characteristics:
                - Pieces small enough for an infant to pick up
                  - Food is soft enough for the infant to chew on
                  - Foods should have the following characteristics:
                    - Pieces small enough for an infant to pick up
                      - Food is soft enough for the infant to chew on
                      - Foods should have the following characteristics:
                        - Pieces small enough for an infant to pick up
                          - Food is soft enough for the infant to chew on

Size

When an infant is usually around 8 months of age, and as an infant’s skills develop, foods can advance from being pureed to being served in bite-size pieces. Foods should be cooked until soft enough to pierce easily with a fork. Each piece should be no larger than one-half inch in size to avoid choking.

Introduce small, soft foods such as well-cooked spiral pasta, chopped cooked vegetables, or chopped soft fresh fruits. Be sure to cut grapes, pitted cherries, berries, or melon balls in half lengthwise, and then cut them into smaller pieces before serving. Cheese can be grated or thinly sliced. These foods, which can be picked up by the infant as finger foods, allow the infant a new level of interaction and discovery.

In addition, strips of larger, firmer grain foods such as teething crackers; plain, low-sodium crackers; small, soft pieces of tortilla or pita bread; or other bread and toast strips allow the infant to pick up the food and chew on it rather than inserting the entire piece in the mouth.

Avoid small, hard pieces of food such as nuts and seeds or raw, hard vegetables such as carrots that can get into the airway if they are swallowed before being chewed properly. Never serve crackers with tiny seeds, nuts, or whole-grain kernels.

Larger pieces of food beyond the recommended half-inch chunks will be more difficult to chew and are more likely to completely block the airway if inhaled. Avoid serving any foods that are as wide around as a nickel.
Appropriate finger foods include cooked macaroni or noodles, small pieces of bread, small pieces of soft, ripe peeled fruit or soft cooked vegetables, small slices of mild cheese, crackers, and teething biscuits.

This is a messy stage, but allowing infants to feed themselves is very important to their development of feeding skills. Using a high chair or booster seat with a removable tray that can be washed easily or covering the area under the infant’s seat with newspaper or a plastic mat will help manage the mess.

By about 10 to 12 months of age, most healthy, full-term infants are able to feed themselves chopped foods from the table with their fingers. Parents and caregivers should be alert to the risk of infants choking and instructed to closely supervise infants while they are eating. See also: “Choking Prevention,” pages 120–123.

**Foods to Avoid**

While the infant is exploring new foods, the parent or caregiver must beware that certain foods that may be appropriate for older children and adults must never be given to an infant. Some might cause food poisoning or contain chemical contaminants; others are candidates for choking. Parents and caregivers should keep a list of the following foods that should never enter an infant’s diet.

**Honey**

Honey, including that used in cooking or baking or found in processed foods such as yogurt with honey, honey graham crackers, adult cereals, and peanut butter with honey, should not be fed to infants under 12 months of age. Honey is sometimes contaminated with *Clostridium botulinum* spores. Foods made with honey that in the preparation process are not heated to a certain temperature may still contain viable spores. When consumed by an infant, these spores can produce a toxin that may cause infant botulism, a foodborne illness that can result in death. While the gastrointestinal tract of older children and adults can destroy the small amount of spores in honey, an infant’s cannot.

**Cow’s Milk**

Cow’s milk should never be given to an infant under the age of 1 year old. See also: “Beverages,” page 129.

**Sugar**

Sugar eaten alone or added to foods provides additional kilocalories to the diet and, as a fermentable carbohydrate, promotes tooth decay. In addition, early exposure to sugar sets taste preferences that can lead to overconsumption later in life and to related problems from obesity to chronic diseases including diabetes.

**Syrups**

Unlike honey, corn syrup, molasses, maple syrup, and other syrups are not sources of *Clostridium botulinum* spores and are not associated with infant botulism; however, syrups are not appropriate for infant consumption. Like sugar, syrups eaten alone or added to foods provide additional kilocalories and promote tooth decay. They carry the same concerns for overconsumption and health problems in later life.

**Artificial Sweeteners in Foods and Beverages**

Never feed artificially sweetened foods or beverages to infants. Because infants are growing rapidly, they have no need for low-calorie foods or drinks. In addition, artificial sweeteners have not been proven safe for consumption by infants. See also: “Artificially Sweetened “Low-Calorie” Beverages,” page 133.

**Sugar-Sweetened Beverages**

Drinks such as soda, coffee, tea, fruit punches, and “ade” drinks are high in either caffeine or sugar and should never be consumed by an infant. See also: “Sweetened Beverages,” page 132.
Sweetened Foods and Desserts
Sweetened foods may be higher in sugar and fat and lower in key nutrients than other more nutritious foods, such as plain fruit. For an infant’s dessert, plain fruit should be given instead of commercially prepared infant food desserts such as commercial cakes, cookies, candies, and sweet pastries. Also, it is important to avoid chocolate, which has caffeine, is high in fat and sugar, and can cause an allergic reaction in some infants.88

Adult Cereals
Ready-to-eat, iron-fortified cereals designed for adults or older children are not recommended for infants for a few reasons. First, they are usually loaded with more sugar and sodium (salt) than are infant cereals. Second, they contain less iron per infant-size serving size, and the iron is a type that is not easily absorbed into the infant’s system.79

Vegetables High in Nitrates or Nitrites
When counseling parents and caregivers who give infants complementary foods before the recommended age (which is about 6 months of age), assess if the infant is developmentally ready. Additionally, caution against using certain vegetables that contain nitrate. The AAP recommends that spinach, beets, turnips, carrots, and collard greens prepared at home should not be fed to infants less than 6 months old because they may contain sufficient nitrate to cause methemoglobinemia.80

The nitrate in these vegetables is converted to nitrite before ingestion or while in the infant’s stomach. The nitrite binds to iron in the blood and hinders the blood’s ability to carry oxygen. The risk of developing methemoglobinemia is only present with home-prepared, high-nitrate vegetables. Commercially prepared infant and junior spinach, carrots, and beets contain only traces of nitrate and are not considered a risk to the infant. Manufacturers of infant foods select produce grown in areas of the country that do not have high nitrate levels in the soil, and they monitor the amount of nitrate in the final product. Therefore, if parents or caregivers wish to feed infants under 6 months of age those foods, they should be advised to use only commercial products. See also: Chapter 8, “Nitrate,” pages 206–208.

Fried Foods, Sauces, Gravies, and Processed Meats
These foods are loaded with salt and fats. These are a challenge for an infant’s developing system to digest. In addition, foods such as fat-rich meats, fried foods, and oil-based sauces are likely to contribute to obesity later in life.81

Recommended Amounts of Complementary Foods83
When an infant is ready to begin complementary foods, the parent or caregiver can start with small servings of 0.5–1 ounce of individual foods once a day and gradually increase the serving size to 1–2 ounces of grain products, 2–4 ounces of vegetables, 2–4 ounces of fruit, and 1–2 ounces of protein-rich foods daily.

Methemoglobinemia: Also called blue baby syndrome, this condition occurs when too little oxygen reaches the tissues throughout the body, causing an infant to turn blue. Consumption of high-nitrate foods, exposure to certain drugs or chemicals, or illness can lead to this condition.
INFANT NUTRITION AND FEEDING

The quantity of food an infant consumes varies between infants. It also changes from meal to meal or day to day for an individual infant. Infants may want to eat less food when teething or not feeling well and more food on days when they have a very good appetite. The best guide for how much to feed an infant is to follow his or her indications of hunger and fullness. Table 5.2 (page 138) gives basic guidelines for feeding healthy infants from birth to 12 months old.

See also: Chapter 2, “Hunger and Satiety Cues by Age,” pages 38–39.

Home-Prepared Foods

Home-prepared foods are important for parents and caregivers because they are easy to prepare and the precise ingredients are known. At an early stage, it is good to help infants become used to eating foods the rest of the family will eat. In addition, preparing fresh foods at home is less expensive than buying commercial foods in jars and boxes.
### TABLE 5.2 – Guidelines for Feeding Healthy Infants, Birth to 12 Months Old

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Human milk or infant formula</th>
<th>Grain products</th>
<th>Vegetables</th>
<th>Fruits</th>
<th>Protein-rich foods</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Birth–6 months</td>
<td>Newborns breastfeed 8–12 times/day. Formula-fed infants should consume 2–3 ounces of formula every 3–4 hours and by 6 months consume 32 ounces/day.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6–8 months</td>
<td>Breastfed infants continue to breastfeed, on demand. Formula-fed infants take in about 24–32 ounces. Amounts vary based on individual nutrition assessment. Intake of human milk or formula may decrease as complementary foods increase.</td>
<td>About 1–2 ounces iron-fortified infant cereals, bread, small pieces of crackers</td>
<td>About 2–4 ounces of cooked, plain, strained/pureed/mashed vegetables</td>
<td>About 2–4 ounces of plain strained/pureed/mashed fruits</td>
<td>About 1–2 ounces meat, poultry, fish, eggs, cheese, yogurt, or legumes; all are plain strained/pureed/mashed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8–12 months</td>
<td>Guide/encourage breastfeeding mothers and continue to support mothers who choose breastfeeding beyond 12 months. Formula-fed infants take in about 24 ounces. Amounts vary based on individual nutrition assessment.</td>
<td>About 2–4 ounces iron-fortified infant cereals; other grains: baby crackers, bread, noodles, corn, grits, soft tortilla pieces</td>
<td>About 4–6 ounces, ground/finely chopped/diced</td>
<td>About 4–6 ounces, ground/finely chopped/diced</td>
<td>About 2–4 ounces meat, poultry, fish, eggs, cheese, yogurt, or mashed legumes; all are ground/finely chopped/diced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**NOTE:** These are general guidelines for the healthy, full-term infant per day; serving sizes may vary with individual infants. Start complementary foods when developmentally ready, about 6 months; start with about 0.5–1 ounce.
When preparing food for an infant, the parent or caregiver should be sure to take the following steps:\(^8\)

- Prepare and store the food safely. \(\Rightarrow \) See also: Chapter 8, “Food Safety,” pages 191–198.
- Cook the food to the appropriate texture. \(\Rightarrow \) See also: “Food Preparation Techniques to Lower Choking Risk,” pages 122–123.
- Cook the food using methods that preserve nutrients.
- Prepare the food without adding unnecessary ingredients such as sugar, salt, and excess fat.

**NOTE:** Strongly discourage parents and caregivers from chewing table foods in their mouths and then feeding the food to their infants. Saliva from the parent or caregiver’s mouth contaminates the food with bacteria and dilutes its nutrient content. \(\Rightarrow \) See also: Chapter 8, “Clean Hands and Kitchens Keep Infants Well,” pages 191–192.

### Commercially Prepared Foods

While commercially prepared infant foods provide a fast alternative for busy parents and caregivers, these foods often contain additional ingredients such as sugars and salts that are not necessary in infant food preparation. Before buying commercial infant foods, parents and caregivers should understand the offerings and know how to read the labels. \(\Rightarrow \) See also: Chapter 8, “Commercial Infant Foods,” page 197.

**NOTE:** Encourage parents and caregivers to read food labels carefully and match the consistency and texture to an infant’s developmental stage. Be sure to look at the “use by” dates before buying or using unopened infant food containers.

Plain, commercially prepared infant meats, vegetables, or fruits offer more nutrient value, ounce for ounce, than do commercially prepared infant food mixed dinners. For example: the mixed dinners do not contain as much protein and iron as do the plain meats. Instead of using mixed dinners, parents and caregivers should mix together the desired amounts of plain meats and plain vegetables. Some infants will accept meat better when it is mixed in this manner.

Commercially prepared infant foods that progress in texture and thickness can be used as the infant’s developmental abilities advance.

If commercially prepared infant fruits are used, plain varieties are preferred instead of fruit desserts or infant food mixtures with added ingredients such as sugar, nonfat dry milk, or corn syrup.

### Equipment for Preparation

Common kitchen equipment is all that is necessary to make infant foods at home. A simple metal steamer, available in most supermarkets, can be used to cook fruits and vegetables and will reduce the loss of vitamins that can occur during cooking. To help reach the desired food textures ranging from very smooth to lumpy to coarse, the following equipment can be used:

- **Blender.** Purees foods, including meats, vegetables, and fruit, to a very smooth consistency
- **Fine mesh strainer.** Purees very soft cooked vegetables and ripe or cooked fruits to a less smooth consistency, achieved by pushing the food through the strainer with the back of a spoon
- **Infant food grinder or food mill.** Purees most foods to a smooth consistency; purees meats to a coarser consistency
- **A kitchen fork or knife.** For older infant food, fork mashes to a lumpy consistency; knife chops finely

After pureeing food, the parent or caregiver may add plain water, human milk, or infant formula to create a thinner consistency. As an infant grows older and progresses in the development of feeding skills, the consistency and texture of foods can be altered accordingly.

Avoid adding sugar or salt to an infant’s food. When cooking foods for the family, the infant’s portion can be separated out before adding those ingredients.
Mealtimes

An infant who is around 6 months old may start out with one meal per day of complementary food, in addition to human milk or formula, and then gradually work up to about three meals and two to three snacks per day. The food itself is vital to bringing the right balance of nutrients to an infant. But there is more to good nutrition than the food itself. The selection and balance of the foods, the careful observation by and interaction with the parent or caregiver, and the promotion of a calm and loving feeding environment are key to successfully introducing foods for his or her long and healthy relationship with nutritious eating. See also: Chapter 2, “The Feeding Relationship,” pages 39–43.

Environment

■ Ensure that the infant has a high chair or other chair in which he or she can sit upright, both for ease of eating and to keep from choking. Be sure to use a safety strap at all times. The parent or caregiver should also be in a comfortable position.
■ Keep the environment calm and focused on the food. This will help the infant enjoy the new tastes and textures.
■ Bring the infant into a circle with the family dinner table; gradually the infant will learn that eating is a social experience. Research shows that being part of regular family dinners has a positive effect on an infant’s development.
■ Practice good eating habits in front of the infant, as he or she will imitate the way other family members eat and what they eat. Slow eating is important. Also, avoid the saltshaker and refrain from eating salty, sugary, or processed foods.
■ Expect that early feedings of complementary foods will be messy and that more food will end up on the high-chair tray and floor than in the infant’s mouth. Cover the floor around the high chair with newspaper or a drop cloth to make cleanup easier.
■ Never hurry. By creating a relaxing atmosphere, the parent or caregiver will allow the infant to experiment with new foods and develop individual patterns and rituals. That way the infant—and everyone in the family—will look forward to mealtimes.

Care and Observation

■ Pay attention to the infant’s behavior and never leave him or her alone.
■ Talk to the infant as he or she eats, encourage him or her to taste new foods, and be supportive as each new food is tried and accepted or rejected.
■ Allow the infant to rest between bites.
■ Some infants have a challenging time adjusting to new food textures. They may cough, gag, or spit up when new foods are introduced. New foods must be introduced slowly.
■ If the infant is fussy, do not force the issue. It’s more important that both parent or caregiver and infant enjoy mealtimes than try to meet a schedule for trying specific new foods. If necessary, go back to nursing or bottle-feeding exclusively for a week or two, and then try again.

■ Watch for signs that the infant is full. An infant should never be forced to eat all the food on the plate; this teaches him or her to eat just because the food is there, not because he or she is hungry.
■ Expect a smaller and pickier appetite as the infant’s growth rate slows around age 1.
Practical Aspects of Feeding Complementary Foods

Explain to parents and caregivers that beginning at age 6 to 9 months, infants show more interest in the food adults eat and less interest in breastfeeding or bottle-feeding. Nevertheless, infants should continue to receive human milk or infant formula or both until 1 year of age or longer as mutually desired by mother and infant.

For infants who are developmentally ready for complementary foods, the following are practical guidelines for feeding complementary foods to healthy full-term infants. Developmentally delayed infants may require special seating, feeding utensils, bowls, and feeding methods. These infants should be referred to a health care provider.

It is important to ensure that the infant is safely and comfortably prepared to receive foods at mealtimes. Encourage parents and caregivers to:

- Wash an infant’s hands and face frequently and especially before he or she eats. An infant’s hands can pick up harmful microorganisms, lead paint dust, and more that may be consumed during eating.
- Seat the infant straight up in a comfortable high chair (or similar chair) and secure the infant in it. This practice reduces the risk that the infant will choke on the food or fall out of the chair. An infant who is lying down with food or eating while playing, walking, or crawling can easily choke. The parent or caregiver should sit directly in front of the infant while feeding him or her.
- Use a spoon and a bowl to feed pureed or mashed foods. The spoon should be small and fit easily into the infant’s mouth; it should be made of unbreakable material that will not splinter if the infant bites it. The bowl should be small and unbreakable, with edges that are not sharp.
- Understand that the time between the introduction of complementary foods at about 6 months of age and around 9 months of age is a sensitive period for learning to chew.
- Be patient and understanding as the infant tries new foods. Emphasize that if the infant does not like a new food, he or she should not be forced to eat it. The food can be offered at a later time. It may take more than 10 attempts before an infant accepts a certain food.

Talk to the infant during feedings. As infants develop, they increasingly respond to social interaction.

Permit the infant to “explore” their food with their hands as they grow older and begin to gain more control over picking up and holding food; by doing so, they will have an easier time learning to feed themselves.

Be patient and accept that their infants will make a mess when eating; this is a natural part of learning for an infant.

Remove distractions such as television so that the infant stays focused on food during mealtimes. However, they may place the infant in a high chair in the family circle at mealtimes to increase socialization.

Drinking From a Cup

Infants who are developmentally ready to eat complementary foods may be able to drink or suck small amounts of liquid from a cup when another person holds the cup. When they are about 6 months old, most infants develop the ability to drink, with assistance, from a cup with some liquid escaping from their mouths. Infants are usually ready to drink from a cup when they can curve their lips around the rim of a cup and can sit without support. Reassure parents and caregivers that spills and some mess normally occur as an infant learns to use a cup, and that maintaining patience during this time is important.

Here are tips for parents and caregivers to help their infants learn how to drink from a cup:

- Hold the cup for the young infant.
- Introduce small amounts of human milk or infant formula.
- Feed the infant very slowly, by tilting the cup so that a very small amount of liquid—one mouthful—leaves the cup; then allow the infant to swallow without hurry.
- Use a plastic cup.
Use of Sippy Cups

The sippy cup is a training tool that can help infants transition from a bottle to a cup. It should not be used for a long period of time: it is not a bottle or a pacifier.

As sippy cups have become a convenience for parents and caregivers, their use encourages the infant to carry the cup and drink more often. Frequent sips of infant formula or juice put infants at higher risk for developing early childhood caries.

The American Academy of Pediatric Dentistry recommends avoiding frequent, repetitive consumption of any liquid containing fermentable carbohydrates from a bottle or no-spill training cup. These liquids include infant formula, milk, juice, or sweetened beverages. See also: Chapter 6, “Dental Caries (Tooth decay or cavities),” pages 152–153.


36 Kleinman and Greer, *Pediatric Nutrition*, 845, 847.


40 “Choking Prevention,” AAP.


44 Holt et al., *Bright Futures: Nutrition*, 49.


Supplement/609.3.short; “Starting Solid Foods,” AAP; USDA, FSIS (Food Safety and Inspection Service), Guidelines for Feeding Healthy Infants.

50 “Starting Solid Foods,” AAP.

51 Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 440.

52 Mahan and Raymond, Krause’s Food at the Nutrition Care Process, 302.


55 Dietz and Stern, Nutrition: What Every Parent Needs to Know, 46; Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 707; Shelov, Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5, 127.

56 Dietz and Stern, Nutrition: What Every Parent Needs to Know, 46; Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 707.

57 Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 556–57.

58 Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 161.

59 Shelov, Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5, 316; Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 161.


Sports Drinks and Energy Drinks for Children and Adolescents: Are They Appropriate?,” *Pediatrics* 127, no. 6 (June 2011): 1182–89; USDA, FSIS, *Guidelines for Feeding Healthy Infants*.


71 “Starting Solid Foods,” AAP.


73 Kleinman and Greer, *Pediatric Nutrition*, 135.


76 “Sweeteners and Sugar Substitutes,” AAP; USDA, FSIS, *Guidelines for Feeding Healthy Infants*.

77 USDA, FSIS, *Guidelines for Feeding Healthy Infants*.


79 “Starting Solid Foods,” AAP.


84 Dietz and Stern, Nutrition: What Every Parent Needs to Know, 41.

85 Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 136.

86 Dietz and Stern, Nutrition: What Every Parent Needs to Know, 41–42; Shelov, Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5, 243.


As parents and caregivers establish foundational feeding practices and a safe and healthy environment during an infant’s first year of life, they must also recognize and nurture practices that will affect an infant’s long-term health and development. These factors include growing and maintaining healthy teeth, consuming a wide variety of foods and adequate nutrients when restrictive diets are needed, avoiding certain common illnesses and behaviors that lead to overweight, and establishing sound sleeping habits.

**Oral Health**

Good oral health is integral to general health and means a lot more than having healthy teeth that are free of decay. A person cannot be healthy without having a healthy mouth. The mouth and surrounding structure allows us to speak, smell, taste, chew, swallow, and express emotions from cries to smiles. The oral area helps a person interact with the world. It also gives insight into the workings of other parts of the body that cannot be seen. By carefully examining the mouth, teeth, and tissues, experts can see signs of nutritional deficiency, infections, immune disorders, and even cancers. That is why good oral care needs to start early. It is key to an infant’s health and sets the stage for a healthy life.

Tooth decay is the most common chronic infectious disease that does not respond to antibiotics and does not heal itself. The good news is that it can be prevented. Good nutrition, use of proper feeding techniques, and careful attention to keeping the mouth and teeth clean are all important for ensuring that an infant develops and maintains healthy, strong teeth.

### The WIC Program and Oral Health

As an adjunct to health care services, the WIC program’s role in preventing oral health problems in women, infants, and children is through its education and referral programs. The identification of oral health problems may be a part of the nutrition risk assessment. Identification of oral health problems is based on self-reported information obtained from participating parents and caregivers or from a documented diagnosis of dental problems by a health care provider.

### Tooth Development

The primary teeth and many permanent teeth begin forming inside the jaw bones before birth. Both the primary teeth, which erupt over the first 2½ years of the infant’s life, and the permanent teeth that follow serve important purposes. The primary teeth are critical for the following key points in development:

- Chewing and eating food
- Normal formation of the jaw bones and muscles
- Correct placement of the permanent teeth
- Facial appearance
- Proper speech development
The central and lateral incisors are the first primary teeth to erupt. These are the front four teeth on the lower and upper sections of the mouth. Teething usually starts between 4 and 7 months of age. Each infant teethes at his or her own rate. The timing can be hereditary. There is no cause for alarm if infant teeth have not yet erupted during this timeframe. Since the primary teeth are not fully replaced by permanent teeth until a child is 12 to 14 years old, keeping teeth healthy and intact during this period is particularly important, as this impacts the subsequent health and alignment of the permanent teeth.

**Teething**

Teething occurs when the erupting primary teeth make an infant’s gums sore or tender. Signs of teething include the following:

- Excessive drooling
- Mild irritability
- Crying
- A desire to chew on something hard
- A low-grade temperature, which is an elevated temperature above 98.6 degrees Fahrenheit or 35.5 degrees Celsius but under 101 degrees Fahrenheit or 38.3 degrees Celsius

**NOTE:** If an infant’s temperature is over 101 degrees Fahrenheit or 38.3 degrees Celsius, the fever is probably unrelated to teething, and a health care provider should be consulted.

During the teething period, a parent or caregiver may notice that an infant’s gums are red and puffy and may see or feel the emerging tooth. The following actions may help alleviate an infant’s teething discomfort:

- Gently rubbing or massaging the gums with a clean finger
- Cleaning the infant’s mouth two to three times per day with a damp, clean gauze pad or washcloth
- Letting the infant chew on a chilled (in the refrigerator) clean rattle, solid teething ring, pacifier, or wet washcloth

**NOTE:** Never give an infant a liquid-filled teething ring. They can become hard when chilled and can cause damage to the gums. In addition, there have been recalls due to possible bacterial growth in the liquid affecting an infant who bites through the ring.

**Proper Tooth Development**

The following nutrients are necessary for proper tooth development:

- Protein as included in human milk, formula, and the early complementary foods ➔ See also: Chapter 5, “Protein-Rich Foods,” pages 125–128.
- Minerals such as calcium, phosphorus, and fluoride

Protein provides the foundation for teeth, and minerals are deposited in this foundation to form a hard tooth structure. Fluoride, when incorporated during tooth development and after the teeth erupt, makes tooth enamel significantly more resistant to acids from food that help produce dental caries. Thus, a nutritious, adequate diet, along with adequate fluoride, is important for both the development and maintenance of healthy, strong teeth.

Yet even if a nutritious diet is consumed, as soon as any of the primary teeth begin to appear, they can decay under certain conditions, as noted below, under “Dental Caries.”

**Dental Caries**

**Tooth Decay or Cavities**

Three variables contribute to the development of dental caries: susceptible teeth, specific bacteria in the mouth, and fermentable carbohydrates (sugars and starches). Tooth decay begins when fermentable carbohydrates from food or beverages are metabolized into organic acids by mouth bacteria, primarily *Streptococcus mutans* (*S. mutans*). The *S. mutans* bacteria that normally live in the mouth adhere to the tooth surfaces and form dental plaque. The sticky plaque enables the bacteria and the acids

---

**Dental caries:** Tooth decay or cavities resulting from the complex interaction of foods, especially sugars, with saliva and mouth bacteria to form acids and dental plaque that cause teeth to decay

**Dental plaque:** The sticky, colorless material that accumulates around and between the teeth and gums and in the pits and grooves of the chewing surfaces of the teeth. It holds bacteria and the acids it produces on the tooth surface. These in turn cause decay.
INFANT NUTRITION AND FEEDING

Home Remedies and Teething Gels: What to Avoid

Using home remedies for treating teething discomfort may be a family tradition, but parents and caregivers should be aware that some remedies may be harmful to an infant. They should always speak with a health care provider before buying and applying over-the-counter (OTC) medications or using other remedies for soothing sore gums.

Parents and caregivers should follow these guidelines:

- Never give ice chips or hard, raw vegetables such as carrots to an infant to chew. These present a serious choking hazard.
- Never rub brandy or other alcoholic beverages on the gums. Even a small amount of an alcoholic beverage can have an adverse effect on an infant.
- Never give teething pain relief medicine before mealtime. It numbs the gums and mouth and may interfere with chewing and swallowing.
- Avoid using OTC topical teething gels unless given specific guidance by a health care provider. These usually contain benzocaine, a topical anesthetic, and they can seriously injure an infant if too much is used and the excess amount is accidentally swallowed. Resulting reactions can include gum irritation and swelling; seizures when there is an overdose; and methemoglobinemia (see page 136 for definition), which reduces the oxygen carried through the bloodstream. Teething gels with benzocaine should never be used in children under 2 years of age.

If a health care provider prescribes OTC analgesic medications such as acetaminophen or ibuprofen, carefully follow the provider’s instructions on correct dosing.


they produce to remain on the tooth surface instead of being washed away by saliva. The longer plaque stays undisturbed on the tooth surfaces, the greater is the likelihood that the bacteria will produce acids from carbohydrates. The acids demineralize, or destroy, the enamel on teeth and cause tooth decay.

If any of the primary teeth are lost prematurely to decay, surrounding teeth may move into the empty space. Then permanent teeth may erupt without having sufficient room to be placed properly. They may come in crooked, making them more difficult to clean and thus more susceptible to decay. Proper feeding practices, appropriate fluoride intake, and regular care of an infant’s teeth help prevent dental caries from occurring.

Evidence indicates that the primary source of *S. mutans* in the mouth of infants is their mother’s saliva. *S. mutans* can be transferred from mother to infant, for instance, through shared eating utensils or toothbrushes, which increases the risk of the infant developing dental caries, especially if the mother has untreated dental caries.8

The transfer of *S. mutans* is not limited to mother to infant saliva transfer but applies to any saliva transfer for example a caregiver or sibling. For this reason, it is advisable for parents and caregivers to take the following steps:9

- Avoid exposing the infant to their saliva by sharing eating utensils or toothbrushes, or cleaning a dropped spoon or pacifier with their saliva.
- Avoid chewing food themselves and then feeding it to their infants.
- Take care of their mouth with regular brushing with fluoride toothpaste, flossing, and dental care.
- Obtain treatment for any existing dental caries.
Early Childhood Caries

Early childhood caries (formerly called nursing bottle caries or baby bottle tooth decay) is a specific form of severe tooth decay of an infant’s primary teeth. It develops when bacteria are present and an infant’s teeth are bathed in liquids containing fermentable carbohydrates (infant formula, other milks, fruit juice, sweetened water, or other sweetened beverages) for prolonged periods of time during the day or night.10

The following criteria characterize severe early childhood caries:

- The decay begins soon after tooth eruption.
- The decay progresses rapidly.
- The decay occurs on smooth surfaces, generally considered to be at low risk for decay. In the case of early childhood caries, the decay is usually seen on the four maxillary incisors—the upper four front teeth. The upper four front teeth are among the first to erupt and are the first to be bathed in liquids during food intake, while the lower teeth are protected in part by the infant’s tongue.
- As decay progresses, the front teeth become brown or black and may be completely destroyed.
- If inappropriate practices continue, the other teeth may also undergo similar decay.

Even though primary teeth will ultimately be replaced with permanent teeth, severe decay to the primary teeth has a lasting harmful effect on a child’s oral health. Children with early childhood caries tend to experience more hospital and emergency room visits. Treatment is more expensive and invasive. Those with early childhood caries experience pain, increased risk of infection, poor physical growth, poor learning ability, and increased school absence and activity restrictions.11

Taking a bottle to bed, or unsupervised use of a bottle or sippy cup holding any liquid other than water during the day, should be discouraged.12 Decreased cleaning movements of the tongue and lower production of saliva (resulting in reduced cleansing of the teeth) during sleep contribute to the development of caries, as does extended and repetitive use of a no-spill sippy training cup.

Recognizing Healthy Teeth and Early Childhood Caries

Parents and caregivers need to know the signs of developing decay in an infant’s teeth. Every infant should have healthy teeth if a regimen is followed that includes eating healthy foods that are low in sugar and cleaning teeth in a careful and consistent manner. The photographs below show examples of healthy teeth and of teeth that have been allowed to decay, ranging from mild to severe cases of early caries.
Does Breastfeeding Help Avoid Caries?

Human milk, in contrast to formula, contains breast-specific Lactobacilli and other substances that inhibit the growth of the bacteria that cause caries; however, breastfed infants may also be vulnerable to early childhood caries. Breastfeeding mothers should be alerted to the need for oral hygiene after feedings, especially when the infant’s first teeth have begun to emerge. Although studies have shown that human milk alone does not cause dental caries, once an infant starts consuming complementary foods, the combination of sugar-rich food and human milk from an on-demand breastfeeding schedule can contribute to dental caries.

Oral Care and Prevention of Infant Caries

To prevent early childhood caries and caries development in general, these steps are recommended:

- Take good care of personal oral health: even before an infant is born, it is important and safe during pregnancy to see a dentist regularly (every 6 months) for oral care.
- Care of teeth is important in both breastfed and bottle-fed infants:
  - Birth to 12 months. Gently wipe the gums with a clean baby washcloth. Once the first teeth have erupted, gently brush them using a soft baby toothbrush and a smear (about the size of a grain of rice) of fluoride toothpaste.
  - 12 to 36 months. Brush the infant or young child’s teeth two times per day—after breakfast and before bedtime—for 2 minutes each time. Use a smear of fluoride toothpaste until the third birthday.
- To prevent fluorosis, parents and caregivers should make efforts to minimize the swallowing of toothpaste.
- Never put an infant to bed with a bottle or food. This exposes teeth to sugars that cause dental caries.
- Check to see if there is fluoride in the household water. Drinking water that contains fluoride in the right amounts or eating food prepared with fluoridated water will benefit an infant.
- If the tap water comes from a well or another nonfluoridated source, it will be useful to have a water sample tested for natural fluoride content. If the tap water does not have enough fluoride, a health care provider may prescribe a fluoride supplement for the older infant. A fluoride varnish may also be applied to the infant’s teeth to protect the teeth from decay. See also: Chapter 4, “Using Fluoridated Water to Mix Infant Formula,” pages 104–105.
- Teach an infant to drink from a regular cup as soon as possible, preferably beginning around 6 months of age. Drinking from a cup prevents excess liquid from collecting around the teeth, and a cup cannot be taken to bed.
- Avoid or limit foods that promote development of dental caries such as sweet or sticky foods an older infant eats (e.g., cookies, or fruit roll-ups).
- Avoid the use of juice in infants under 12 months of age. After 12 months, encourage whole fruit over fruit juice, but any juice consumed should be part of a meal or snack and from an open cup. When juice is introduced, it should be pasteurized 100 percent fruit juice. Also, avoid giving infants carbonated beverages. See also: Chapter 5, “Beverages,” pages 129–133.
- Take the infant to see a dentist before he or she is 1 year old, or sooner if there are any concerns. A local pediatric dentist can be found through the American Academy of Pediatric Dentistry (AAPD) website at http://www.aapd.org or through https://www.insurekidsnow.gov/, a Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services website.
- Do not use a bottle or sippy cup as a pacifier or allow an infant to hold one filled with liquids for long periods.

The First Visit to the Dentist

To ensure that any dental problems are discovered and treated before becoming more serious, the AAPD and the AAP recommend that infants receive an oral health risk assessment by a qualified pediatric health care professional by 6 months of age. Those infants at significant risk of developing dental caries should be evaluated between 6 and 12 months of age by a dentist. Infants should be taken to their first dental visit by 12 months of age.
Infant dental checks should set the stage for a lifelong good habit of regular dental care that will prevent the negative effects of dental disease. If an infant or young child shows signs of dental problems or tooth decay at any time, refer him or her to a medical or dental health care provider as soon as possible. If left untreated, dental caries can become very serious, possibly requiring the extraction of teeth at a very early age.

Vegetarian Diets
Families or individuals choose vegetarian diets for religious, philosophical, economic, ecological, health, or personal reasons. A vegetarian diet is generally defined as a diet that includes primarily or only plant foods (i.e., fruits, vegetables, legumes, and grains) and usually excludes certain or all animal foods (i.e., meats, poultry, fish, eggs, and dairy products). Advise parents and caregivers to make their health care provider aware of this dietary choice, as each food category has different implications for the health and nutrition of infants and children.\(^\text{22}\)

Classifications of Vegetarian Diets
Vegetarian diets have been classified into the following subdivisions, based on the types of animal foods included in each diet. Within each classification, there may be variations of the foods eaten.\(^\text{23}\)

- **Lacto-vegetarian diet.** It includes plant foods and dairy products; excludes eggs.
- **Lacto-ovo-vegetarian diet.** It includes plant foods, dairy products, and eggs.
- **Semi-vegetarian or partial vegetarian diet.** It includes plant foods and a few to several kinds of animal products such as fish, seafood, eggs, and dairy products.
- **Vegan or total vegetarian diet.** It includes plant foods only; excludes any foods from animal sources, such as dairy products, gelatin, and honey.
- **Macrobiotic diet.** It includes unpolished rice and other whole grains, legumes, seaweed, fermented foods, vegetable oils, fruits and vegetables, and occasionally fish. This diet can have stages of increasingly severe dietary restriction that excludes some of these foods. Generally, dairy products, red meat, and poultry are excluded at any stage. When taken to extremes, macrobiotic diets have been known to compromise nutrient status.
- **Fruitarian diet.** It includes raw or dried fruits, berries, juices, grains, legumes, and a few vegetables.

Adequacy of Vegetarian Diets
For parents and caregivers who want their infants to follow a vegetarian or vegan diet, the AAP has indicated that, besides human milk, soy-based infant formula is an appropriate food. Both provide adequate nutrition for approximately the first 6 months of life. Later, when complementary feeding starts, most vegetarian-oriented infants are on a lacto-vegetarian diet (which includes fruits, vegetables, cereal, human milk, and after 12 months of age, cow’s milk). For older infants, the AAP and the Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics have stated that vegetarian or vegan diets can meet infants’ needs if attention is paid to specific nutrients such as protein, vitamin A, vitamin B\(_2\), vitamin B\(_12\), vitamin D, calcium, iron, and zinc.\(^\text{24}\)

Risks of Some Vegetarian Diets
As vegetarian diets become more restrictive, the nutritional and health risks for infants increase. Infants of any age on a restrictive vegetarian diet, such as macrobiotic, vegan, or fruitarian, are placed
at significant risk for multiple health and growth issues due to nutrient and vitamin deficiencies. Parents or caregivers and their infants should have a dietary evaluation and should be given appropriate information about the deficiencies related to vegetarian diets.\textsuperscript{25}

Inadequate vegetarian, in particular vegan, diets may lead to the following conditions in infants:\textsuperscript{26}

- Failure to thrive due to lack of nutrients, including vitamin B\textsubscript{2}, and because excess fiber may inhibit the absorption of nutrients \textsuperscript{27}\textsuperscript{28} See also: Chapter 1, “Fiber,” page 7; and “Vitamin B\textsubscript{2},” page 14.
- Vitamin B\textsubscript{2} deficiency, which contributes to poor growth and eye health, including sensitivity to light
- Iron deficiency anemia \textsuperscript{27}\textsuperscript{29} See also: Chapter 1, “Iron Deficiency,” page 19.
- Vitamin B\textsubscript{12} deficiency, causing megaloblastic anemia (production of abnormally large red blood cells) and thus fatigue
- Vitamin D deficiency rickets \textsuperscript{27}\textsuperscript{30} See also: Chapter 1, “Vitamin D Deficiency,” page 12.
- Vitamin A deficiency, causing keratomalacia (softening and ulceration of the cornea)
- Protein deficiency, leading to diarrhea, fatty liver, and stunted growth
- Zinc deficiency, which decreases wound healing and promotes anemia
- Calcium deficiency, causing osteomalacia (softening of the bones)

**Guidelines for Nutrition Counseling for Vegetarian Diets**

When providing nutrition counseling to parents or caregivers of infants on vegetarian diets, the following guidelines should be used. If key points are appropriately addressed when feeding a vegetarian infant, it should be possible for the infant to receive an adequate balance of nutrients and thus achieve optimum growth and development. \textsuperscript{27}\textsuperscript{29}\textsuperscript{31} See also: Chapter 1, “Nutritional Needs of Infants,” pages 1–30; and Chapter 5, Table 5.2, “Guidelines for Feeding Healthy Infants, Birth to 12 Months Old,” page 138.

Counselors should follow these steps:

- Provide initial nutrition evaluation and assessment of the diet for nutritional deficiencies and excesses, and determine if the diet is appropriate for the infant’s developmental level.
- Provide follow-up counseling if a parent or caregiver decides to keep his or her infant on a vegan diet.\textsuperscript{32} See also: Chapter 1, “Fiber,” page 7; and “Vitamin B\textsubscript{2},” page 14.
- Inform the parent or caregiver about the limits and potential detriments of restrictive diets.
- Discourage the use of very restrictive vegetarian diets.
- Refer the infant to a health care provider for a medical evaluation and advice on supplementation if the parent or caregiver decides to keep the infant on a restrictive diet.
- Emphasize the importance of following general guidelines for introducing new foods and of watching for hypersensitivity (allergic) or other reactions an infant may have to new foods. \textsuperscript{33} See also: Chapter 5, “Developmental Readiness for Complementary Foods,” page 116.
- Discuss with the parent or caregiver the importance of modifying the texture of foods to meet the infant’s developmental needs. \textsuperscript{34} See also: Chapter 5, “Home-Prepared Foods,” pages 137–139.
- Discuss with the parent or caregiver the appropriate amounts and types of foods needed to supply the infant with adequate energy, protein, vitamins, and minerals. The following section provides details on these nutrients.

**Feed Infants the Right Balance of Nutrients**

A balance of foods that provide energy and nutrients is key to a diet that will allow an infant to thrive. Guide parents and caregivers to understand the energy and nutrients offered by foods allowed in various vegetarian diets and how to supplement those nutrients that are missing.
Energy Content

Many vegetable- and cereal-based foods are low in calories and high in fiber content. For an infant, these foods need to be chosen wisely to ensure that sufficient kilocalories and nutrients are consumed daily. Low-calorie foods provide little energy. In addition, although a small amount of fiber in an infant’s diet should not be harmful, a high-fiber diet tends to fill an infant’s stomach and limit the amount of foods the infant can physically consume during meals.

A high-fiber diet can also reduce the availability of iron, calcium, and zinc from foods in the diet and inhibit mineral absorption. Thus, encourage parents and caregivers to select a variety of foods, including those with a moderate or low fiber content. Vegan infants are most vulnerable to inadequate energy intake during the weaning period—whether weaning from human milk or soy formula; providing some refined grain products and peeled fruits and vegetables, and feeding more frequently, can help provide adequate calories without adding significant fiber.²⁹

Protein

The protein needs of a lacto- or lacto-ovo-vegetarian infant are easily met if the diet includes sufficient quantities of high-quality protein foods, such as yogurt, cheese, and eggs. A vegan diet must be planned carefully to ensure that a sufficient quality and quantity of protein is provided. ► See also: Chapter 1, “Protein,” pages 7–9.

Advise parents and caregivers who decide to keep their infants on a vegan diet to take these steps:

- Breastfeed or use soy-based infant formula. Soy-based infant formulas are nutritionally balanced. Soy-based beverages (sometimes described as soy drinks or soy milks) or rice beverages (rice milk) sold in grocery and specialty food stores are lacking in key nutrients needed by infants, including calcium, niacin, and vitamins D, E, and C. Such drinks should not be fed as substitutes for infant formula. Full-fat soy milk may be offered to vegan infants starting at 12 months of age.³⁰

- Feed combinations of plant foods, such as beans and rice, to infants consuming complementary foods during the course of each day. Several combinations meet the protein needs of the older vegetarian or vegan infant:³¹
  - Cooked, mashed tofu and ground or mashed rice
  - Iron-fortified infant cereal and soy-based infant formula
  - Cooked, pureed kidney beans with ground or mashed rice, mashed noodles, or a piece of whole-wheat bread
  - Other combinations of different legumes and cereal grains (such as rice, wheat, and barley) prepared with the appropriate texture

Vitamin A

Vitamin A requirements can be met by adding to the diet plant foods rich in beta carotene. These foods include leafy or deep yellow or orange vegetables and fruits such as carrots, sweet potatoes, squash, spinach, romaine lettuce, kale, oranges, and cantaloupe. Beta carotene absorption can be increased by chopping, cooking, or pureeing these foods. Also, a small amount of fat can be added to the foods to help absorption into the body.³²

Vitamin B12

A vegan infant’s needs for vitamin B12 are a challenge to meet. B12 occurs only in animal foods and very few plants. The few plants with B12, such as algae and seaweed, are not always easy to find in the store.³³ Mothers who choose a vegan diet for their infant should be advised to breastfeed or use commercial soy-based infant formula in order to deliver adequate B12. Soy-based formula will be fortified with vitamin B12, and to ensure a good supply of B12 in her own milk, a vegan breastfeeding mother should consume vitamin B12-fortified plant foods; nutritional yeast; and sea vegetables such as kelp, chlorella, and dulse or take a supplement containing vitamin B12.³⁴

Without adequate B12, over time an infant can develop neurological damage. Refer the vegan mother and infant to a health care provider for assessment of vitamin B12 status. Vegan diets are generally high in folic acid, which can mask the symptoms of vitamin B12 deficiency.³⁵
**Vitamin D**

The vitamin D needs of vegetarian infants should be carefully monitored. Vegetarian, and particularly vegan, infants who are not breastfed should be fed soy-based infant formulas. These formulas provide adequate vitamin D for vegetarian infants in the first 12 months of life. ➤ See also: Chapter 1, “Vitamin D,” pages 11–12.

After an infant reaches 12 months of age, soy milk fortified with vitamin D may be introduced to the infant’s diet.36

**Calcium**

Calcium needs are easily met if an infant is consuming adequate quantities of human milk or infant formula, both rich sources of calcium. Calcium, in smaller amounts and a less available form, is also present in soybeans and other legumes, grain products, and green leafy vegetables, including chard, kale, collard greens, and spinach.37

**NOTE:** When counseling parents and caregivers who give infants complementary foods before the recommended age of about 6 months, assess if the infant is developmentally ready. In addition, caution against using certain vegetables that contain nitrate. The AAP recommends that spinach, beets, turnips, carrots, and collard greens prepared at home should not be fed to infants less than 6 months old because these vegetables may contain sufficient nitrate to cause methemoglobinemia.38 ➤ See also: Chapter 5, “Vegetables High in Nitrates or Nitrites,” page 136; and Chapter 8, “Nitrate in Vegetables,” pages 206–208.

**Iron**

Most healthy, full-term infants are born with iron stores that are not depleted until they are about 4 to 6 months old. Thus, it is recommended that infants receive an iron supplementation until complementary feeding starts. ➤ See also: Chapter 1, “Iron for Breastfed and Formula-Fed Infants, page 19.

A vegetarian infant who consumes an appropriate amount of iron-fortified infant formula daily and iron-fortified cereal starting around 6 months of age should receive an adequate amount of iron in the first year of life. Iron sources other than meat, poultry, and fish include iron-fortified infant cereal and other enriched and whole-grain products, cooked dried beans and peas, and cooked dried fruits. Since these plant foods contain poorly absorbed nonheme iron, it is recommended to feed vitamin C-rich foods at the same meal, which will help increase iron absorption.39 ➤ See also: Chapter 1, “Iron,” pages 18–19.

**NOTE:** Refer infants who may be iron deficient, based on dietary intake or hemoglobin and hematocrit tests, to a health care provider for assessment, monitoring, and advice on supplementation.

**Zinc**

Human milk or infant formulas consumed in appropriate amounts provide sufficient zinc for young infants.40 After 6 months of age, vegetarian food sources of zinc should be added to the diet. Zinc sources besides meat, poultry, fish, and eggs include legumes, whole-grain cereals, breads, and other fortified or enriched grain products; milk products such as cheese and yogurt are a zinc source for lacto-vegetarians. The AAP does not recommend zinc supplementation for vegan infants during the weaning period because clinical signs of zinc deficiency are rarely seen in vegetarians.41

**Riboflavin (Vitamin B2)**

Dairy products are one of the major sources of riboflavin in an infant’s diet.42 Infants who are not fed human milk, milk-based infant formula, or other dairy products such as cheese and yogurt can obtain riboflavin from soy-based infant formula; enriched, fortified, and whole-grain breads or cereals; green leafy vegetables; legumes; broccoli; and avocados. Riboflavin deficiency has occasionally occurred in people who follow severely restricted macrobiotic diets, but it is not a problem in other forms of vegetarianism.43

**Vitamin D**

The vitamin D needs of vegetarian infants should be carefully monitored. Vegetarian, and particularly vegan, infants who are not breastfed should be fed soy-based infant formulas. These formulas provide adequate vitamin D for vegetarian infants in the first 12 months of life. ➤ See also: Chapter 1, “Vitamin D,” pages 11–12.

After an infant reaches 12 months of age, soy milk fortified with vitamin D may be introduced to the infant’s diet.36

**Calcium**

Calcium needs are easily met if an infant is consuming adequate quantities of human milk or infant formula, both rich sources of calcium. Calcium, in smaller amounts and a less available form, is also present in soybeans and other legumes, grain products, and green leafy vegetables, including chard, kale, collard greens, and spinach.37

**NOTE:** When counseling parents and caregivers who give infants complementary foods before the recommended age of about 6 months, assess if the infant is developmentally ready. In addition, caution against using certain vegetables that contain nitrate. The AAP recommends that spinach, beets, turnips, carrots, and collard greens prepared at home should not be fed to infants less than 6 months old because these vegetables may contain sufficient nitrate to cause methemoglobinemia.38 ➤ See also: Chapter 5, “Vegetables High in Nitrates or Nitrites,” page 136; and Chapter 8, “Nitrate in Vegetables,” pages 206–208.

**Iron**

Most healthy, full-term infants are born with iron stores that are not depleted until they are about 4 to 6 months old. Thus, it is recommended that infants receive an iron supplementation until complementary feeding starts. ➤ See also: Chapter 1, “Iron for Breastfed and Formula-Fed Infants, page 19.

A vegetarian infant who consumes an appropriate amount of iron-fortified infant formula daily and iron-fortified cereal starting around 6 months of age should receive an adequate amount of iron in the first year of life. Iron sources other than meat, poultry, and fish include iron-fortified infant cereal and other enriched and whole-grain products, cooked dried beans and peas, and cooked dried fruits. Since these plant foods contain poorly absorbed nonheme iron, it is recommended to feed vitamin C-rich foods at the same meal, which will help increase iron absorption.39 ➤ See also: Chapter 1, “Iron,” pages 18–19.

**NOTE:** Refer infants who may be iron deficient, based on dietary intake or hemoglobin and hematocrit tests, to a health care provider for assessment, monitoring, and advice on supplementation.

**Zinc**

Human milk or infant formulas consumed in appropriate amounts provide sufficient zinc for young infants.40 After 6 months of age, vegetarian food sources of zinc should be added to the diet. Zinc sources besides meat, poultry, fish, and eggs include legumes, whole-grain cereals, breads, and other fortified or enriched grain products; milk products such as cheese and yogurt are a zinc source for lacto-vegetarians. The AAP does not recommend zinc supplementation for vegan infants during the weaning period because clinical signs of zinc deficiency are rarely seen in vegetarians.41

**Riboflavin (Vitamin B2)**

Dairy products are one of the major sources of riboflavin in an infant’s diet.42 Infants who are not fed human milk, milk-based infant formula, or other dairy products such as cheese and yogurt can obtain riboflavin from soy-based infant formula; enriched, fortified, and whole-grain breads or cereals; green leafy vegetables; legumes; broccoli; and avocados. Riboflavin deficiency has occasionally occurred in people who follow severely restricted macrobiotic diets, but it is not a problem in other forms of vegetarianism.43
Common Gastrointestinal Problems

In the early months of life, many infants have gastrointestinal challenges. These can range from taking in too much air while feeding and becoming cranky to developing gastroesophageal reflux, to developing the more serious gastroesophageal reflux disease, which can cause symptoms including vomiting, abdominal pain, and upper respiratory infection. Among the milder challenges is spitting up. Not to be confused with vomiting, spitting up is a common occurrence in infants less than 12 months old. Until that age, the muscle located between the stomach and esophagus is not sufficiently developed to keep all the food inside the stomach after eating, so some of the food comes back up. Spitting up is the easy flow of stomach contents up through the esophagus and out of the mouth, frequently with a burp. Vomiting is the forceful throwing up of stomach contents through the esophagus and mouth.

Spitting Up

It is normal for young infants to spit up a small amount of human milk or infant formula after feedings. Sometimes spitting up means the infant has eaten more than the stomach can hold; sometimes the infant spits up while burping or drooling.

After a feeding, it is usual for a small amount of human milk or infant formula to come out of an infant’s mouth. Spitting up can be messy, but it is not usually a cause for concern. It almost never involves choking, coughing, discomfort, or danger to the infant even if it occurs while sleeping.

Although some parents and caregivers may want to lay their infant on his or her stomach to prevent spitting up, infants should only be put to sleep lying on their back, without any pillows, blankets, or toys to prop them up. Following this guideline will also help prevent sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS).
To help decrease the frequency and amount of spitting up, practice these steps:⑩

- Feed the infant before frantic hunger sets in.
- Make each feeding calm, quiet, and leisurely.
- Avoid sudden noises, bright lights, and other distractions during feedings.
- Do not feed the infant when he or she is lying down.
- Hold the infant in an upright position for 20 to 30 minutes following a feeding.
- Avoid excessive stimulation or physical activity after the feeding.
- When bottle-feeding, burp the infant every 3 to 5 minutes throughout the feeding and make sure the hole in the nipple is the proper size.

➤ See also: Chapter 4, “Know the Correct Nipple Size,” page 101.

Gastroesophageal Reflux (GER)

A more frequent form of spitting up is called gastroesophageal reflux. Reflux is defined as the spontaneous, effortless regurgitation of material from the stomach into the esophagus. GER may be caused by the immature gastrointestinal tract and seems to be related to a delay in stomach emptying.⑩ When reflux is associated with other symptoms, or if it persists beyond infancy, it is considered a disease and is known as gastroesophageal reflux disease or GERD.

➤ See also: Chapter 4, “Common Feeding Concerns,” pages 101–103.

NOTE: Infants with severe GER can develop gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD). Symptoms of GERD include wheezing, recurrent pneumonia or upper respiratory infections, hoarseness and other symptoms of esophagitis (an irritation of the esophagus), blood in vomit or stool, irritability during feeding, or failure to thrive. These infants should be referred to a health care provider immediately.⑩

Reducing Air Intake During Feeding

Most infants swallow air while feeding, which leads to crankiness, fussiness, and spitting up. Air intake happens more often with bottle-fed infants than with those who are breastfed.

If an infant begins to fuss in the middle of a feeding, it is better to stop and address the problem. If the infant continues feeding and gulps in even more air, spitting up is sure to follow once the feeding is over.

Be sure to burp the infant several times during a feeding, during normal breaks. Burping slows a feeding and can lessen the amount of air swallowed.

Since bottle-fed infants often swallow more air than breastfed infants, they need to be burped every 3 to 5 minutes during feedings.

Sources:
**Vomiting**

It is important to recognize the difference between spitting up and vomiting. Because vomiting is a forceful discharge of food through the esophagus, it involves a more complete emptying of the stomach's contents than does spitting up.

Vomiting causes distress and discomfort to the infant and can occur as a:

- Symptom of a reaction to food eaten
- Minor medical condition, such as a viral illness
- Major medical condition, such as pyloric stenosis
- Reaction to certain medications
- Result of inner ear stimulation while in a moving vehicle
- Result of excitement or nervousness

Vomiting can place an infant at risk of dehydration and should be addressed immediately. Refer an infant to a health care provider for medical evaluation if the infant has forceful vomiting occurring approximately 15 to 13 minutes or less after every feeding.

**Constipation**

Constipation is generally defined as the condition in which bowel movements are hard, dry, and difficult to pass. Pyloric stenosis is the thickening of the muscle at the stomach exit that prevents food from passing into the intestines and causes projectile vomiting after every feeding. It requires surgery within the first two to six weeks of life to open the narrowed area.

Part of the difficulty in determining whether an infant is constipated is that each parent or caregiver may have a different perception of how often an infant should have a bowel movement and whether an infant’s stool is “too hard.” Some parents and caregivers believe iron from formula causes their infant to be constipated, but studies have demonstrated no relationship between iron-fortified infant formula and gastrointestinal distress, including constipation. Formula-fed infants tend to have firmer stools, but this does not indicate constipation.

Constipation can be caused by a variety of factors or conditions, including the following:

- Dietary influences
  - Inadequate amounts of human milk, infant formula, complementary foods, or fluid intake
  - Improper dilution of infant formula
  - Early introduction of complementary foods
- Abnormal anatomy or neurologic functioning of the digestive tract
- Use of certain medications
- Medical conditions and hormonal abnormalities
- Stool withholding due to rectal irritation from rashes, thermometers, vigorous wiping, etc.
- Excessive fluid losses due to vomiting or fever
- Lack of movement or activity

Signs that can suggest actual constipation of an infant include:

- Being excessively fussy
- Spitting up more than usual
- Having dramatically more or fewer bowel movements than before
- Having stools unusually hard, or contain blood related to hard stools
- Having episodes of straining for more than 10 minutes without success

**Preventing Constipation**

If a parent or caregiver complains that an infant is constipated, recommend he or she see the infant’s health care provider for medical evaluation. Assess the infant’s diet and guide the parent or caregiver to follow these preventive measures:

- Ensure adequate intake of human milk or infant formula.
- Ensure proper infant formula preparation and dilution if the infant is formula-fed.
- Ensure that appropriate types and amounts of complementary foods are consumed.

---

**Pyloric stenosis:** Thickening of the muscle at the stomach exit that prevents food from passing into the intestines and causes projectile vomiting after every feeding. It requires surgery within the first two to six weeks of life to open the narrowed area.
Colic

Up to one-fifth of all infants experience colic in the first few months of life. Colic is described as prolonged, inconsolable crying that appears to be related to stomach pain and discomfort. It often occurs between 6 p.m. and midnight, and sometimes causes infants to pull up their legs in pain. Colic usually develops between 2 to 4 weeks of age and may continue until the infant is 3 to 4 months old. Formula-fed infants seem to experience colic more often than breastfed infants. Parents and caregivers should speak with their health care provider to rule out any serious medical condition the infant may have.

How to Help a Colicky Infant

Caring for a colicky infant can be stressful. The parent or caregiver not only is worried about the infant’s health, but also may be on edge because of the continual crying and fussiness. Parents and caregivers can take these steps to help soothe a colicky infant:

- **Breastfeeding.** You may find that some foods cause your infant’s stomach upset. You can try avoiding those foods to see if your infant feels better and ask his or her doctor for help.
- **Formula feeding.** Talk with parents and caregivers about proper formula preparation, safe storage and feeding, and how to formula feed.
- **Timing is important.** To avoid overfeeding, try to wait at least 2 to 2½ hours from the start of one feeding to the next.
- **Practice close contact.** Walk the infant close to the chest. The motion and body contact may be reassuring.
- **Seek soothing sounds.** Steady rhythmic motion and a calming sound may help the infant fall asleep. **NOTE:** Never place an infant on top of a washer or dryer.
- **Promote tummy time.** Lay the infant tummy-down across the knees and gently rub the infant’s back. The light pressure against the infant’s belly may bring comfort.
- **Try swaddling, or wrapping in a blanket.** If an infant is swaddled, it is essential to place the infant on his or her back. When it looks as if an infant is about to roll over, the infant should no longer be swaddled. **See Also:** Chapter 4, “Common Feeding Concerns,” pages 101–103.

- **Take a break.** When feeling tense and anxious because of the infant’s continual crying, have a trusted family member or friend look after the infant; then take a break, such as a nap or a walk outside the home. An hour or two away will help restore energy and a positive attitude.

**NOTE:** Parents and caregivers may become impatient or angry; advise them to keep calm, seek help, and treat their infant gently. Never shake an infant, as this can cause bodily harm. When feeling depressed, anxious, or stressed, parents and caregivers should consult their health care provider immediately.


**Refrain from introducing complementary foods until the infant is developmentally ready, around 6 months of age.**

Each infant’s bowel patterns are different. Parents and caregivers should become familiar with their normal bowel patterns, specifically, the usual size, consistency, and frequency of the stools. This will help determine when constipation occurs and how severe the problem is.

**NOTE:** A parent or caregiver should never give a laxative or other type of stool-softening medication without consulting the health care provider.61
**Viruses and Diarrhea**

Viruses such as norovirus and rotavirus are among the most frequent infectious causes of diarrhea. A person can contract each of them by coming in contact with someone who has the virus, by touching a surface where the virus is present, or from consuming contaminated food or water.

While norovirus affects all ages, rotavirus is most common in infants and children. These contagious viruses can cause gastroenteritis, or inflammation of the stomach and intestines. Symptoms include severe watery diarrhea, often with vomiting, fever, and abdominal pain. Infants and young children are most likely to get rotavirus disease. The resulting diarrhea, if untreated, can lead to severe dehydration and death.

In otherwise healthy infants, diarrhea is the second most common cause of hospitalizations, after respiratory issues. Diarrheal diseases account for one in nine child deaths worldwide, making diarrhea the second leading cause of death among children under the age of 5.

Rotavirus was the leading cause of severe diarrhea among infants and young children in the United States before the rotavirus vaccine was introduced in 2006.

The rotavirus vaccine is routinely given to infants starting at 2 months of age and is very effective at preventing diarrhea and subsequent dehydration caused by rotavirus.


---

**Diarrhea**

Diarrhea is defined as the frequent passage of loose, watery stools that can occur as often as 12 times a day. Diarrhea should not be confused with the normal stools of breastfed infants, which are soft but formed and can be passed after every feeding.63 Diarrhea should be referred to a health care provider for medical evaluation. Fasting does not modify the outcome or severity of the diarrhea; therefore, good nutrition and hydration should be continued thorough breastfeeding or usual bottle feeding.64

Diarrhea in infants can be caused by the following factors:65

- Improper infant formula preparation and storage techniques
- A reaction to a food
- Excessive juice consumption
- Use of certain medications, such as antibiotics
- Medical conditions such as lactose intolerance
- Infections such as viral rotavirus or norovirus, bacterial *Salmonella* or *Shigella*, and parasitic *Giardia*
- Malabsorption of food due to protein allergies, such as allergic gastroenteropathy
- Consuming contaminated food or water

**NOTE:** Proper formula preparation and storage are very important in ensuring that infant formula is not contaminated and a potential cause of diarrhea.66

> See also: Chapter 4, “Selection, Preparation, Storage, and Warming of Infant Formula,” pages 103-106.

---

**Immunization**67

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends that infants and children between birth and 6 years of age, should receive vaccines that will protect against major diseases including rotavirus (see “Viruses and Diarrhea,”

---

**Allergic gastroenteropathy:** Any disorder of the stomach and intestines caused by an allergic reaction, usually resulting in diarrhea.
Measuring Overweight and Obesity

The CDC recommends that health care providers use the World Health Organization’s charts to monitor weight-for-recumbent length for infants and children 0 to 2 years of age in the United States. Weight for length greater than the 95th percentile is termed overweight and should be monitored.69

See also: Chapter 1, “Anthropometric Data,” page 2.

Preventing Infant Overweight

The AAP states that early recognition of excessive weight gain in relation to linear growth is important for initiating early intervention. It advocates a dietary approach that encourages moderate consumption of healthful foods rather than overconsumption or restriction.70

Maternal risk factors during pregnancy and the first 2 years of life may be critical for the programming of obesity. Therefore, the following factors may play a part in the prevention or development of childhood overweight and obesity:

- **Pregnancy weight.** Excessive weight gain during pregnancy can increase an infant’s birth weight and so the risk of childhood obesity.71
- **Breastfeeding.** Multiple studies indicate a protective effect of breastfeeding against the later development of obesity; however, research is still ongoing. Longer duration of breastfeeding and later introduction of complementary foods, around 6 months of age, are associated with a decreased risk of becoming overweight.72
- **Rapid weight gain in infancy.** Rapid weight gain in the first 4 to 6 months of life is associated with a higher incidence of overweight and obesity in later childhood and adolescence.73 An infant whose weight-for-length is greater than the 95th percentile in the early months may not develop older infancy and obesity in childhood. Obesity can lead to many chronic medical conditions, including type 2 diabetes, heart disease, high blood pressure, and joint issues. In addition, obesity sets the stage for a lower quality of life, and possibly a shorter life span.68

Overweight and Obesity Prevention

Infants need a diet high in fat to support rapid growth. As a result, calorie restriction in order to reduce weight is not recommended for children under 2 years of age. However, infants need to balance their energy as well. Energy balance in infants occurs when the amount of energy taken in from food or drink and the energy being used by the body support natural growth without promoting excess weight gain.

If this energy balance is not maintained, infants can gain excess weight. Heavy infants can delay crawling and walking; also, this early weight gain lays the foundation for overweight concerns in opposite), polio, influenza, chickenpox, and more. Most of these diseases are spread from person to person through the air by coughing, sneezing, or simply breathing. Others enter the body through the mouth, through body fluids, or through breaks in the skin. Today vaccinations are vital not only for protecting individuals but also for keeping major diseases from spreading through schools and communities.

Immunization Is Important

Immunizing infants against certain diseases is one important way to help them stay healthy. Part of WIC’s mission is to be a partner with other services that are important to childhood and family well-being, such as immunizations. As an adjunct to services that provide immunizations, the WIC program’s role is to find out about an infant’s need for immunizations and share that information with parents and caregivers, including where to get an infant immunized. For more information about immunization, visit WWRS immunization training and guidance at https://wicworks.fns.usda.gov/resources/immunizations-education-materials-and-information-resources.

Immunization is Important

Immunizing infants against certain diseases is one important way to help them stay healthy. Part of WIC’s mission is to be a partner with other services that are important to childhood and family well-being, such as immunizations. As an adjunct to services that provide immunizations, the WIC program’s role is to find out about an infant’s need for immunizations and share that information with parents and caregivers, including where to get an infant immunized. For more information about immunization, visit WWRS immunization training and guidance at https://wicworks.fns.usda.gov/resources/immunizations-education-materials-and-information-resources.
into an overweight child, but if the infant does become an obese child, there is a good chance that he or she will remain obese as an adult.74

- **Parental or caregiver control.** In the first 2 years of a child’s life, parents and caregivers should be discouraged from showing too much concern and exerting too much control over monitoring and restricting food intake, or pressuring an infant to eat. Allowing an infant to respond to internal cues of hunger and satiety rather than to parental or caregiver pressure or restriction may make it less likely that the infant will become obese.75
  > See also Chapter 2, “Development of Infant Feeding Skills,” pages 33–43.

- **Dietary choices.** Research shows that between the ages of 6 and 24 months, as infants transition from breast- or formula feeding to complementary foods, the kind of transition they make is potentially important in avoiding long-term obesity. During these months, infants develop patterns of eating and food preferences. By the time they are 2 years old, these patterns have taken hold and likely will continue throughout life. When they eat mainly high-calorie foods of low nutrient density, infants and young children are displacing low-calorie foods of high nutrient density. In addition, they often consume greater quantities of the high-calorie foods.76 The following points can help parents and caregivers guide infants and young children to make healthy choices:77
  
  - **Promote healthy eating patterns by offering nutritious complementary foods, such as vegetables and fruits, whole grains, lean meats and fish, and legumes.**
  - **Develop healthy eating habits that can begin in infancy, such as minimizing or eliminating juice.**
  - **Choose the appropriate portion size, and offer a variety of foods according to the infant’s developmental stage.**
  - **Set appropriate limits on choices and model healthy food choices.**

  **NOTE:** Taste preferences can change over time, and an infant may try a new food several times before he or she enjoys it.

- **Media Use.** The AAP discourages television and other screen time for children younger than 2 years of age. Keep mealtimes media/screen-free: kids tend to eat more when watching TV or playing with computer games, and they are exposed to commercials that may lead to cravings for unhealthy foods.78
  > See also: Chapter 7, “Limiting TV and Digital Media,” page 186.

- **Physical Activity.** Encourage age-appropriate physical activity. > See also: Chapter 7, “Physical Activity in Infancy,” pages 177–186.

---

**WIC Helps Prevent Obesity**

The WIC program plays an important role in public health efforts to reduce the prevalence of obesity by actively identifying and enrolling infants and children who may be overweight or at risk of overweight in childhood and adolescence. When identifying this risk, it is important to communicate it in a way that is supportive and nonjudgmental, and with a careful choice of words to convey an empathetic attitude and to minimize embarrassment or harm to a parent or caregiver’s self-esteem, or to the self-esteem of a child old enough to understand.


---

**Sleeping Patterns and Safe Sleep Practices**

Healthy infant sleep patterns vary by age and individual and can often prove problematic to parents and caregivers. For new parents and caregivers, anticipating and recognizing new developments are a constant challenge. But understanding usual sleep patterns and knowing their infant’s pattern can help parents and caregivers develop realistic expectations about sleep stages and prevent frustration. An infant’s brain is constantly developing while adapting to the demands of a new environment. As the brain...
slowly matures, the waking infant can better cope with the stimulus load of a busy world. In addition, new parents and caregivers must be educated in safe infant sleep practices in order to prevent accidental death.79 This section reviews sleeping patterns and safe sleep practices.

Sleeping Patterns

Infants do not have regular sleep cycles until about 6 months of age. While newborns sleep for a total of about 16 to 17 hours per day, they may only sleep for 1 to 2 hours at a time. As infants get older, they need less sleep and are able to sleep for longer periods of time at night. All infants have different sleep needs.80 The AAP gives professional recommendations to parents and caregivers for introducing and reinforcing healthy sleep patterns during different stages of infant development:81

- **Newborn stage: Introduce.** During this stage, infants generally require 16 to 18 hours of sleep. They may prefer to be awake during the peaceful nighttime hours rather than the more hectic daytime ones. Parents or caregivers should slowly introduce gentle stimulation during the day to increase daytime wakefulness.

- **Two months: Reinforce.** Most infants are staying awake for longer daytime periods, but they may have difficulty transitioning to sleep. Some infants become overstimulated; in those cases, a brief period of understimulation may allow the infant to settle to sleep more easily. Most infants at this stage still require nighttime feeding, but it is important to learn an infant’s cues. Some infants may wake up hungry and give cues for feeding, while others may lightly fuss and then be able to soothe themselves back to sleep after a few minutes.

- **Four months: Reinforce.** Four months is often the age at which healthy infants begin sleeping longer stretches at night. However, some infants also start to develop separation anxiety at this stage. It is important to develop bedtime habits for the infant, such as bathing, brushing, reading, and implementing a routine time to get ready for and get into bed.82 Feeding infants in an effort to quiet their crying is not recommended, as it can lead to the infant expecting this response whenever he or she awakens during the night.

- **Six months through 9 months: Continue to reinforce.** If positive sleep behaviors are not reinforced by this time, the poor behaviors can become habits. Parents and caregivers should continue to reinforce nighttime rituals in a consistent and loving manner.83

Safe Sleep Practices

After the AAP’s recommendation in 1992 that all infants should be placed on their backs to sleep, deaths from sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS) declined more than 50 percent in the 1990s and early 2000s. However, after the initial decrease, the overall death rate attributable to sleep-related deaths has remained about the same in recent years. SIDS is still the leading cause of death for infants between 1 and 12 months of age, and it is most common among infants 1 to 4 months old. Other causes of sleep-related deaths, including suffocation, entrapment, and asphyxia, have increased.84
It is important for parents and caregivers to follow safe sleep practices to create a secure environment for their infants:

- Always place infants to sleep on their backs during naps and at bedtime.55
- Keep the infant from becoming overheated. Watch for sweating, damp hair, flushed cheeks, heat rash, or rapid breathing. Dress the infant lightly for sleep. Set the room temperature in a range that is comfortable for a lightly clothed adult.86
- Consider offering a pacifier at nap time and bedtime. Pacifiers should not be hung around the infant’s neck and they should not have cords or clips that might be a strangulation risk.87
  
  ➤ See also: Chapter 2, “Does the Infant Want to Eat or Suck?,” page 36.
- Place the crib in an area that is always smoke-free.
- The AAP recommends that the crib be placed in the parent or caregiver’s room, close to the adult bed, for at least the first 6 months and ideally for 1 year.
- Toys and other soft bedding, including fluffy blankets, comforters, pillows, stuffed animals, bumper pads, and wedges should not be placed in the crib with the infant. These items can impair the infant’s ability to breathe if they are close to his or her face.88
- Sleep clothing, such as sleepers, sleep sacks, and wearable blankets, are better alternatives to blankets.

**NOTE:** Never put an infant to sleep on adult beds, chairs, sofas, waterbeds, pillows, or cushions. When the infant awakens, he or she could easily roll off. Entrapment and suffocation are factors, too: an infant could wedge between the cushions, or be accidentally suffocated by another person sharing the surface.

---

**Bed Sharing**

Bed sharing is the practice of parents or caregivers and infants sleeping together on any surface, such as a bed, couch, or chair.

The AAP does not recommend any bed-sharing situations. There is a danger that infants can be smothered when bed sharing. The parent or caregiver can accidentally roll onto the infant, the parent or caregiver’s movement may cause the infant to roll face down, or the infant can become entangled in the bedding.

“SIDS and Other Sleep-Related Infant Deaths: Updated 2016 Recommendations for a Safe Infant Sleeping Environment,” released in 2016 by the AAP Task Force on Sudden Infant Death Syndrome, indicates that bed sharing remains the greatest risk factor for sleep-related infant deaths.

Endnotes


4. “Teething: 4 to 7 Months,” AAP.


14 Kleinman and Greer, *Pediatric Nutrition*, 1168.


25 Kleinman and Greer, *Pediatric Nutrition*, 255.


Kleinman and Greer, *Pediatric Nutrition*, 245.

Kleinman and Greer, *Pediatric Nutrition*, 400–401.


Kleinman and Greer, *Pediatric Nutrition*, 245, 252.


Kleinman and Greer, *Pediatric Nutrition*, 254.


Holt et al., *Bright Futures: Nutrition*, 217.

Kleinman and Greer, *Pediatric Nutrition*, 254.


Kleinman and Greer, *Pediatric Nutrition*, 252.


Shelov, *Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5*, 128–31; “Burping, Hiccups, and Spitting Up,” AAP.


53 Shelov, *Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5*, 130.

54 Shelov, *Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5*, 549–551.

55 “Infant Vomiting,” AAP.


61 “Constipation and Your Child,” AAP.


66 Shelov, *Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5*, 530–31.
Infant Nutrition and Feeding


69 Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 812.


73 Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 817; Oddy et al., “Early Infant Feeding and Adiposity Risk: From Infancy to Adulthood.”

74 Hoecker, “How Can I Tell If My Baby's Weight Is Cause for Concern?”


76 Daniels, Hassink, and the Committee on Nutrition, “The Role of the Pediatrician in Primary Prevention of Obesity,” e275–86; Kleinman and Greer, Pediatric Nutrition, 825.


79 Shelov, Caring For Your Baby and Young Child Birth To Age 5, 60–61.


PHYSICAL ACTIVITY IN INFANCY

Physical activity is important at any age. Infants and toddlers need physical activity in order to grow and develop properly, as well as to enhance overall health and maintain appropriate body weight. As infants develop neurologically, they also develop motor skills that allow them to reach, grab, grasp, roll over, and sit up. This development continues in the toddler stage as they learn to walk, run, jump, and climb.

Parents and caregivers should focus on the importance of physical activity in an infant’s life and appreciate how it relates to the development of gross motor skills and overall health.

As an infant matures, physical activity increases. In order for the infant to receive the optimal benefit from it and to be safe, parents and caregivers need to be aware of the stages of increasing activity from infancy through the toddler stage. An actual exercise routine should not begin until age 6. Before that time, parents and caregivers should encourage infants and young children to be naturally active throughout the day and to be guided by their natural curiosity and drive to be self-sufficient. Key recommendations for parents and caregivers are included in this chapter.

NOTE: Carefully handle infants, since they are still developing bones and muscles. When holding an infant, be careful to support the infant’s head and neck. Never shake an infant during play, in frustration, or to wake the infant up. Avoid rough play such as jiggling an infant on the knee or throwing the infant in the air. Vigorous movement can cause bleeding in the brain and even death.

Why Physical Activity Is Important

Physical activity must begin naturally in early infancy and continue throughout life. Parents and caregivers should begin supporting an infant’s active lifestyle as early as the infant’s second month of life. Early activity helps infants learn and reach important milestones, like sitting up and crawling. For instance, in 5-to-10-minute activity breaks throughout the day, the infant can lie on a play mat under suspended toys to practice kicking and reaching, or parents or caregivers can put a toy just out of reach so the infant stretches for it. During bath time, the infant can splash the water with hands and feet. Activity not only aids in overall health and the development of motor skills, but also sets the stage for an infant to develop social skills in later life.

Maintaining Weight

The role of early activity and motor skills development in preventing pediatric overweight is well established. However, overweight concerns have been growing among infants and toddlers: 8 percent of infants and toddlers from birth to 2 years of age are now considered overweight. Being overweight leads to delayed gross motor development as well as susceptibility to obesity at later stages of life. A retrospective study of medical charts reveals that increased BMI, or body mass index, as early as 2 weeks of age is associated with a significant

Physical activity: Any bodily movement produced by the contraction of skeletal muscles that increases energy expenditure to enhance health and maintain healthy body weight.
increased risk of an infant being overweight at ages 6, 12, 36, and 60 months. The weight of the mother has much to do with this. An infant is at risk of being overweight if the mother is overweight. Similar literature reports that being overweight at 6 to 18 months of age is a strong predictor of an infant’s tendency to be overweight in preschool. Additional research points out that an infant’s weight status predicts his or her BMI during adolescence and early adulthood. The earlier a child becomes overweight and the longer he or she maintains the excess weight, the greater is the child’s risk of obesity in adulthood. See also: Chapter 6, “Overweight and Obesity Prevention,” pages 165–166.

Physical activity is also vital for motor skills development, which will affect a child’s ability to perform sports and other exercise during childhood and adulthood.

### Ensuring Overall Health

Besides keeping weight in check, physical activity contributes to an infant’s overall healthy body development and ability to fight disease. Early in life, regular movement begins building an infant’s healthy heart, strong bones, and lean muscles. Because of the low risk and many potential benefits of exercise, the American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) recommends that parents and caregivers be models of physical activity and guide the development of an active lifestyle for infants and young children.

### Motor Skill Development

In early infancy, movement is controlled by involuntary reflexes, but as muscles develop, infants are gaining control of voluntary movements. During this period, key connections are made between the brain and muscles. This is the time when physical activity can become a natural part of an infant’s lifestyle. Parents and caregivers should make sure that an infant’s day has both planned and spontaneous times for active play and physical activity.

Active time can include floor play and supervised “tummy time”—the time an infant spends on his or her tummy stretching and looking around. Activity can also be worked into routine tasks such as diapering, bathing, dressing, pulling up to sit, rolling over, lifting arms overhead, pulling to stand, and helping to lift a foot for a sock. Games such as patty-cake, peekaboo, and “How big is the baby?” all encourage an infant to move.

It is important to remember that all infants usually acquire motor skills in the same order, but not every infant develops each skill at the same rate. Infant activity serves as the basis for skillful movement in later childhood and adulthood, when a variety of activities can include sports, dance, and other exercise.

Below are ways that early physical activity contributes to motor skill development:

- **It builds strong bones and muscles.** Studies have shown that physical activity helps build strong bones and muscles in children and adolescents. Any activity causes bones and muscle cells to reproduce, so starting an active routine in infancy sets the stage for this benefit.
- **It builds strength and endurance.** By building muscle, heart, and lung strength, activity gradually helps increase strength and endurance as an infant grows into childhood.
- **It builds awareness and reaction time.** As infants develop motor, visual, and mental skills through activity, they become more aware of the world around them and learn to reach accurately and quickly for objects.

Early motor skill confidence and competence leads to enjoyment of physical activity and may also contribute to participation in physical activity later in life.

### Social Benefits

Physical activity also aids in the development of social skills that continue to build throughout a lifetime. An active lifestyle started in infancy delivers the following benefits:

- **It encourages exploration of the bigger world.** Advancing from tummy time to sitting, to crawling, to standing and walking brings infants into contact with new surroundings they can explore. Increased manual dexterity allows infants to experience new textures, learn how to manipulate objects, and discover how things work.
■ It contributes to brain development. Research shows that when an infant is active at an early age, playing with blocks or interacting with a parent or caregiver, his or her brain is stimulated. Scientists have made connections between such early brain stimulation and increase in IQ and later academic achievement.22

■ It builds self-confidence and self-esteem. Developing physical skills and learning to voluntarily control their movements gives infants a sense of accomplishment.23

■ It fosters independence. Each new physical skill infants master helps them on the journey from being entirely dependent on the parents or caregivers to becoming independent individuals.24

■ It encourages infants to have fun! Infants enjoy unstructured (but supervised) solo playtime in addition to being engaged and active with a parent or caregiver.

➤ See also: “Make Moving Fun: Encourage a Playful Infant!,” pages 182–183. The National Association for Sport and Physical Education (NASPE) recommends that all children from infancy to 5 years of age should engage in physical activity.25

Parents and caregivers should understand the importance of physical activity and should promote movement skills by providing opportunities for structured and unstructured physical activity.

NOTE: While encouraging their infant to be active, parents and caregivers must be aware of motor skill developmental milestones to make sure activities are safe. For example, recognizing when an infant can hold his or her head erect and steady without support or when he or she can sit unsupported is key to keeping the infant safe during play.26 ➤ See also: Table 7.1, “Milestones and Development,” page 180.

Gross Motor Milestones in Infancy

The early years represent a period critical to promoting physical activity. However, because of a lack of research and evidence-based information, defining and measuring physical activity during infancy has been challenging. From infancy to preschool age, the types of movements that children make vary as they grow; however, the concept of physical activity as defined at the beginning of this chapter is still the same across all ages. Table 7.1 (see page 180) gives milestones for parents and caregivers to watch for as their growing infant increases physical activity and develops motor skills and social skills.

Physical Activity Guidelines for Infants

It is important that parents and caregivers continually reinforce physical activity with their infant. Parents and caregivers should not only allow infants to move as freely as possible in a safe and monitored environment, but also incorporate easy, fun, and stimulating activities into the infant’s daily routine.

Follow these basic guidelines to promote moving skills while keeping an infant moving safely:

■ Limit the time the infant spends in a stroller, crib, and other equipment that restricts movement.

■ Place the infant on a large blanket or rug in an area that encourages and stimulates movement experiences and active play for short periods of time each day. Be sure that the space is free of sharp or potentially free-falling objects and away from stairs. Never place an infant on an elevated surface such as a bed or sofa unless sitting within immediate reach. The infant could roll off and injure his or her head and neck.27

■ Make sure the infant’s area for movement is safe for performing large muscle activities and contains only safe objects. The space should be at least 5 x 7 feet. It should be out of the parent or caregiver’s walking path, away from shelving and objects that could fall, and away from rocking chairs and other potential hazards. Play items in the space should be lightweight for easy handling and grasping, contain no pieces that the infant can swallow, have no sharp points or edges, and be nontoxic.28

Solo playtime: When an infant plays alone in a safe environment with a parent or caregiver supervising nearby but not directly interacting. This should not include solo media use, such as allowing an infant to watch television.
### TABLE 7.1 – Milestones and Development

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Movement and physical development</th>
<th>Cognitive (learning, thinking, problem solving)</th>
<th>Language/communication</th>
<th>Social and emotional</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can hold head up and begins to push up when lying on tummy</td>
<td>Pays attention to faces</td>
<td>Coos, makes gurgling sounds</td>
<td>Begins to smile at people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 months</td>
<td>Makes smoother movements with arms and legs</td>
<td>Begins to follow things with eyes and recognize people at a distance</td>
<td>Turns head toward sounds</td>
<td>Can briefly calm himself or herself (may bring hands to mouth and suck on hand)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Begins to act bored (cries, fussy) if activity doesn’t change</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tries to look at parent or caregiver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pays attention to faces</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 months</td>
<td>Holds head steady, unsupported</td>
<td>Lets the parent or caregiver know if she or he is happy or sad</td>
<td>Begins to babble</td>
<td>Smiles spontaneously, especially at people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pushes down on legs when feet are on a hard surface</td>
<td>Responds to affection</td>
<td>Babbles with expression and copies sounds he hears</td>
<td>Likes to play with people and might cry when playing stops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>May be able to roll over from tummy to back</td>
<td>Reaches for toy with one hand</td>
<td>Cries in different ways to show hunger, pain, or being tired</td>
<td>Copies some movements and facial expressions, like smiling or frowning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can hold a toy and shake it and swing at dangling toys</td>
<td>Uses hands and eyes together, such as seeing a toy and reaching for it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brings hands to mouth</td>
<td>Follows moving things with eyes from side to side</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When lying on stomach, pushes up to elbows</td>
<td>Watches faces closely</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Recognizes familiar people and things at a distance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 months</td>
<td>Rolls over in both directions (front to back, back to front)</td>
<td>Looks around at things nearby</td>
<td>Responds to sounds by making sounds</td>
<td>Knows familiar faces and begins to know if someone is a stranger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Begins to sit without support</td>
<td>Brings things to mouth</td>
<td>Strings vowels together when babbling (“ah,” “eh,” “oh”) and likes taking turns with parent or caregiver while making sounds</td>
<td>Likes to play with others, especially parents and caregivers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When standing, supports weight on legs and might bounce</td>
<td>Shows curiosity about things and tries to get things that are out of reach</td>
<td>Responds to own name</td>
<td>Responds to other people’s emotions and often seems happy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rocks back and forth, sometimes crawling backward before moving forward</td>
<td>Begins to pass things from one hand to the other</td>
<td>Makes sounds to show joy and displeasure</td>
<td>Likes to look at self in a mirror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 months</td>
<td>Stands, holding on</td>
<td>Watches the path of something as it falls</td>
<td>Understands “no”</td>
<td>May be afraid of strangers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can get into sitting position</td>
<td>Looks for things he or she sees the parent or caregiver hide</td>
<td>Makes a lot of different sounds like “mamamama” and “babababababa”</td>
<td>May be clingy with familiar adults</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sits without support</td>
<td>Plays peekaboo</td>
<td>Copies sounds and gestures of others</td>
<td>Has favorite toys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pulls to stand</td>
<td>Puts things in his or her mouth</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Crawls</td>
<td>Moves things smoothly from one hand to the other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Picks up things like cereal O’s between thumb and index finger</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Any activity should promote the development of movement skills. These can include lifting the head and neck to observe new surroundings; using hands and fingers to explore objects; and rolling over, sitting, crawling, and standing to increase strength in the arms and legs that will lead to walking.

Allow for tummy time so that the infant can build shoulder and neck strength; this also puts the infant in the right position to practice crawling. Do not leave the infant alone during tummy time. See also: “Make Moving Fun: Encourage a Playful Infant!,” pages 182–183.

Encourage walking by allowing the infant to cruise along the furniture, holding the infant’s hands while he or she practices (be sure to remove or pad sharp-edged furniture); or encourage the infant to use a sturdy walking toy other than a walker, or wagon.

Supervise the infant during crawling or walking, and make sure stairs are off-limits with a gate or other safety blockade.

Interact with the infant to keep up his or her interest in moving as often as possible.

NOTE: In any regular movement or directed activity, safety is always crucial!

Play Positions
It is important for every parent or caregiver to know the positions that best promote safety when an infant is playing actively and to provide walled safety zones for infants as they learn to sit, crawl, or walk. The AAP’s recommendation is: “back to sleep and tummy to play.” Parents and caregivers should remember this at all times. See also: Chapter 6, “Sleeping Patterns and Safe Sleep Practices,” pages 166–168.

Tummy to Play
During waking hours, infants need supervised tummy time (lying on their stomach) to strengthen their head, neck, and upper body muscles. Tummy time helps to build the strength, coordination, and flexibility needed for rolling over, crawling, reaching, and playing. Remember, tummy time should occur when the infant is awake, alert, and supervised.

NOTE: Parents and caregivers should consult their health care provider regarding the appropriate age to place an infant on his or her stomach.

Other safe awake play positions may include the following:

- **Back activities.** Back-lying does not have to be reserved for sleep time only. The back is a good position for allowing the infant to stretch, for interacting with the infant, and encouraging the infant’s focus and reaction time. A play mat with toys suspended above the infant allows for the opportunity to kick and reach. This makes the infant stronger and teaches cause and effect. Talk to the infant about the pretty colors of the toys and point to each one. Smile and give words of encouragement as the infant focuses on the toys. Then hold an object such as a rattle just out of reach and have the infant move his or her arms to reach it. Give continuous words of encouragement, and then move the object into the infant’s grasp; be sure to praise the infant for the effort.

- **Side-lying with support.** The AAP promotes side-lying as an excellent alternative to tummy time and back-lying if an infant shows discomfort or unease while lying on the stomach or back. Place the infant on a blanket on one side. For support, prop the infant’s back against a rolled-up towel and place a small, folded washcloth beneath the infant’s head. Make sure that both arms are out in front of the infant, and then bring the infant’s legs forward at the hips and bend the knees for comfort.

- **Alternating lying positions.** It is best to set up a regular time for tummy time, back time, and side-lying, such as after naps, baths, or diaper changes. Change the infant’s position every 10 to 15 minutes during playtime. Move the infant from tummy time to side-lying time to back time to arms or lap time. Whatever the position, don’t forget to distract the infant with a fun toy or to read an entertaining book or sing songs.

- **Arm and lap positions.** Strive to expose the infant to a variety of all the positions throughout the day, including time spent in a parent or caregiver’s arms and on his or her lap. Remember, infants crave emotional interaction and connection with their parents or caregivers.
Make Moving Fun: Encourage a Playful Infant!

Exercise helps motivate infants to move, explore, become aware, and advance toward self-sufficiency. Parents and caregivers should create a safe play space for an infant to stretch, roll, and try new skill-building activities like the following:

- **Up and down positions.** This can happen with stand-and-sit games. Starting when the infant is around age 3 or 4 months, help the infant stand and sit over and over again until he or she is tired. This can be a fun bonding time.

- **New environments.** Interact with the infant in daily physical activities that are dedicated to exploring movement and the environment. Introduce the infant to new places—in the house and outside world. Move infants from one position or place to another and introduce new toys and activities, and place the infant on a different colored towel or rug. The infant can be moved across the room or to another room. When carrying the infant around the house, especially while doing chores, the infant should be strapped in an infant carrier. Otherwise the infant can arch his or her back and flip out of a parent or caregiver’s arms. Even a small change creates an entirely new environment and experience. Be sure to stay close and watch the infant at all times.

- **Play peekaboo.** Hide behind hands or a blanket and pop out at intervals; infants love anticipating the surprise. This builds reaction time and supports growing motor skills.

- **Lay the infant on his or her back.** While playing or singing happy music, rotate or pump the infant’s legs as if riding a bicycle or dancing. Then try other “dance” moves with their arms, like rotating them or pumping them gently backward and forward. Sometimes infants will fuss at first. But try activities each day; gradually, infants become more comfortable with the positions and activities and can do them for longer periods of time.
**Tummy time.** Place the infant on a large blanket or rug on the floor. Make eye contact. Smile. Encourage infants to keep their head up and to move their arms.

**Sing or play.** Use happy, age-appropriate songs and give the infant a rattle to shake or a pan to beat along with the rhythm. Try marching songs or anything with a rhythmic beat.

**Let infants roll, creep, crawl, or sit.** These and other activities will help develop large muscles. Place an object so some effort is required to touch it. Or roll a ball toward them so they can reach out to grab it.

**Offer a variety of age-appropriate toys.** These should stimulate the senses and can include toys that make sounds and those with varied textures and colors. Rattles, large blocks, bubbles, balls, pans, wooden spoons, small boxes, and small stuffed animals are great examples.

**Help the infant push up onto hands and knees.** Then put a favorite toy out of reach and encourage the infant to move toward it.
Common Concerns With Walkers and Infant Equipment

Infant walkers are associated with thousands of injuries or deaths each year, most often as a result of an infant falling down stairs in a walker. The AAP has recommended a ban on the manufacture and use of infant walkers with wheels due to the associated high injury risk.34

Some of the possible dangers include the following:

- **Rolling down the stairs.** This is the most common accident associated with infant walkers, and it can result in broken bones and severe head injuries.
- **Getting burned.** An infant can reach higher in a walker, so he or she could pull a tablecloth off a table, causing any hot coffee or soup vessels on the table to fall; grab pot handles off the stove; or push fingers or toes into radiators, fireplaces, or space heaters.
- **Drowning.** An infant can fall into a pool or bathtub while in a walker.
- **Accidental poisoning.** Medicines and cleaning fluids on a shelf are easier for an infant to reach in a walker.

Most walker injuries happen while adults are watching. An infant in a walker can move more than 3 feet in 1 second, and parents or caregivers simply cannot respond quickly enough.35

**NOTE:** Parents and caregivers should be encouraged never to use baby walkers and to make sure that there are no walkers wherever the infant is being cared for, whether in a home or day care center.

Instead of walkers, stationary activity centers may be used. These look like walkers but have no wheels. They usually have seats that rotate, tilt, and bounce, allowing the infant to use and develop large muscles. However, they must not be used all the time as a substitute for natural tummy time, crawling, and other floor movement.

In addition to the danger of using a walker, the misuse of other infant equipment, including infant seats, high chairs, swings, bouncers, exersaucers, and similar objects, has been associated with significant delays in an infant’s motor skill development.36

Older infants may enjoy sitting up in a high chair and playing with toys on the tray. They can be in the middle of family activity and interact with their surroundings, building response time and social skills. Be sure to keep them secured in their seat at all times and to use the high chair appropriately, mainly at mealtimes. It should not be used as a substitute for natural physical activity.37

Parents and caregivers should be encouraged to limit the use of infant equipment and to focus on guiding their infant to be active by crawling, walking, and otherwise playing naturally in a safe environment.

**Media Use and Inactivity**38

Electronic media in all forms, including TV, computers, and smartphones, can affect how infants feel, learn, think, and behave, especially as they grow older. In addition, media activities do not promote physical activity. Examples of media activities are watching television and videos, playing computer or video games, or any other screen-based activities.
The problem lies not only with what infants and toddlers are doing while they are watching TV, but also with what they are not doing. Specifically, infants are programmed to learn from interacting with other people, not screens. The earlier they can begin healthy person-to-person interaction as opposed to media interaction, the better. The AAP realizes that media exposure is a reality for many families in today’s society. However, the benefits to infants and toddlers are shown to be limited, and inappropriate use can be harmful. If parents and caregivers choose to engage their infants with electronic media, they are encouraged to wait until the infant is at least 18 to 24 months old.

Limiting TV and Digital Media

The AAP discourages all infants and young children under 24 months of age from watching television and otherwise viewing screens such as computers, tablets, and cell phones, unless the viewing is for video chatting. Once parents or caregivers do allow the use of TV and digital media, such as digital books, computer games, and live video chatting, the AAP recommends that it be a shared experience. That way, the parent or caregiver can monitor the viewing time and help the infant or child understand how the media message relates to the surrounding world.

According to the AAP, “for children younger than 2 years, evidence for benefits of [digital] media is still limited, adult interaction with the child during media use is crucial, and there continues to be evidence of harm from excessive digital media use.” The AAP recommends the following usage guidelines:

- Avoid digital media use (except video chatting) in infants and children younger than 24 months.
- If digital media is introduced to this age group, choose high-quality programming, such as educational TV programs, and use media together with the infant or young child.
- Do not feel pressured to introduce digital media to infants; later, older children will learn to use it quickly because the interfaces are so intuitive.
- Screen-watching habits formed in infancy promote sedentary and solitary habits in later childhood. By limiting digital media, parents and caregivers help open the space for more interactive activities, such as talking, playing, singing, and reading together, which encourage proper brain development. Such activities also set the stage for healthier eating patterns that help an infant avoid obesity as a child. By being more active, older children are not only burning calories but also focusing on ideas and other people rather than on food.

- During mealtimes, the distraction of media promotes faster eating and consumption of higher volumes of food. In addition, television commercials promote unhealthy snacks and desserts. Meals without media competition promote a calm family environment and conversation that leads to relaxed eating and an infant’s increased recognition of satiety cues.
- While digital media should be nonexistent or limited for infants and young children up to 2 years of age, the presence of a television set in a bedroom is discouraged for infants and children of any age group.

For more about children and media use, consult the American Academy of Pediatrics Family Media Use Plan at https://www.healthychildren.org/English/media/Pages/default.aspx.

old and then have concrete strategies for managing screen time.

In order for an infant to develop a healthy, active lifestyle, parents and caregivers should be aware of the following AAP research:

- For every hour that a child younger than 2 years old watches television alone, she or he spends an additional 52 minutes less time per day interacting with a parent, caregiver, or sibling.
- For every hour of television, there is 9 percent less time on weekdays and 11 percent less time on weekends spent in creative play for a child younger than 2 years of age.40
- Television viewing is associated with irregular sleep schedules, which have adverse effects on mood, behavior, and learning.41
- Unstructured playtime is more valuable for the developing brain than any electronic media exposure. Even for infants as young as 4 months of age, solo play, with the parent or caregiver nearby, allows an infant to think creatively, problem solve, and accomplish tasks with minimal parent or caregiver interaction. An infant learns more from playing with soft, appropriate toys in a safe, designated play area while a parent or caregiver cooks dinner than he or she does from watching a screen for the same amount of time, because of the eye contact and interaction.
- Just having the TV on in the background, even if “no one is watching it,” is enough to delay language development. When a parent or caregiver focuses attention on an active infant or toddler, the parent or caregiver exposes the child to new words, but with the television on, the parent or caregiver is distracted and there is less interaction with the infant. Fewer words means less learning.
- Toddlers are also learning to pay attention for prolonged periods, and toddlers who watch more TV are more likely to have problems paying attention by age 7. Video programming is constantly changing, constantly interesting, and almost never forces a child to deal with tedious content.42

Therefore, in the 2016 policy statement “Media and Young Minds,” the AAP reaffirmed its recommendation to discourage media use in infancy and early childhood and the use of television intended for adults when a young child is present.

Although infant/toddler programming might be entertaining, it should not be marketed as or presumed by parents and caregivers to be educational. No longitudinal study has determined the long-term effects of media use on infants and children younger than 2 years of age, and the AAP supports research to understand the consequences of early electronic media exposure.

Swimming Programs

Exercise and swimming programs designed for infants and toddlers are popular. However, these programs are not necessary for the development of motor skills in infancy.

Swimming programs may be a concern for risk of drowning if a false sense of security around water is fostered. The AAP does not recommend formal swim programs for infants under the age of 1 year. Additional concerns include the risk of gastrointestinal tract infections, dermatitis, and acute respiratory illness that can result from the exposure to infectious agents and pool chemicals.

NOTE: Infants should not take part in swimming programs until at least 1 year of age. Always consult a health care provider before entering an infant in a swimming program.

Endnotes


12 Holt et al., *Bright Futures: Nutrition*, 3.


16 Holt et al., Bright Futures: Nutrition, 3; Daniels, Hassink, and the Committee on Nutrition, “The Role of the Pediatrician in Primary Prevention of Obesity,” e275–92.


20 Holt et al., Bright Futures: Nutrition, 3; Daniels, Hassink, and the Committee on Nutrition, “The Role of the Pediatrician in Primary Prevention of Obesity,” e275–92.

21 Shelov, Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5, 205–6, 229–32, 266–67.

22 SHAPE America, Active Start: A Statement of Physical Activity Guidelines for Children from Birth to Age 5, 30.


24 Shelov, Caring for Your Baby and Young Child: Birth to Age 5, 205–6, 229–32, 266–67.

25 SHAPE America, Active Start: A Statement of Physical Activity Guidelines for Children from Birth to Age 5, 1–5.

26 SHAPE America, Active Start: A Statement of Physical Activity Guidelines for Children from Birth to Age 5, 3, 29–30.


28 SHAPE America, Active Start: A Statement of Physical Activity Guidelines for Children from Birth to Age 5, 3.

29 Hagan, Shaw, and Duncan, Bright Futures: Guidelines for Health Supervision of Infants, Children, and Adolescents, 148–49.


35 “Baby Walkers: A Dangerous Choice,” AAP.


42 Hill, “Why to Avoid TV for Infants and Toddlers.”
CHAPTER 8

FOOD SAFETY

Selecting and preparing foods for infant consumption to ensure optimal nutrition and safety for an infant is key for parents and caregivers. Because infants have immature immune systems, they are particularly sensitive to disease-producing microorganisms and toxins that may contaminate food. Therefore, it is important to clean anything that might come into contact with food—hands, surfaces, utensils, cutting boards, and other equipment—before starting preparation of either home-prepared or commercially packaged infant foods. This chapter reviews the importance of safe food preparation and storage, and it warns of the potential contaminants that can harm an infant.

Improperly prepared foods can develop bacteria, causing vomiting and diarrhea in an infant, which can lead to dehydration, electrolyte imbalance, and even other, more serious medical complications. For instance, infections by *E. coli* bacteria (see page 201) are the main cause of kidney failure in infants and children. Therefore, parents and caregivers should always use clean water from a safe source to thoroughly wash their hands, rinse produce, clean equipment and preparation spaces, and prepare and cook food. This includes mixing concentrated or powdered infant formulas and rinsing or boiling and blanching vegetables and fruits. Other safe food preparation includes following proper cooking times and cutting or mashing foods to the ideal size, shape, and consistency for an infant to consume based on his or her developmental abilities. *See also: Chapter 5, “Preparing Infant Foods for Consistency, Size, and Shape,” pages 133–135.*

### Clean Hands and Kitchens

**Keep Infants Well**

Dirty hands spread illness. To prevent sharing bacteria, viruses, and other contaminants with an infant, parents and caregivers must carefully wash their hands before touching an infant, preparing food, or feeding.

**When to Wash Hands**

Parents and caregivers should wash their hands often throughout the day, before and after they touch an infant and his or her toys, cloths, and equipment. The following situations are absolute times for handwashing:

- Before, during, and after food preparation
- Before eating food
- Before and after caring for someone who is sick
- Before and after treating a cut or wound
- After using the toilet and restrooms
- After changing diapers or cleaning up a child who has used the toilet
- After nose blowing, coughing, or sneezing
- After touching pets such as dogs, cats, turtles, birds, snakes, and lizards, animal feed, or animal waste
- After handling pet food or pet treats
- After touching garbage

---

\*This chapter reviews:

- Clean hands and kitchens for infant safety
  - Washing hands
  - Keeping kitchens clean
- Preparing and storing human milk and infant formula safely
- Preparing and storing home-prepared and commercial foods safely
- Water and food contaminants
  - A safe water supply
  - Water system contaminants
  - Well water contaminants
  - Use of bottled water
  - Home water treatments
  - Parasitic, bacterial, and viral contaminants
  - Other contaminants (heavy metals, minerals)

---
Other contaminant-rich sources:  
- Raw meat, poultry, seafood, and eggs  
- Farm animals such as chickens, cows, horses, goats, sheep, and pigs  
- Soil  
- Surfaces such as countertops, faucet handles, and doorknobs

**How to Wash Hands**

- Wet hands with clean, running water, either warm or cold; turn off the tap; and apply soap.  
- Lather hands by rubbing them together with the soap. Be sure to lather the backs of hands, between fingers, and under fingernails.  
- Scrub hands for at least 20 seconds.  
- Rinse hands well under clean, running water.  
- Dry hands using a clean towel, or air-dry them.

As children grow, teach them when and how to wash their hands.

**Keeping Kitchens Clean**

Illness-causing bacteria can survive not just on hands but also in many places around the kitchen, including on utensils, equipment, countertops, and cutting boards. Therefore, just as parents and caregivers need to wash their hands the right way to prevent the spread of bacteria to food, so too do they need to clean kitchen equipment, utensils, and surfaces.¹

To prevent the spread of bacteria in the kitchen, parents and caregivers should take the following steps:

- Use paper towels or clean cloths to wipe up kitchen surfaces and any additional spills. It is important to wash dirty cloths frequently in the hot cycle of the washing machine.  
- Wash all cutting boards, dishes, blenders, food processors, utensils, and countertops with hot, soapy water between preparing each food item.  
- To ensure the cleanest kitchen possible, use a solution of 1 tablespoon of unscented, liquid chlorine bleach in 1 gallon of water to sanitize surfaces, equipment, cutting boards, and utensils that have already been washed.

**Hand Sanitizers**

Washing hands with soap and water is the best way to reduce the number of germs on them in most situations. If soap and water are not available, use an alcohol-based hand sanitizer that contains at least 60 percent alcohol. Alcohol-based hand sanitizers can quickly reduce the number of germs on hands in some situations, but sanitizers do not eliminate all types of germs and might not remove harmful chemicals. Follow these steps to use hand sanitizers as effectively as possible:

- Follow instructions on the label to apply the correct amount of product to the palm of one hand.  
- Rub the hands together.  
- Rub the product over all the surfaces of the hands and fingers until they are dry.


**Safely Preparing and Storing Human Milk and Infant Formula**

Proper food safety procedures are essential when expressing, handling, and storing human milk and formula. Unsafe practices can result in bacterial growth in the liquids and resulting illness for the infant. In addition, cleanliness during preparation is key: parents and caregivers must keep bottles, nipples, and other utensils clean and sanitary. They should be sure preparation takes place in a clean environment away from pets and family members with colds or other contagious illnesses. To keep both the liquid and environment clean and safe, parents and caregivers should follow the handling tips in this section.⁶
Human Milk
When expressing or otherwise handling human milk, parents and caregivers should take the following precautions:

- Wash hands thoroughly before expressing or handling human milk.
- Collect human milk in clean containers.
- Label and date the containers.
- Store freshly expressed human milk at room temperature for up to 4 hours. Containers should be covered and kept as cool as possible.
- Refrigerate human milk for up to 4 days.
- Freeze human milk for up to 6 months.
- Thaw human milk in the refrigerator or by swirling it in a bowl of warm water.
- Avoid using a microwave oven to thaw or warm the milk; it can destroy the nutrient quality of the milk and also create hot spots in the liquid that can burn an infant’s mouth.
- Do not refreeze thawed human milk; discard thawed human milk if it is not consumed within 24 hours.
- Discard human milk left in the bottle within 1 to 2 hours after the infant has finished feeding. ► See also: Chapter 3, “Human Milk Storage,” pages 65–66.

NOTE: The above storage guidelines are for healthy, full-term infants. Storage times and temperatures may vary for premature or sick infants. Parents and caregivers of these infants should check with their health care provider.

Infant Formula
Formula is a perishable food and therefore must be prepared, handled, and stored properly and in a sanitary manner for consumption. Follow these steps:9

- Advise parents and caregivers to always wash their hands before preparing formula, handling bottles, or feeding.
- Emphasize that water used for preparing formula must be from a safe source. The local health department can help determine if a parent or caregiver’s tap water is safe for preparing formula.
- Refer parents and caregivers with questions regarding the use of local drinking water, well water, or bottled water for formula preparation to their health care provider.
- Instruct parents and caregivers to follow the directions on the formula labels for proper formula preparation and use, or to follow those given by their health care provider.
- Discard formula that has been left out for more than 2 hours after opening or preparing it.
- Follow guidelines on the formula label for safe storage. ► See also: Chapter 4, “Storing Infant Formula,” pages 105–106.

Preparing and Storing Home-Prepared and Commercial Foods Safely
Infants are more susceptible to harmful effects from contaminated food than are older children or adults. Parents and caregivers must buy or prepare and store complementary foods properly to ensure optimal safety for their infants. This includes protecting an infant from choking by feeding them only foods that are ideal in consistency, size, and shape. ► See also: Chapter 5, “Choking Prevention,” pages 120–124; and “Preparing Infant Foods for Consistency, Size, and Shape,” pages 133–135.

Parents and caregivers should follow these general guidelines:10

- Never feed infants raw or partially cooked meat, poultry, fish, or eggs. These can contain harmful bacteria, parasites, or viruses that could cause serious food poisoning. ► See also: Chapter 5, “Never Feed Infants Partially Cooked or Raw Animal Foods,” page 137.
- Ensure that food is appropriate in texture.
- Cook foods using methods that conserve nutrients.
- Prepare foods without adding unnecessary ingredients, such as sugar and salt.
- Because harmful bacteria from an infant’s mouth can be introduced during feeding, don’t put a bottle or used infant food back in the refrigerator if the infant doesn’t finish it. ► See also: “Home-Prepared Food,” page 194.
Botulism is generally not fatal, but it is a serious foodborne illness for infants. 

Grain Products

Grains for infant consumption should be prepared and stored using the following guidelines:

- Store refrigerated foods in covered containers or sealed storage bags. Store eggs in their carton in the main part of the refrigerator, not on the door where the temperature is warmer.
- Don’t leave infant food, solid or liquids, out at room temperature for more than 2 hours.

Home-Prepared Food

Parents and caregivers must be diligent when preparing and storing infant food made in the home by following the steps below.

- Wash hands, utensils, equipment such as a food processor or blender, and work surfaces before preparing any food. Use soap and warm or cold, running water, and then rinse thoroughly with warm or cold, running water. 
- Ensure that separate cutting boards are used for animal foods such as meat, poultry, and fish, and nonanimal foods such as vegetables, fruits, and breads.
- Use fresh foods. Making infant foods from leftovers is not recommended.
- Serve foods immediately, or refrigerate and use them within 1 to 2 days; use strained meats and eggs within 1 day.
- If preparing infant food in large batches, freeze the food immediately in individual portions and use it within 3 to 8 months depending on the kind of food.
- Thaw frozen foods in the refrigerator or under cold, running water.
- Refreezing home-prepared infant food is not recommended.
- Do not feed infants complementary foods before the recommended age of about 6 months, unless the health care provider has been consulted and has said that the infant is developmentally ready.
- Never give honey to infants under 1 year of age. Honey can sometimes be contaminated with Clostridium botulinum spores, which can cause botulism in infants. Botulism is generally not fatal, but it is a serious foodborne illness for infants.
  ➤ See also: Chapter 5, “Honey,” page 135.

Protein-Rich Foods

The preparation of protein-rich foods such as meat, poultry, eggs, fish, legumes, and tofu requires following different safety guidelines depending on the kind of food. Find tips for each kind below.

Meat, Poultry, and Fish

Meat, poultry, and fish are good protein sources for infants, but they require extra care during preparation. Parents and caregivers should follow these guidelines:
Once purchased and unpacked at home, meat, poultry, and seafood should be refrigerated immediately unless they are about to be prepared.

Keep meat, poultry, seafood, and eggs separate from all other foods in the refrigerator. Bacteria can spread inside the refrigerator if the juices of raw meat, poultry, seafood, and eggs drip onto ready-to-eat foods.

Use separate cutting boards and plates for produce and for meat, poultry, seafood, and eggs; to avoid spreading bacteria, keep ready-to-eat food away from surfaces that held raw meat, poultry, seafood, or eggs.

Remove the fat, skin, and bones from meat, poultry, and fish before cooking. Take particular care to remove all the bones, including small ones, from fish. It is more difficult to find all the bones after cooking, and bacteria from a person’s hands are destroyed by heat if the bones are removed before cooking. After cooking, additional tough, inedible parts and remaining visible fat can be removed.

The USDA recommends these ways to cook meat, poultry, and fish: broiling, baking or roasting, panbroiling, braising, pot roasting, stewing, and poaching (for fish).

Do not cook food in an oven set at a temperature below 325 degrees Fahrenheit because low temperatures may not heat the food enough to kill bacteria.

Cook meat, poultry, and fish thoroughly to kill any bacteria that might be present in the food and to improve the digestibility of the protein. Color is not a reliable indicator of the food being fully cooked. Always use a food thermometer to ensure that food is fully and safely cooked to the right internal temperatures. > See also: Chapter 5, “Never Feed Infants Partially Cooked or Raw Animal Foods,” page 137, and “Is It Done Yet?,” this page.

After cooking the deboned meat, poultry, or fish, cut it into small pieces and puree it to the desired consistency. Warm meat is easier to blend than cold meat; chicken, turkey, lamb, and fish are the easiest to puree. Also, meat is easier to puree in a blender or food processor in small quantities.
- Make sure to clean the blender or food processor thoroughly before using it to make infant food.
- As an infant’s feeding skills mature, meat, poultry, fish, and legumes can be served ground or finely chopped instead of pureed.
- Store prepared items in the refrigerator, in covered containers. Do not crowd the refrigerator so tightly that air cannot circulate.

**Eggs and Egg-Rich Foods**

Eggs and egg-rich foods are an excellent source of protein for an infant as long as parents and caregivers take care to prepare and store the foods properly: 17

- Buy eggs with clean, noncracked shells. All eggs must be federally inspected and should be carefully handled and properly refrigerated. Do not buy unrefrigerated eggs.
- Refrigerate eggs in their carton in the main section of the refrigerator, not on the door where the temperature is warmer.
- Use eggs within 3 weeks of buying for best quality. Hard-cooked eggs may be eaten for up to 1 week if they have been properly refrigerated.
- Cook eggs thoroughly to kill possible bacteria. Boil eggs until the yolk is firm and not runny. The long-standing practice had been to feed infants only the yolk part, mashing it with some liquid, such as water or infant formula, to the desired consistency. This was due to the risk of an allergic reaction or intolerance to egg whites. However, the AAP now supports the policy that infants may consume egg whites or other potential allergens after 6 months of age, as this may help keep them from developing an allergic reaction in the future. Such foods should be avoided if they do cause an allergic reaction.18
- Egg dishes should be cooked to the right temperature. See also: “Is It Done Yet?,” page 195.
- Refrigerate eggs or egg-rich foods immediately after cooking, or keep them hot. Discard eggs or egg-rich foods if kept out of the refrigerator for more than 2 hours, including serving time.
- Do not feed infants raw or partially cooked eggs or foods that contain them, such as homemade ice cream, mayonnaise, or eggnog.

**Legumes (Beans and Peas) and Tofu**

Legumes offer a protein alternative to meat, fish, and eggs. Parents and caregivers should follow these guidelines in choosing and preparing them: 19

- Home-prepared dried beans or peas are more economical and lower in sodium than canned beans. Instructions for cooking dried beans and peas can be found on the package label and in many basic cookbooks.
- If canned or frozen beans are used, ensure that the cans are dent- and rust-free before purchase, and drain the salty water and rinse the beans with clean water before using. See also: “Commercial Infant Foods,” next page.
- Once legumes are cooked until soft, sieve them to remove skins, and then cool and mash them using a strainer and fork. Tofu (bean curd) can be mashed before feeding to infants.
- Store prepared legumes in a covered container in the refrigerator.

**Vegetables and Fruits**

Select, store, and prepare vegetables and fruits using the following guidelines: 20

**Selecting**

- If canned or frozen products are used, those without added salt or syrup and packed in their own juice are preferable. See also: “Commercial Infant Foods,” next page. Select high-quality fresh vegetables and fruits. Avoid ones that are bruised or damaged. If the foods are pre-cut, bagged, or packaged, choose only those items that are refrigerated or surrounded by ice.

**Storing**

- Store perishable fresh fruits and vegetables in a clean refrigerator. Be sure to store bagged vegetables not requiring refrigeration, such as potatoes and onions, in a cool, dry place.

**Preparing**

- Cut away bruised or damaged areas of fruits and vegetables before eating or preparing. Remove pits, seeds, and inedible peels and other parts.
- Wash fresh vegetables and fruits with clean water to remove dirt. Even if the skin will not be eaten, it is still important to wash the produce first so
dirt and bacteria are not transferred from the surface when peeling or cutting produce.

- Do not use soap, detergent, bleach, or commercial produce washes on fruits and vegetables.
- Dry produce with a cloth or paper towel after washing to further reduce bacteria on the surface of produce.
- When cooking is needed, cook the vegetables or fruits in a covered saucepan on a stove. Either boil the food with a small amount of water or steam it until it is just tender enough to be pureed or mashed. A microwave oven can also be used to initially cook these foods. Avoid excessive cooking of vegetables and fruits in order to limit the destruction of vitamins.
- After cooking is finished, the food should be allowed to cool slightly.
- Then the food can be pureed or mashed with liquid, such as human milk or formula, until it reaches the desired smoothness.
- Store prepared vegetables and fruits in a covered container in the refrigerator.
- Previously prepared vegetables and fruits can be reheated on the stove or in a microwave oven before serving. If a microwave oven is used, the food should be allowed to sit for a few minutes, stirred thoroughly, and tested by the parent or caregiver for temperature before giving it to the infant.

**Commercial Infant Foods**

Parents and caregivers cannot assume that ready-to-eat infant foods are always safe. Even commercially prepared infant foods—whether they are canned or packaged—require safe handling. The following tips serve as a basic guide:

- Buy clean jars, cans, or other containers; discard any containers that are stained on the outside.
- Check canned goods for damage, shown by swelling, punctures, leakage, holes, fractures, rusting, or crushing or denting that makes it impossible to open the can with a manual, wheel-type can opener. If a can is sticky, it may have a leak. Either return the can to the store for a refund or exchange, or throw it away.
- Discard any jars if the vacuum seal appears to be broken or if they have chipped glass or rusty lids; make sure that the safety button on the lid is down. Discard any jars that don’t “pop” when opened.
- Check for any swelling or leaking before purchasing foods in a plastic package or pouch. If the food has been bought, return it or discard it.
- Do not purchase or use foods after the “use by” date.
- Do not freeze jarred infant foods.
- Wash jars and containers with hot, soapy water before opening.
- Put infant food in a bowl; do not feed it from the jar.
- Serve jarred food immediately upon opening the jar.
- Store uneaten, opened jarred food in the refrigerator and use it within 48 hours; use infant meats within 24 hours.

Parents and caregivers can check for any infant food product recalls, or any other food recalls, or sign up for recall alerts, at www.foodsafety.gov.

➤ *See also: Chapter 5, “Fish: The Benefits and Concerns,” page 127.*

In addition, parents and caregivers can access the following FDA and USDA web pages to find out more about product labeling and dating:


Water and Food Contaminants

Contaminants in both water and food can cause significant harm to infants and young children; therefore, parents and caregivers must take special care to know the sources of water and food for infants and to ensure safe preparation and consumption. Drinking water should be tested to confirm that it is contaminant-free, and food should be carefully purchased and prepared to avoid unwanted bacteria and other contaminants.

A Safe Water Supply

Infants who are fed concentrated or powdered infant formula also consume a significant amount of water because it is used in the formula preparation. It is important that this water be safe and free from potentially harmful contaminants. In keeping with Federal and State standards, water from public or municipal water systems is regularly tested for contaminants such as pathogens, radioactive elements, and certain toxic chemicals. However, anyone with an infant, and all pregnant women, should be aware that contaminants could still enter a house or apartment’s water supply from a variety of sources.

Since 1998, public water suppliers have been required by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) to provide residents with a consumer confidence report on the State of the local water supply each year by July 1. The suppliers are also required to notify residents of any contamination they discover. Large water system suppliers often mail this report, while smaller suppliers may publish it in a local newspaper. The largest systems are required to post their reports online; the EPA is working to require all suppliers to post online.

Whether in print or online, the consumer confidence reports for public water systems must include the following:

- Name of the lake, river, aquifer, or other source of drinking water
- How susceptible the source is to contamination
- Level of contamination found
- Likely source of the contaminant
- Maximum amount of the contaminant the EPA considers acceptable for healthy consumption
- Potential health effects of the contaminant
- Actions planned to restore safe water
- System’s compliance with other drinking water-related rules
- How to protect vulnerable populations, such as infants and the elderly, in areas where contaminants (Cryptosporidium, nitrate, arsenic, and lead) are at levels that may be a concern

How the consumer can get information from the following groups about health issues specific to drinking water contaminants such as lead, mercury, nitrate, bacteria, and pesticides:

- For information about Consumer Confidence Reports (CCR), visit https://www.cdc.gov/healthywater/drinking/cdc-at-work.html
- For information on public water systems nationwide, visit https://www.epa.gov/ccc.
- For information on specific water suppliers, call the EPA Safe Drinking Water Hotline, 1-800-426-4791, 10 a.m.–4 p.m. Eastern Standard Time, Monday–Friday.
- For information on State water programs, visit the EPA web page “Private Drinking Water Well Programs in Your State,” https://www.epa.gov/privatewells/private-drinking-water-well-programs-your-state.
- For information on analyzing drinking water content, visit the EPA web page “Certification of Laboratories that Analyze Drinking Water Samples to Ensure Compliance with Regulations,” https://www.epa.gov/dwlabcert.

Water System Contaminants

Contaminants to water systems can be airborne, soilborne, or waterborne. Airborne pollutants can come from factory emissions into the atmosphere that eventually settle into water sources; factories can also dump pollutants directly into the water; and pollutants in the soil can eventually seep into water sources.

Well Water Contaminants

More than 15 million U.S. households get their drinking water from a private well. Private wells are not regulated by the same Federal drinking water standards as a public water system. As a result, the burden is on the resident to determine if the water is safe to drink. Therefore, parents and caregivers whose drinking water comes from a private household or community well should have their water tested for bacteria, nitrates, and other contaminants on a regular basis. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends that private wells be tested once a year for germs and every 2 to 3 years for harmful chemicals. Wells should also be tested if there is a problem with other wells in the area—such as flooding, land disturbance, or nearby waste disposal—or if any part of the well system is repaired or replaced.

Potential sources of well water contaminants include the following:

- Naturally occurring chemicals like arsenic, lead, and radon found in rocks and soils
- Human and animal waste coming from polluted stormwater runoff, agricultural runoff, or flooded sewers
- Nearby gas stations or factories
- Improperly functioning septic systems
- Any past and present activities in the area near the well, such as the application of lawn-care or agricultural chemicals or the improper disposal of household chemicals such as used motor oil, paints and thinners, and cleaning fluids

NOTE: Well water may contain fluoride, and owners of private wells should know what the fluoride level is in their water. The U.S. Public Health Service recommends that drinking water contain 0.7 milligrams (mg) of fluoride per liter (L). If well water contains less than 0.6 mg/L, there may be insufficient fluoride to protect against tooth decay. If well water contains 2 mg/L or greater, children under age 8 may potentially develop dental fluorosis. A medical or dental health care provider can help determine if parents and caregivers should use an alternate source of water, such as bottled water or a blend of home and bottled water.

For information on well water contaminants and testing, and for a list of State-certified laboratories in their vicinity, parents and caregivers can contact the following organizations:

- The local health or environmental department
- The State drinking water office, which is usually located in the State health department or environmental agency
- The nearest public water utility
- The EPA website and Safe Drinking Water Hotline (see contact information under “A Safe Water Supply,” on this page)
Use of Bottled Water

If parents and caregivers are concerned about the local water supply, bottled water may be an alternative to tap water for preparing infant formula and complementary foods. The following instances may be reasons for using bottled water:

- The local water supply does not meet health-based drinking water standards. Review the Consumer Confidence Report issued by the water supplier. Find more information at: https://www.cdc.gov/healthywater/drinking/cdc-at-work.html
- Naturally occurring fluoride exceeds the recommended levels for safe drinking water.
- Corrosion of household plumbing installed prior to 1984 may result in lead and/or copper to enter the drinking water.

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) regulates bottled water as a food. Bottlers are required to carry out the following steps:29

- To process, bottle, hold, and transport bottled water under sanitary conditions.
- To meet standards of identity established in 1995 that define types of waters: artesian, mineral, purified or distilled, sparkling, and spring.
- To meet standards of quality in terms of maximum allowable amounts of chemical, physical, microbial, and radiological contaminants.

The FDA is responsible for inspecting and monitoring bottled waters and the plants in which they are processed. Nothing may be added to bottled water except optional antimicrobial agents and fluoride. Different brands of bottled water contain varying levels of fluoride because fluoride is naturally present in many sources of water, and manufacturers may add some amount as water fortification.30 Manufacturers are only required to list the type of fluoride product used to adjust the fluoride level, not the actual fluoride level of the water. All of this will affect the amount an infant consumes.31 Thus, parents and caregivers who wish to feed their infants a specific brand of bottled spring or mineral water should consider contacting the manufacturer for information on the quality and fluoride content of its water. ➤ See also: Chapter 1, “Fluoride,” page 21; Chapter 4, “Using Fluoridated Water to Mix Infant Formula,” pages 104–105; and Chapter 6, “Oral Care and Prevention of Infant Caries,” page 155.

If bottled water is to be used, distilled water may be the best choice because it may contain fewer contaminants than bottled spring or mineral waters. To help decide whether or not to use a particular kind of bottled water, parents and caregivers should contact their health care provider and the local or State health department for information on local water quality concerns and recommendations.32

Home Water Treatment Units

Home water treatment units can potentially remedy a water contamination problem; however, it is important to keep in mind that no single household treatment unit will remove all potential drinking water contaminants. Treatment is very specific to certain substances. Before selecting a unit, the household water should be tested to confirm the nature and extent of contamination. After identifying the substances to be removed, the appropriate unit can be selected.33

The EPA recognizes the following group as a reliable source of information on home water treatment units: NSF International, reachable by phone at 1-800-673-8010 or online at http://www.nsf.org.
Parasitic, Bacterial, and Viral Contaminants

Parasites, bacteria, and viruses can contaminate water and foods and cause disease. Three organisms of particular concern for infants are Cryptosporidium, Escherichia coli O157:H7, Salmonella, and Rotavirus.

Cryptosporidium

Cryptosporidiosis is caused by the parasite Cryptosporidium, which lives in the intestines of humans or animals and passes into water through their feces. When contaminated food or water is consumed, the parasite attacks. Cryptosporidiosis has become one of the most common waterborne diseases affecting humans in the United States. Symptoms include watery diarrhea, dehydration, weight loss, stomach cramps, and slight fever. Rapid dehydration can be life-threatening for infants with cryptosporidiosis. Boiling water at a rolling boil for at least 1 minute (3 minutes at altitudes higher than 6,562 feet) will kill or inactivate the parasite. Also, reverse osmosis filters or filters with an absolute pore size of under 1 micron (one-hundredth the width of a human hair) will remove the parasite.

See also: “Home Water Treatment Units,” page 200.

Escherichia coli O157:H7

This strain of the E. coli bacteria lives in the intestines of healthy cattle. Infection in humans may occur from eating meat, especially ground beef that has not been fully cooked; drinking unpasteurized milk or juice; or drinking sewage-contaminated water. While most types of E. coli are harmless, this strain produces a toxin that can cause severe bloody diarrhea and abdominal cramps and can be passed easily from the fecal matter of one person into the mouth of another when hands are not washed after touching feces. Illness is very uncommon in infants, but children age 1-4 years have the highest rate of infection. This age group also has the highest rate of a serious complication called hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS). HUS occurs in 15 percent of infections caused by E. coli O157:H7 among children less than 5 years old. Boiling contaminated water for 1 minute (3 minutes at altitudes higher than 6,562 feet) will kill or inactivate the bacteria; filtering will not remove the bacteria.

Salmonella

Most people infected with Salmonella develop diarrhea, fever, and abdominal cramps 8 and 72 hours after exposure. Salmonellosis is most common in children under the age of 5 years, and infants have the highest rate of diagnosed infection. Infants are more likely than most other age groups to develop bloodstream infection or meningitis. Salmonella is carried in the intestines of most food animals, and many pets (especially reptiles) carry it. The highest risk foods are those of animal origin that are not well cooked. Infants can be exposed to Salmonella from an infected caregiver who has not washed hands well. Contaminated environments and objects are also a source: if someone preparing raw chicken contaminated with Salmonella touches an object, and the infant then touches the object and puts its fingers or the object in its mouth, the infant could get infected. Infants have gotten salmonellosis from being in a house with a reptile (without touching the reptile) and from being in a house with an asymptomatic infected puppy or contaminated dry pet food. Foods of animal origin, including eggs, poultry, and meat, can be contaminated with Salmonella. It is therefore important that infants only be served these foods when they are fully cooked. Caregivers preparing eggs, poultry, and meat should also be careful to avoid cross-contamination in the kitchen; and, after handling these raw food items, caregivers should always wash their hands before having contact with an infant.

Rotavirus

Rotavirus is the most common cause of severe diarrhea among infants and children worldwide. Prior to introduction of the rotavirus vaccine in 2006, rotavirus resulted in about 55,000-77,000 hospitalizations per year in the United States. Since then, illness due to rotavirus has decreased significantly. Unfortunately, it is still an issue. Rotavirus can be transmitted from person to person through contact with contaminated environmental surfaces, and through ingestion of contaminated water or food. Rotavirus disease is characterized by vomiting, and watery diarrhea and dehydration can occur. Rotavirus is found in water sources that have been contaminated with human feces, usually as a result of sewage overflows or sewage systems.
not working properly. It usually occurs in the winter, presenting with symptoms of vomiting and watery diarrhea, and it can lead to dehydration. Boiling water for 1 minute (3 minutes at altitudes higher than 6,500 feet) will kill or inactivate rotavirus; filtration will not remove the virus. Universal vaccination of all infants against rotavirus is recommended during the first 6 months of life.

NOTE: If a parent or caregiver suspects that an infant has signs of any of the above diseases, he or she should contact a health care provider immediately.

Other Contaminants

Parents and caregivers should be aware of contaminants such as arsenic, copper, lead, mercury, and nitrates. They should also know the sources of these toxins and the signs of poisoning from them.

Arsenic

Arsenic is an element that occurs naturally in rocks and soil and is used for a variety of purposes within industry and agriculture. It is also a by-product of copper smelting, mining, and coal burning.

Arsenic can enter the water supply naturally, from arsenic-rich rock or soil deposits that spread across the ground, or from agricultural and industrial—mostly mining and metal-processing—pollution that seeps into the ground. Once on the ground or in surface water, arsenic can slowly enter a water supply. High arsenic levels in private wells may come from certain arsenic-containing fertilizers used in the past, industrial waste, or improper well construction. During agricultural production, food can be exposed to arsenic through soil, water, and air.

A large intake of arsenic can cause irritation of the stomach and intestines, with symptoms such as stomachache, nausea, and vomiting. Infants and children who are exposed to arsenic may have many of the same effects as adults, including irritation of the stomach and intestines, blood vessel damage, skin changes, and reduced nerve function.

See also: “FDA Feeding Advice on Reducing Exposure to Arsenic,” next page.

The CDC recommends having well water tested at least once a year to be sure any arsenic problems are under control. Heating or boiling your water, or adding a chlorine disinfectant, will not remove arsenic. If a problem in a private well is suspected, the local health department should be contacted. The State certification officer can provide a list of laboratories in the area that will test the water for a fee.


Copper

High levels of copper can dissolve from some pipes in areas with corrosive water. Corrosive water tends to have a higher level of acid, which eats away at the contents of a pipe. Copper, which is beneficial at lower levels, is a health risk at levels above 1.3 milligrams per liter of water. Acute exposure to copper can result in gastrointestinal symptoms such as nausea, vomiting, stomach cramps, and diarrhea. Chronic exposure can cause liver or kidney damage. Studies show that a small percentage of infants are unusually sensitive to copper. When water is tested, it can be tested for copper. If high levels of copper are found, encourage parents and caregivers to contact a health care provider for advice.

Lead

Lead is a poisonous metal that can accumulate in the body and cause brain, nerve, and kidney damage; anemia; and even death. Lead is especially dangerous, even with short-term exposure, to infants, children, and pregnant women. While lead exposure can take place through sources such as
paint chips, lead dust, toys, and pottery, it can also be consumed in drinking water.\textsuperscript{48}

Lead levels are typically low in groundwater and surface water. Lead can enter drinking water from plumbing materials that carry water to and within homes and residential buildings. Until the Federal Government banned the manufacture of lead plumbing materials in 1986, pipes and solder containing lead were often used in water systems and homes.\textsuperscript{49} Residents in older homes today must be aware of this concern; lead can be present in drinking water at high enough levels to warrant concern.\textsuperscript{50} The AAP policy statement “Prevention of Childhood Lead Toxicity” recommends at the very least running water for 1 to 2 minutes to flush out the contaminants and to replace lead-contaminated pipes.\textsuperscript{51} \textsuperscript{12} See also: “Water for Infants: Get the Lead Out!,” page 206.

Parents and caregivers should be aware if their homes exhibit these features or conditions:\textsuperscript{52}

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{arsenic.png}
\caption{FDA Feeding Advice on Reducing Exposure to Arsenic}
\end{figure}

Just as consuming infant formula prepared with arsenic-contaminated water can be harmful to an infant, consuming some arsenic-containing foods can be harmful as well. Arsenic-containing foods include rice and rice cereals, seafood, mushrooms, poultry, and certain kinds of seaweed. \textsuperscript{12} See also: “Arsenic,” page 202.

The FDA is taking steps to reduce inorganic arsenic in infant rice cereal, a leading source of arsenic exposure in infants. Through a draft guidance to industry, the FDA is proposing a limit or “action level” of 100 parts per billion (ppb) for inorganic arsenic in infant rice cereal. FDA testing found that the majority of infant rice cereal on the market either meets, or is close to, the proposed action level.

The FDA encourages parents and caregivers to follow the advice of the American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) and to feed their infants and toddlers a variety of grains as part of a well-balanced diet. In addition, the FDA provides the following advice for consumers:

- Rice cereal fortified with iron is a good source of nutrients, but it should not be the only source. Other fortified infant cereals include oat, barley, and other grains.
- Cook rice in extra water (6–10 parts water to 1 part rice), and then drain the water; this can reduce arsenic content by 40 to 60 percent, depending on the type of rice. Be aware that this may also remove key nutrients.

The FDA has found that long-term arsenic exposure in infants can affect IQ scores and result in lower performance on developmental learning tests.

Brass fixtures. Although these fixtures have low lead levels, the lead in them can dissolve into the water, especially when the fixtures are new.

Copper pipes with lead solder. These are found in homes built before the 1986 ban on lead in pipes. These pipes are still new enough that mineral deposits have not yet built up to cover the harmful lead.

Soft water. The chemical composition of this water allows it to pull, or leach, metals from lead pipes; hard water, on the other hand, is resistant to leaching toxic metals.

Water that has sat in lead pipes or pipes with lead solder for several hours. The water can contain lead that leached from the pipe.

NOTE: Drink or cook only with water that comes out of the tap cold. Water that comes out of the tap warm or hot can contain much higher levels of lead. Boiling this water will NOT reduce the amount of lead in the water.

Since a person cannot see, taste, or smell lead dissolved in water, household drinking water must be tested to determine its lead content. The local water utility or local department of health can provide information and assistance regarding testing for lead and how to locate a qualified laboratory. Testing is especially important because flushing may not be effective in all cases. For instance, it may not reduce lead levels in high-rise buildings with lead-soldered central piping or in homes receiving water through lead service lines. The local water utility company can be contacted for information on the pipes carrying water into a home.53

Limiting Lead Exposure in Foods

An infant can also take in lead from foods that are stored or prepared in lead-rich vessels or prepared with lead-based utensils. Parents and caregivers should follow these guidelines to reduce an infant’s potential exposure to lead from foods:54

Never feed an infant canned imported foods or beverages. These cans may have lead seams, and lead in seams can enter the food.

When preparing, serving, and storing foods and beverages for an infant, avoid using the following kinds of bowls and dishes, especially if they are imported from another country:

- Leaded crystal bowls, pitchers, or other containers
- Decorative ceramic or pewter vessels or dishes
- Antique utensils

Always store foods or beverages in plastic or regular glass containers.

Mercury

A naturally occurring element found in Earth’s crust, mercury is released into the atmosphere by natural geological activity and mining. Mercury is used in a number of commercial products, including thermostats, older thermometers, fluorescent light bulbs, pesticides, and two kinds of batteries: button cell and mercuric oxide. Mercury-containing products and the companies who manufacture them are possible sources of mercury contamination. Mercury also enters the environment through the combustion of fossil fuels.55

The natural release of mercury from Earth’s crust can affect drinking water, but man-made causes for mercury contamination are far more common. Mercury that is spilled or improperly stored at industrial and hazardous waste sites can penetrate underground water supplies, thus contaminating private water sources. Even simple household products, such as light bulbs and thermostats, can leak mercury into the environment if not properly discarded. Mercury also can be present at former agricultural sites where mercury-containing pesticides were once used.

Over time, mercury can build up in the body until it causes health problems. The EPA has established that repeated exposure to mercury at levels above the maximum contaminant level (MCL) of 2 parts per billion (ppb)—an amount compared to two pinches of salt in a 10-ton bag of potato chips—can cause damage to the brain and kidneys, depending on the type and amount of the mercury contamination.56 Mercury can also harm a developing fetus.

MCL: Maximum contaminant level. This is the highest level of a contaminant that is allowed in drinking water.
How Can Diet Help Reduce Negative Impacts of Lead-Contaminated Water?

Ensuring proper nutrition is critical to mitigating lead absorption in the body. Parents and caregivers can reduce the negative impacts of lead-contaminated water by using nutrition as a tool to help prevent lead absorption into the body.

Although no food can undo lead exposure completely, foods rich in iron, vitamin C, and calcium are thought to help limit the absorption of lead by the body. Older infants consuming complementary foods and children can obtain these nutrients by eating the following foods:

- **Iron-rich foods.** Normal levels of iron work to protect the body from the harmful effects of lead. Good sources of dietary iron include iron-fortified cereal, legumes, peanut butter, and lean red meat.

- **Vitamin C–rich foods.** Vitamin C– and iron-rich foods work together to reduce lead absorption. Good sources of vitamin C include oranges, green and red peppers, and 100 percent fruit juice.

- **Calcium-rich foods.** Calcium reduces lead absorption and helps make teeth and bones strong. Good sources of calcium include low-fat and fat-free milk, yogurt, or cheese; canned sardines; and green leafy vegetables such as spinach, kale, and collard greens. Calcium-fortified, soy-based beverages are also good sources of calcium. To check the iron, vitamin C, and/or calcium content of foods, visit https://ndb.nal.usda.gov/ndb/search/list.


Mercury in Fish

Mercury is of greatest concern when consuming fish. The FDA and EPA have issued advice regarding eating fish that is geared toward women who are pregnant or may become pregnant, breastfeeding mothers, and parents and caregivers of young children.

The FDA-EPA advice is for children age 2 years and older:

- Eating a variety of fish is better than eating the same type every time.
- Avoid any fish with high levels of mercury. These include king mackerel, swordfish, shark, tilefish, orange roughy, marlin, and bigeye tuna.
- Consume fish from the FDA-EPA “Best Choices” list. These fish are lowest in mercury: canned light tuna, salmon, shrimp, cod, catfish, clams, flounder, tilapia, haddock, crab, scallops, and pollock. (Note that albacore or “white” tuna has more mercury than does canned light tuna.)
- Parents and caregivers can feed fish to young children, but they should not feed fish to infants younger than 6 months of age.

More information about the advice, including the number of servings and serving sizes for adults and children, can be found on the FDA and EPA websites: https://www.fda.gov/ForConsumers/ConsumerUpdates/ucm397443.htm. See also: Chapter 5, “Fish: The Benefits and Concerns,” page 127.

For information about the safety of fish caught locally, parents and caregivers should contact State and local health departments. State health departments can also give advisories on toxins besides mercury that may be present in local waters.

Nitrate

Water from private household or community wells may become contaminated from nitrate in fertilizer, septic tank waste, and improper disposal of human and animal waste. If the nitrate level in drinking water climbs above the national standard of 10 milligrams per liter of water (10 mg/L), it poses an
**Water for Infants: Get the Lead Out!**

High levels of lead in tap water can cause health effects if the lead in the water enters the bloodstream and causes an elevated blood lead level. However, the risk will vary depending on the individual, the circumstances, and the amount of water consumed. For example, infants who drink formula prepared with lead-contaminated water may be at a higher risk because of the large volume of water they consume relative to their body size.

**How to reduce or eliminate lead in the tap water?**

Lead in the tap water may be coming from the street pipe or connected pipes, it may also be coming from sources inside your home.

Until the lead source is eliminated, take the following steps any time you wish to use tap water for drinking or cooking, especially when the water has been off and sitting in the pipes for more than 6 hours. Please note that additional flushing is necessary:

- Before using any tap water for drinking or cooking, run high-volume taps (such as your shower) on COLD for 5 minutes or more;
- Then, run the kitchen tap on COLD for 1–2 additional minutes;
- Fill a clean container(s) with water from this tap. This water will be suitable for drinking, cooking, preparation of infant formula, or other consumption. To conserve water, collect multiple containers of water at once (after you have fully flushed the water from the tap as described). ➤ See also: “How Do I Remove Heavy Metals From My Drinking Water?,” page 208.

**NOTE:** If parents or caregivers are concerned about the lead level in water or if lead contamination is found through testing, they should seek guidance from their health care provider.

**Sources:** Source: CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention), “Lead, Water” available at: https://www.cdc.gov/nceh/lead/tips/water.htm Page last updated: February 18, 2016  Accessed 12/14/17

---

If the nitrate level in well water is confirmed to be above 10 mg/L, parents and caregivers should take the following steps:

- Consult a health care provider immediately.
- Feed the infant water from an alternative source that has less than 10 mg/L of nitrate.
- Breastfeed the infant, as nitrate concentration does not increase in human milk, even if the mother drinks high-nitrate water.63
- Do not use the water in infant formula, especially if boiled, as boiling concentrates the nitrate.64
- Give the infant ready-to-feed formula instead of a concentrated or powdered mix that requires dilution with water.

**Nitrate in Vegetables**

When counseling parents and caregivers who give infants complementary foods before the recommended age of about 6 months, assess if the infant is developmentally ready. Also, caution
Should I Have My Water Tested for Mercury?

In the quest to make safe drinking water available for everyone, the EPA is working to reduce mercury pollution and exposures to mercury across the Nation.

Under the Safe Drinking Water Act, the EPA in 1991 set an enforceable regulation, called a maximum contaminant level (MCL), for inorganic mercury at 0.002 mg/L or 2 ppb. Public water systems must ensure that its drinking water does not exceed the MCL for mercury.

However, people who use private water supplies are responsible for ensuring the quality of their water. Private water sources should be tested for contamination at least once a year.

The presence of germs and harmful chemicals will depend on where a well is located on a piece of property, in which State the property is, and whether the land is in an urban or rural area. The local health department’s environmental section can clarify which contaminants are problems in each region. Testing should measure levels of mercury, lead, arsenic, radium, atrazine, and other pesticides. It is important to know that no single test can identify all possible contaminants.

The EPA designates each State, and each Indian Tribal Organization, to be responsible for enforcing drinking water standards, as long as they meet key requirements. All public water systems must ensure that drinking water does not exceed the MCL for mercury. If an initial test shows that mercury is below the recommended MCL or 2 ppb mercury-to-water level, yearly follow-up testing is generally not needed unless noticeable changes occur in water quality or in the health of the residents.

If the water supply does test higher than the MCL, recommendations from the environmental health section at the local health department may include the following:

- Switch to bottled water for all drinking and cooking. Never boil water, because it can release mercury into the air and increase levels of mercury in the water.
- Consider water treatment methods specially designed to remove mercury. The local health department’s environmental health section can give guidance. In addition, NSF International has information on selecting filters. Call 1-800-673-8010 or visit its website, http://www.nsf.org.
- Identify a new water source. Drilling a deeper well or accessing a different aquifer (the source of underground water) may be recommended. A connection may need to be made to an alternative water source such as a public or city water line.

For more information on water testing for mercury or other chemicals, contact the local health department or the EPA Safe Drinking Water Hotline at 1-800-426-4791, or visit one of the EPA web pages listed under “A Safe Water Supply,” pages 198–199.

against using certain vegetables that contain nitrate. The AAP recommends that spinach, beets, turnips, carrots, and collard greens prepared at home should not be fed to infants less than 6 months old because they may contain sufficient amounts of nitrate to cause methemoglobinemia.

The nitrate in these vegetables is converted to nitrite before ingestion or while in the infant's stomach. The nitrite binds to iron in the blood and hinders the blood's ability to carry oxygen. The risk of developing methemoglobinemia is only present with home-prepared, high-nitrate vegetables.

Commercially prepared infant and junior spinach, carrots, and beets contain only traces of nitrate and are not considered a risk to the infant. Manufacturers of infant foods select produce grown in areas of the country that do not have high nitrate levels in the soil, and they monitor the amount of nitrate in the final product. A health care provider should always be made aware that a parent or caregiver is feeding foods with nitrates.

➤ See also: Chapter 5, “Vegetables High in Nitrates or Nitrites,” page 136.

---

**How Do I Remove Heavy Metals From My Drinking Water?**

Heating or boiling your water will not remove heavy metals, such as lead, mercury, arsenic or copper. Because some of the water evaporates during the boiling process, the contaminants concentrations can actually increase slightly as the water is boiled. Additionally, chlorine (bleach) disinfection will not remove them.

You may wish to consider water treatment methods such as reverse osmosis, ultrafiltration, distillation, or ion exchange. There are carbon filters specially designed to removed lead. Typically these methods are used to treat water at only one faucet. Contact your local health department for recommended procedures. Remember to have your well water tested regularly, at least once a year, to make sure the problem is controlled.

Endnotes


4  “Handwashing: Clean Hands Save Lives,” CDC.


8  Kleinman and Greer, *Pediatric Nutrition*, 68; “Proper Handling and Storage of Human Milk,” CDC.


“Food Safety for Moms to Be: Once Baby Arrives,” FDA.


31 Posnick and Kim, “Bottled Water Regulation and the FDA.


34 “Parasites-Cryptosporidium (also known as ‘Crypto’),” CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention), last modified August 2016, https://www.cdc.gov/parasites/crypto/; “Diseases and Contaminants: Cryptosporidium,” Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, last modified July 1, 2015, https://www.cdc.gov/healthywater/drinking/private/wells/disease/cryptosporidium.html; “Choosing Home Water Filters and Other Water Treatment Systems, CDC.

35 “Drinking Water FAQ,” CDC.


37 “Drinking Water FAQ,” CDC.


41 “Diseases and Contaminants,” CDC (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention), last modified July 1, 2015, https://www.cdc.gov/healthywater/drinking/private/wells/disease/rotavirus.html


45 “Overview of Water-Related Diseases and Contaminants in Private Wells,” CDC.

46 “Diseases and Contaminants: Copper and Drinking Water from Private Wells,” Centers for Disease


62 “Disease and Contaminants: Nitrate and Drinking Water from Private Wells,” CDC.


64 “Disease and Contaminants: Nitrate and Drinking Water from Private Wells,” CDC.

APPENDIXES

**NOTE:** These resources are for staff use only. Materials are not intended to be used as handouts for participants.
APPENDIX A – Using the WIC Works Resource System

The WIC Works Resource System (wicworks.fns.usda.gov), a project of the USDA, Food and Nutrition Service, is an online education and training center for WIC program staff. State and local agency nutrition and health professionals can increase knowledge and skills using the free tools available. Key resources accessible through the WIC Works Resource System include the WIC Nutrition Services Standards Online Self-Assessment, Value Enhanced Nutrition Assessment Guidance and Training, and WIC Learning Online, a series of online training courses for all levels of WIC staff. Select courses are approved for continuing education for nurses and dietitians.

WIC agencies can also utilize WIC Works as a vehicle to learn and share with each other. The State Sharing Gallery features State agency-developed staff training and participant education resources, and the Bulletin Board Exchange allows local agencies to share visuals for bulletin board displays that enhance the clinic environment.

The WIC Works Resource System gives access to an array of printable education, training, and outreach tools to be used with WIC participants. These include brochures, tip sheets, images, and videos on topics that are relevant to the WIC program mission and target audiences. An online order form allows WIC agencies to submit requests for available USDA publications.

Questions about the WIC Works Resource System can be directed to wicworks@usda.gov.
**Guidelines for Feeding Healthy Infants**

(for WIC staff)

**Birth to 6 months**

Exclusive breastfeeding is recommended for the first 6 months, with continuation for the first year or longer as mutually desired by mother and baby. [lovingsupport.fns.usda.gov](http://lovingsupport.fns.usda.gov)

The WIC Program promotes and supports exclusive breastfeeding as the standard method of infant feeding unless breastfeeding is contraindicated.

Newborns will breastfeed 8 to 12 times per day. As babies age, their stomachs can hold more milk and they are better at breastfeeding; therefore, feedings will be farther apart and may take less time.”

For newborns on formula, in the first few days, they will take 2 to 3 ounces of formula every 3 to 4 hours. By 6 months of age, babies may consume approximately 32 ounces per day. During growth spurts, the frequency of feedings may increase.

Babies do not feed on a strict schedule, so it’s best to watch the baby, not the clock.

For information on satiety cues, refer to the job aid Developmental Skills/Infant Hunger & Satiety Cues

---

**Starting Complementary Foods**

Use growth as a guide to determine adequacy of complementary feeding practices. When discussing complementary feeding with caregivers, advise on:

- Introducing one new, single-ingredient food at a time starting with baby foods such as iron-fortified cereal or baby meat which are both high in iron and zinc. It is important to wait at least 3 to 5 days to observe for possible allergic reactions or intolerances before starting another new food. Start with one feeding and gradually increase feedings to about three times per day.
- Establishing healthy/appropriate eating patterns, i.e., a variety of grains, vegetables, fruits, and protein.
- Gradually increasing variety and amounts of each food with the infant’s age. By 7 to 8 months of age, infants should be consuming food from all food groups.

When counseling on feeding practices in general, focus on the quality of the feeding environment, feeding routines and behaviors, and food choices, such as:

- Establishing predictable routines for meals and snacks
- Limiting meal times to 15 to 20 minutes
- Avoiding grazing behaviors with snacks or liquids
- Feeding only in a high chair at the table
- Responding to infants’ hunger and satiety cues

WIC Learning Online

## Typical Daily Portion Sizes *(serving sizes may vary with individual infants)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Human Milk</th>
<th>Infant Formula</th>
<th>Grain Products</th>
<th>Vegetables</th>
<th>Fruits</th>
<th>Protein-rich Foods</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Birth to 6 months</td>
<td>Only human milk (or formula) is needed for the first 6 months</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 to 8 months</td>
<td>Breastfeeding infants should continue to be breastfed, on demand.</td>
<td>~1 to 2 ounces</td>
<td>~2 to 4 ounces</td>
<td>~2 to 4 ounces</td>
<td>~1 to 2 ounces</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start complementary foods when developmentally ready, about 6 months</td>
<td>Though formula-fed infants take in ~24 to 32 ounces, provide an amount based on an individual nutrition assessment.</td>
<td>Iron-fortified infant cereals, bread, small pieces of crackers</td>
<td>Cooked, plain strained/pureed/mashed*</td>
<td>Plain strained/pureed/mashed*</td>
<td>Plain strained/pureed/mashed meat, poultry, fish, eggs, cheese, yogurt, or mashed legumes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~0.5 - 1 ounces</td>
<td>Infants’ intake of human milk/formula may decrease as complementary foods increase.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 to 12 months</td>
<td>Provide guidance and encouragement to breastfeeding mothers and continue to support those mothers who choose to breastfeed beyond 12 months.</td>
<td>~2 to 4 ounces</td>
<td>~4 to 6 ounces</td>
<td>~4 to 6 ounces</td>
<td>~2 to 4 ounces</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formula-fed infants take in ~24 ounces, but provide an amount based on an individual nutrition assessment.</td>
<td>Iron-fortified infant cereals</td>
<td>Cooked, finely chopped/diced*</td>
<td>Finely chopped/diced*</td>
<td>Finely chopped/diced meat, poultry, fish, eggs, cheese, yogurt or mashed legumes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Infants under 12 months of age should not consume juice unless clinically indicated. After 12 months, encourage fruit over fruit juice; any juice consumed should be as part of a meal or snack and from an open cup (i.e., not bottles or easily transportable covered cups).

### Foods to Avoid

- Soda, gelatin, coffee, tea or fruit punches and “ade” drinks
- Milk until 12 months
- Added salt
- Added oil, butter, other fats, seasoning
- Added sugar, syrups, other sweeteners
- Fried foods, gravies, sauces, processed meats

### Important Notes to Remember

- Babies weaned from human milk before 12 months should receive iron-fortified formula.
- Wean entirely off the bottle and onto a cup at 12 to 14 months.
- Keep bottles out of bedtime and nap routines to avoid exposing infants’ teeth to sugars and reduce the risk for ear infections and choking.
- Check carefully for bones in commercially or home-prepared meals containing meat, fish, or poultry.
- Remove seeds, skin, and pits from fruits. For additional choking prevention information, refer to the Infant Feeding: Tips for Food Safety job aid.
## Infant Developmental Skills

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mouth Patterns</th>
<th>Hand and Body Skills</th>
<th>Feeding Abilities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Birth - 3 months</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Has tongue thrust, rooting, and gag reflex</td>
<td>- Needs head support</td>
<td>- Coordinates the suck-swallow-breathe action while breast or bottle feeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Begins to babble</td>
<td>- Brings hands to the mouth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4 - 7 months</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Transfers food from front to back of the tongue to swallow</td>
<td>- Has head and neck control</td>
<td>- Takes in a spoonful of strained/pureed/mashed food and swallows without choking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Opens the mouth when sees spoon approaching</td>
<td>- Sits with support</td>
<td>- Drinks small amounts from a cup (with spilling) held by another person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Begins to control the position of food in the mouth</td>
<td>- Brings objects to the mouth</td>
<td>- Begins to eat mashed foods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Uses up-and-down munching movement</td>
<td>- Begins to sit alone unsupported</td>
<td>- Eats from a spoon easily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>8 - 12 months</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Uses the jaw and tongue to mash food</td>
<td>- Sits alone easily</td>
<td>- Begins to eat ground/nely chopped/diced food and small pieces of soft, cooked table food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Uses rotary chewing (diagonal movement of the jaw as food is moved to the side or center of the mouth)</td>
<td>- Easily grasps and/or brings small objects to the mouth, such as finger foods</td>
<td>- Bites through a variety of textures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Begins to hold a cup with two hands</td>
<td>- Demands to spoon-feed self</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Has good eye-hand-mouth coordination</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nutrition during the first year of your baby’s life is important for proper growth and development of oral and motor skills. These are general observations of infant developmental skills; however, each baby is different and may meet developmental skills earlier or later than his or her peers.
Infant Hunger and Satiety Cues

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hunger Cues</th>
<th>Satiety Cues</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Opens and closes mouth</td>
<td>• Slows or decreases sucking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Brings hands to face</td>
<td>• Extends arms and legs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Flexes arms and legs</td>
<td>• Extends/relaxes fingers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Roots around on the chest of whoever is carrying the infant</td>
<td>• Pushes/arches away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Makes sucking noises and motions</td>
<td>• Falls asleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sucks on lips, hands, fingers, toes, toys, or clothing</td>
<td>• Turns head away from the nipple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Smiles, gazes at caregiver, or coos during feeding to indicate wanting</td>
<td>• Releases the nipple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more</td>
<td>• Seals lips together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Moves head toward spoon or tries to swipe food towards mouth</td>
<td>• May be distracted or pays attention to surroundings more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Reaches for spoon or food</td>
<td>• Turns head away from the food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Points to food</td>
<td>• Eating slows down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Gets excited when food is presented</td>
<td>• Clenches mouth shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Expresses desire for specific food with words or sounds</td>
<td>• Pushes food away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Smiles, gazes at caregiver, or coos</td>
<td>• Shakes head to say “no more”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Important Counseling Points

Babies use multiple cues together, or clustered cues, to convey their needs. They may bring their hands to their face, clench their hands, root, and make sucking noises. All these behaviors together help us know when a baby is hungry. A single cue alone does not necessarily indicate hunger or satiety.

Crying is not a cue, but rather a distress signal. Cues occur prior to crying. Watching and responding early to cues can help prevent crying. Hungry babies might cry, but they will also exhibit hunger cues noted above.
INFANT NUTRITION AND FEEDING

Infant Feeding: Tips for Food Safety

Human Milk
Proper food safety procedures are essential when expressing, handling, and storing human milk. Unsafe handling and cleaning procedures can result in bacterial growth and illness.

- Wash hands thoroughly before expressing human milk.
- Collect human milk in clean, sterile containers.
- Label and date the containers.
- Freshly pumped/expressed human milk may be stored at room temperature up to 4 hours.
- Refrigerate human milk for up to 4 days.
- Freeze human milk for up to 6 months.
- Milk may be thawed in several ways, such as holding the container under warm running water.
- Do not refreeze human milk; discard thawed human milk if it is not consumed within 24 hours.
- Never use a microwave to thaw or warm human milk because this practice is dangerous.

Formula
Formula is a perishable food, and therefore, must be prepared, handled, and stored properly and in a sanitary manner to be safe for consumption. Babies can be exposed to harmful bacteria from a dirty environment, pets, and other family members.

- Emphasize the importance of cleanliness during preparation to include keeping bottles, nipples and other utensils clean and sanitary.
- Instruct caregivers to always wash their hands before preparing formula, handling bottles, or feeding.
- Emphasize that water used for preparing formula must be from a safe source. The local health department can help determine if a participant’s tap water is safe to prepare formula.
- Instruct caregivers to follow the directions on the formula labels for proper formula preparation, use, and storage instructions, or those given by their healthcare provider.
- Refer caregiver questions regarding the use of local drinking water or well water or bottled water to prepare formula to their healthcare provider.

Store-Bought Infant Food
Some WIC participants may assume that infant food purchased from the store is safe. However, this is not always the case. Even store-bought infant food requires safe handling.

- Buy clean and intact containers; discard any containers that are dented or stained on the outside.
- For jars, make sure that the safety button on the lid is down. Discard any jars that don’t “pop” when opened or that have chipped glass or rusty lids.
- For plastic pouches, discard any packages that are swelling or leaking.
- Do not purchase or use foods after the “use-by” date.
- Wash jars and containers with hot, soapy water before opening.
- Serve jarred food immediately, store opened jarred food in the refrigerator and use within 48 hours (use infant food meats within 24 hours).
- Do not freeze jarred infant foods.
- Put infant food in a bowl; do not feed from the jar.
Home-Prepared Infant Food

Infants are more susceptible to harmful effects of contaminated food than older children or adults. As a result, parents and caregivers must be diligent when preparing and storing home-prepared infant food.

- Wash hands, utensils, and work surfaces before preparing any food.
- Use fresh foods. Making infant foods from leftovers is not recommended.
- Serve immediately, or refrigerate and use within 48 hours; use meats and egg yolks within 24 hours.
- If preparing infant food in large batches, freeze the food immediately in individual portions and use within one month.
- Thaw frozen foods in the refrigerator or under cold running water; refreezing home-prepared infant food is not recommended.
- When counseling caregivers who give infants complementary foods before the recommended age (about 6 months), assess if the baby is developmentally ready. Additionally, caution against using certain vegetables (spinach, beets, turnips, collard greens, green beans, squash, and carrots) before 3 months of age, per the AAP, since these may contain large amounts of nitrates. Nitrates are chemicals that can cause an unusual type of anemia (low blood count) in young babies. Commercially prepared vegetables are safer because the manufacturers test for nitrates.
- Never give honey to infants under one year of age. Honey can sometimes be contaminated with Clostridium botulinum spores, which can cause botulism in infants. It is generally not fatal, but is a serious food-borne illness.

Choking

Participants need to know that certain foods should not be given to infants to reduce the risk of choking. Choking can be caused by the size, shape and consistency of certain foods. Always supervise infants when they are eating, keep mealtime calm, and cut up food into small pieces. Have children sit down while eating. Children should never run, walk, play, or lie down with food in their mouths.

The following foods are not recommended for infants and young children because they are associated with choking:

- Whole, raw, or hard pieces of partially cooked vegetables (cherry or grape tomatoes, carrot rounds, baby carrots, green peas, string beans, celery, corn, whole beans, etc.).
- Whole or raw fruit (grapes, melon balls, etc.); especially those with pits or seeds or whole pieces of canned fruit.
- Tough, stringy, or large chunks of meat or cheese, as well as fish with bones, hot dogs, meat sticks or sausages.
- Peanuts or other nuts and seeds; chunks or spoonfuls of peanut butter.
- Popcorn, potato/corn chips, pretzels, crackers or breads with seeds, and plain wheat germ.
- Hard candy, jelly beans, caramels, gum drops/gummy candies, chewing gum, or marshmallows.
# APPENDIX B – Resources on Infant Nutrition, Food Safety, and Related Topics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency/organization</th>
<th>Resources available and contact information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics (AND) (formerly American Dietetic Association) | Source of information on food and nutrition for all age groups, including infants. Provides resources on expert counseling in nutrition, including the “Find a Registered Dietitian Nutritionist” online referral service.  
Website: [http://www.eatright.org](http://www.eatright.org) |
Website: [http://www.aapd.org](http://www.aapd.org) |
| American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) | Source of materials on infant nutrition, child safety, first aid, and choking prevention. Publishes position papers on nutrition and health-related topics, including vitamin D supplementation, breastfeeding and the use of human milk, iron fortification of infant formulas, use of soy formulas, hypoallergenic infant formulas, use and misuse of fruit juice, guidelines on sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS), safe media use, and more.  
Website: [http://www.aap.org](http://www.aap.org) |
| American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and American Congress of Obstetricians and Gynecologists | Companion professional organizations dedicated to women's health. Provide information on pregnancy and childbirth as well as resources for hospitals and health care professionals who support women in choosing to breastfeed their infants.  
Website: [http://www.acog.org](http://www.acog.org) |
| American Heart Association (AHA) National Center | Voluntary organization dedicated to fighting heart disease and stroke. Provides public health education on healthy lifestyles, has programs to fight childhood obesity, and is a leader in education on cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) for all ages, including infant CPR and choking relief.  
Website: [http://www.heart.org/HEARTORG/](http://www.heart.org/HEARTORG/) |
| American Red Cross (ARC) National Headquarters | Provides health and safety training to the public, emergency social services to U.S. military members and their families, and relief to people affected by disasters in America. Each local chapter provides pamphlets, posters, and classes in emergency techniques for first aid, preventing choking, and cardiopulmonary resuscitation.  
Website: [http://www.redcross.org](http://www.redcross.org) |
| Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) | Works to protect the United States from health, safety, and security threats, both at home and abroad. Uses the latest science and technology to detect and prevent disease; promotes healthy and safe behaviors, communities, and environments. Provides public health education, including information on infant development, safety, and nutrition. The CDC’s National Center for Health Statistics publishes pediatric growth charts and information on using and interpreting growth data.  
Website: [https://www.cdc.gov](https://www.cdc.gov) |
| Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS) InsureKidsNow.gov Resource Center | CMS created an Oral Health Initiative to help states ensure that children enrolled in Medicaid and the Children’s Health Insurance Program (CHIP) have easy access to dental and oral health services. CMS also provides free educational materials to promote good oral health for infants and children.  
Website: [https://www.insurekidsnow.gov/initiatives/oral-health/index.html](https://www.insurekidsnow.gov/initiatives/oral-health/index.html) |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency/organization</th>
<th>Resources available and contact information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Health and Medicine Division (HMD), National Academies</td>
<td>Serves as an independent, nonpartisan adviser to the Nation to improve health, by providing advice that is unbiased, based on evidence, and grounded in science. Periodically updates and publishes the “Dietary Reference Intakes” tables that serve as a guide for good nutrition. Website: <a href="http://www.nationalacademies.org/HMD">http://www.nationalacademies.org/HMD</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine Note: HMD was formerly known as Institute of Medicine (IOM)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Lactation Consultant Association (ILCA)</td>
<td>ILCA promotes the profession of International Board Certified Lactation Consultants® (IBCLC®) and other health care professionals who care for breastfeeding families. ILCA’s goal is to improve the standard of health for infants worldwide through breastfeeding and skilled lactation care. Website: <a href="http://www.ilca.org/home">http://www.ilca.org/home</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La Leche League International (LLLI)</td>
<td>LLLI provides information, education, and encouragement such as mother-to-mother support to help mothers throughout the world understand the importance of breastfeeding to the healthy development of their infants. Website: <a href="http://www.llli.org/">http://www.llli.org/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Institutes of Health (NIH) National Institute</td>
<td>NIAID conducts and supports basic and applied research to better understand, treat, and ultimately prevent infectious, immunologic, and allergic diseases. Website: <a href="https://www.niaid.nih.gov/">https://www.niaid.nih.gov/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Institutes of Health (NIH) Office of Dietary</td>
<td>Promotes scientific study of the benefits of dietary supplements (including vitamins, minerals, and botanicals) in maintaining health and preventing chronic disease and other health-related conditions. Makes accurate and up-to-date scientific information about dietary supplements available to researchers, health care providers, and the public through fact sheets, brochures, exhibits, and newsletters. Website: <a href="https://ods.od.nih.gov">https://ods.od.nih.gov</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplements (ODS)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Maternal and Child Oral Health Resource</td>
<td>OHRC collaborates with government agencies, research centers, and professional organizations to develop effective strategies to improve oral health care for pregnant women, infants, children, and adolescents, including individuals and families with special health care needs. Website: <a href="http://www.mchoralhealth.org">http://www.mchoralhealth.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center (OHRC)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSF International</td>
<td>An independent, accredited organization that tests and certifies consumer products related to the safety of food, water, and the environment. The EPA recognizes NSF as a reliable source of information on home water treatment units. Website: <a href="http://www.nsf.org">http://www.nsf.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHAPE America (Society of Health and Physical Educators); umbrella group including the former National Association for Sport and Physical Education (NASPE)</td>
<td>An organization of health and physical education professionals that promotes research related to health and physical education, physical activity, dance, and sport for children of all ages. Provides guidance through materials such as the booklet Active Start: A Statement of Physical Activity Guidelines for Children From Birth to Age 5. Website: <a href="http://www.shapeamerica.org">http://www.shapeamerica.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agency/organization</td>
<td>Resources available and contact information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S. Breastfeeding Committee (USBC)</td>
<td>USBC coordinates national breastfeeding initiatives through a partnership with government agencies, professional health associations, and other organizations in the United States. Their efforts have brought significant and lasting changes to ensure families have the support and protection they need to provide the optimal breastfeeding experience needed for their infants. <strong>Website:</strong> <a href="http://www.usbreastfeeding.org/">http://www.usbreastfeeding.org/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC)</td>
<td>Protects the public from unreasonable risks of injury or death from many types of consumer products, including those for infants and children. <strong>Website:</strong> <a href="https://www.cpsc.gov">https://www.cpsc.gov</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) Food Safety and Inspection Service (FSIS)</td>
<td>FSIS is the public health agency in the U.S. Department of Agriculture responsible for ensuring that the Nation's commercial supply of meat, poultry, and egg products is safe, wholesome, and correctly packaged and labeled. Provides resource materials on food safety, including the online feature “Ask Karen,” a guide to expert knowledge on handling and storing food safely and preventing food poisoning. Also issues public health alerts for recalls of meat and poultry products. Operates the USDA Meat and Poultry Hotline (MPH). <strong>Websites:</strong> <a href="http://www.fsis.usda.gov/">http://www.fsis.usda.gov/</a> and <a href="https://askkaren.gov">https://askkaren.gov</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) Food and Nutrition Service (FNS) WIC Breastfeeding Support: Learn Together. Grow Together.</td>
<td>WIC Breastfeeding Support: Learn Together. Grow Together is a social marketing campaign from the U.S. Department of Agriculture, that launched in 2018 and serves as the foundation for all breastfeeding education, counseling, and promotion efforts in the WIC program. <strong>Website:</strong> <a href="https://wicbreastfeeding.fns.usda.gov">https://wicbreastfeeding.fns.usda.gov</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) Food and Nutrition Service (FNS) Special Supplemental Nutrition Program for Women, Infants and Children (WIC)</td>
<td>Provides Federal grants to states for supplemental foods, health care referrals, and nutrition education for low-income pregnant, breastfeeding, and nonbreastfeeding postpartum women, and to infants and children up to age 5 who are found to be at nutritional risk. <strong>Website:</strong> <a href="https://www.fns.usda.gov/wic/women-infants-and-children-wic">https://www.fns.usda.gov/wic/women-infants-and-children-wic</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) National Agricultural Library (NAL)</td>
<td>NAL documents USDA research and serves as a national resource for agricultural information, including scientific research on infant nutrition. <strong>Website:</strong> <a href="https://naldc.nal.usda.gov/naldc/home.xhtml">https://naldc.nal.usda.gov/naldc/home.xhtml</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)</td>
<td>Provides information on water safety and recommendations for consumption of foods susceptible to contamination from hazardous materials such as mercury or lead. Resources include information on protecting infant and children’s environmental health. Operates EPA Safe Drinking Water Hotline. EPA Safe Drinking Water Hotline: 1-800-426-4791 <strong>Website:</strong> <a href="https://www.epa.gov">https://www.epa.gov</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition</td>
<td>Promotes and protects the public’s health by ensuring that the Nation’s food supply is safe, sanitary, wholesome, and honestly labeled, and that cosmetic products, dietary supplements, bottled water, and infant formula are safe and properly labeled. <strong>Website:</strong> <a href="https://www.fda.gov/AboutFDA/CentersOffices/OfficeofFoods/CFSAN/default.htm">https://www.fda.gov/AboutFDA/CentersOffices/OfficeofFoods/CFSAN/default.htm</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agency/organization</td>
<td>Other resources available and contact information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) – Foodsafety.gov                 | Established as the gateway to food safety information provided by U.S. Government agencies, including USDA, FDA, and CDC. Provides an online portal to ask experts about food safety, to report food poisoning, and to learn up-to-date information on food safety alerts and recalls.  
**Website:** https://www.foodsafety.gov/                                             |
| U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS), Office of Disease Prevention and Health Promotion (ODPHP) – Healthy People | Provides science-based, 10-year national objectives for improving the health of all Americans; publishes goals for maternal, infant, and childhood health, including national targets for breastfeeding every 5 years. Publishes dietary guidelines for Americans.  
**Website:** https://www.healthypeople.gov/2020/topics-objectives                      |
**Website:** https://bookstore.gpo.gov                                                  |
Glossary

A

Acidosis: A condition that comes from overproduction of acid in the blood

AI (adequate intake): An approximation of intake by a group of healthy individuals maintaining a defined nutritional status

Allergic disease/Allergy: Adverse reaction to certain foods. A mild allergic reaction may cause a light rash; a severe allergic reaction could cause suffocation and death

Allergic gastroenteropathy: Any disorder of the stomach and intestines caused by an allergic reaction, usually resulting in diarrhea

Allergic immune reaction: The immune system’s response to a potentially harmful substance. Signs of reaction may include coughing, sneezing, and, in severe cases, difficulty breathing

Ambient temperature: The temperature of the surrounding environment

Amino acids: Various compounds that link together to form proteins. They can be made in the body (nonessential) or obtained from the diet (essential)

Anabolism: Turning simple substances in the body into complex ones

Anaphylaxis: A serious allergic reaction involving multiple parts of the body, which can include swelling of the face and tongue. An injection of the drug epinephrine is needed immediately

Anovulation: Failure of the ovaries to release ova, the female reproductive cells, over a time period of more than 3 months

Anthropometric data: A data collection and screening tool measuring height, weight, and head circumference to identify individuals at nutritional risk

Anthropometry: An immediately applicable technique for assessing the development of an infant through the first years of life

Antioxidant: A substance that inhibits damaging oxidation of food that is stored in the body

ARA and DHA: Arachidonic acid (ARA) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) are major fatty acids found in human milk

Areola: The circular area of pigmented skin surrounding the nipple

Arsenic: An element occurring naturally in rocks and soil and used in industry and agriculture. It is a harmful contaminant that seeps into water and is also present in some foods, including rice, seafood, and mushrooms

Ataxia: The loss of full control of bodily movements

Attachment, or latch-on: The infant’s mouth attaching fully to the mother’s nipple for feeding

Azotemia: A condition caused by improperly functioning kidneys, in which waste products such as urea build up in the blood

B

Baby-led weaning (BLW): Instead of being fed by parents or caregivers, infants feed themselves all their foods, in the form of graspable pieces

Bilirubin: A yellow compound that occurs during the normal bodily process of breaking down and clearing out waste

Bioactive factors: Factors that provide protection from infection, including immunoglobulins, immune system proteins that attack and destroy bacteria and viruses, and the bifidus factor, which promotes the development of intestinal flora

Biochemical data: Data including measurements of hemoglobin and hematocrit levels that help diagnose or confirm an infant’s nutritional deficiencies or excesses

Biosynthesis: Biological production of chemical substances

Body composition: The percentages of muscle, fat, water, and other substances such as mineral components, in the body

Body mass index (BMI): A method for indicating body fat percentage, to help people maintain a healthy weight. It is calculated by the body mass or weight (kg) divided by the square of the body height (m)

Bone deposition: The depositing of calcium to form new bone

Bone resorption: The breakdown and transfer of calcium and other minerals from the bone into the bloodstream

BPA, or Bisphenol A: An industrial chemical used to make certain plastics and resins. It should not be used in infant bottles, as it can seep into the liquid
Breast pump: A manual, electric, or battery-powered pump for expressing milk from the breast for later use.

Breast shell or milk cup: A plastic cup shape with a hole in the center through which the nipple protrudes. It helps relieve sore nipples.

**C**

**Calcium:** A mineral that builds strong bones and teeth and aids in blood clotting and maintaining a healthy nervous system.

**Carbohydrates:** Foods sources of energy that are converted to glucose in the liver.

**Cardiomegaly:** An enlarged heart.

**Carotenoids:** A group of natural pigments with potential health benefits. The group includes vitamin A.

**Casein:** The predominant protein in cow’s milk.

**Celiac disease:** Condition that occurs when gluten, a combination of proteins found in wheat, rye, oats (unless gluten-free), barley, and buckwheat, damages the lining of the small intestine and interferes with absorption of nutrients from food.

**Cheilosis:** Cracked lips, sore throat, and inflamed tongue caused by a deficiency in vitamin B2 (riboflavin).

**Cirrhosis:** Chronic liver damage from a variety of causes, which leads to scarring and liver failure.

**Clinical data:** Data gathered through the infant’s medical chart review, the parent or caregiver interview, and the health care provider referral form, including surgeries, developmental delay, prescriptions, and nutrition-related illness.

**Cluster feed:** Also called “bunch feed,” this is when an infant feeds close together at certain times of the day, most commonly in the evening.

**Coenzyme:** Small molecules that cannot by themselves catalyze a reaction but can help enzymes do so.

**Cognitive development:** Learning ability based on brain tissue development that aids in brain function.

**Colic:** An ailment of unknown cause that manifests in endless, distressed crying in infants. Formula-fed infants seem to experience it more often than breastfed infants.

**Colostrum:** Thick human milk that is secreted during pregnancy and several days after delivery.

**Complementary foods:** Solid foods and beverages that are introduced when an infant is developmentally ready to consume them, around 6 months of age. They include infant cereal, vegetables, fruits, meat, and other protein-rich foods properly prepared.

**Constipation:** Condition in which bowel movements are hard, dry, and difficult to pass.

**Competent professional authority (CPA):** A person on the WIC staff who determines the eligibility of applicants to the WIC program and makes referrals to community resources.

**Copper:** A chemical element that is good for the body in small doses but harmful at levels above 1.3 milligrams per liter of water. Drinking water should be tested for copper levels.

**Corrosive water:** Water with a high level of acid that can eat away at copper pipes, filling drinking water with impurities.

**Costochondral beading:** In children with rickets, beadlike bumps that form where each rib meets its cartilage.

**Cow's milk allergy (CMA):** An allergy to the protein in cow’s milk.

**Cow’s milk-based formula:** The most common infant formulas are made from modified cow's milk with added carbohydrate, vegetable oils, and vitamins and minerals.

**Cradle breastfeeding hold:** The mother’s same-sided arm supports the infant at the breast on which the infant is nursing, with the infant’s chest facing the mother’s chest.

**Cranial bossing:** Enlargement and protrusion of bones in the skull, which can be due to rickets or other disease.

**Cretinism:** A condition of severely stunted physical and mental growth due to untreated deficiency of thyroid hormone usually passed down from the mother.

**Cross-cradle breastfeeding hold:** Nearly the same positioning as the cradle hold, but it supports the infant on the arm opposite the breast being used.

**CRP, or C-reactive protein:** The body’s marker for inflammation and potential heart disease: the higher the concentration of CRP, the more likely is heart disease.

**Cryptosporidiosis:** Illness caused by the parasite Cryptosporidium, which lives in the intestines of humans or animals and passes into water through their feces, and which is a danger to infants.

**Cyanocobalamin:** Man-made form of vitamin B12 used to prevent and treat low blood levels of this vitamin.
**Cyanosis:** Blue discoloration due to lack of oxygen

**Dehydration:** Effect on the body when too little water is consumed or water is lost through illness. If not treated, it can lead to death

**Dental caries:** Tooth decay or cavities resulting from the complex interaction of foods, especially starches and sugars, with saliva and mouth bacteria to form acids and dental plaque that cause teeth to decay

**Dental plaque:** The sticky, colorless material that accumulates around and between the teeth and gums and in the pits and grooves of the chewing surfaces of the teeth. It holds bacteria and the acids it produces on the tooth surface. These in turn cause decay

**Diabetes:** A condition in which the body does not produce or respond to insulin properly. This results in poor processing of carbohydrates and an overload of glucose in the system. There are two kinds: type 1 and type 2

**Dietary Reference Intakes (DRIs):** Four nutrient-based reference values intended for planning and assessing diets: estimated average requirement (EAR); recommended dietary allowance (RDA); adequate intake (AI); tolerable upper intake level (UL)

**Disaccharides (double sugars):** A category of carbohydrate that includes sucrose, lactose, and maltose

**Dyad:** The mother and infant unit

**Dyspnea:** Shortness of breath

**E**

**EAR (estimated average requirement):** The median usual intake that is estimated to meet the requirement of 50 percent of the healthy population for age and gender

**EER (estimated energy requirement):** The level of physical activity consistent with normal development

**Endemic goiter:** A type of goiter—unusual growth of the thyroid gland—linked to iodine deficiency

**Engorgement:** The painful overfilling and edema of the breasts in the first few weeks of breastfeeding, which usually subsides after the third week

**Enterocolitis:** Inflammation of the gastrointestinal tract

**Enteropathy:** Any condition or disease that keeps the gastrointestinal tract from functioning normally

**Epiphyseal enlargement:** Enlargement at the end of bones where growth takes place in children, due to lack of vitamin D

**Epithelial cells:** Cells that line the inside of the mouth, esophagus, and rectum

**Escherichia coli O157:H7 (E. coli):** While most types of E. coli are harmless, this strain produces a toxin that can cause severe bloody diarrhea and abdominal cramps

**Exotosis:** Formation of new bone on the surface of existing bone, which can cause pain

**Express:** To force milk out of the breast. Expression may occur through an infant’s sucking or through the mother’s pumping of the breast

**Failure to thrive:** Insufficient weight gain or insufficient rate of weight gain expected for age and gender

**Feeding relationship:** The social skills used between the parent and infant that include appropriate food selection, supportive feeding techniques, appropriate caloric intake, and attention to infant cues and behavior

**Fine motor skills:** Movement and coordination of smaller body parts—e.g., wrists, hands, and fingers—allowing ability to pick up objects between the thumb and finger

**Flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD):** A protein involved in several important enzymatic reactions during metabolism

**Flavin mononucleotide (FMN):** A strong oxidizing agent produced from vitamin B2 (riboflavin) by the enzyme riboflavin kinase

**Fluoride:** A mineral that decreases the potential for teeth to decay

**Fluorosis:** Also called mottled enamel, the teeth turn brownish from intake of too much fluoride while the enamel is forming

**Follicular hyperkeratosis:** A skin condition characterized by overdevelopment of keratin in hair follicles, which results in whitish bumps on the upper arms and thighs

**Football or clutch breastfeeding hold:** The infant’s torso is held on the side of the mother’s body with the infant’s feet and body tucked under the mother’s arm. The mother’s forearm supports the infant’s back and head
Foremilk: The milk available at the start of a feeding

Fruit juice, 100 percent pasteurized: The FDA mandates that a product must contain 100 percent fruit juice in order to be labeled as such. If a beverage contains less than 100 percent fruit juice, its label must display a descriptive term, such as “drink,” “beverage,” or “cocktail.” Pasteurization rids the juice of harmful bacteria

G

Gag reflex: Reflex at the back of the mouth that keeps the infant from swallowing inappropriate foods that could cause choking

Galactosemia: A rare genetic metabolic disorder that affects an individual’s ability to metabolize galactose (a sugar) in the body. If untreated, this disorder can lead to low blood sugar, vomiting, diarrhea, lethargy, brain damage, and death

Gastroesophageal reflux (GER): Spontaneous, effortless regurgitation of material from the stomach into the esophagus

Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD): Infants with severe GER can develop GERD, which includes wheezing and recurrent pneumonia or upper respiratory infections

Genetically engineered (GE): Products that are made with genetic modifications to enhance nutritional value; they are tested for safety

Genetically modified organisms (GMOs): Products whose makeup is modified for nutritional purposes; they are tested for safety

Glucose: The most abundant carbohydrate, metabolized for energy in the body

Glossitis: Inflammation of the tongue. The condition causes the tongue to swell, change in color, and develop a smooth appearance on the surface

Grasping reflex: Reflex that occurs when an infant’s palm is touched. The infant immediately grasps the object touching it. Also called the palmar grasp

Gross motor skills: Movement and coordination of large body parts—e.g., arms and legs—allowing trunk stability for standing, walking, and running

H

Hematocrit: The percentage of blood that consists of packed red blood cells

Hemochromatosis: A disease in which too much iron builds up in the body and becomes toxic

Hemoglobin: The iron-containing, oxygen-carrying protein in the blood

Hemolytic anemia: A condition in which red blood cells are destroyed and removed from the bloodstream before their normal life span is over

Hemorrhagic manifestations: Effects on the body when a sudden fever attacks the system

Hemosiderosis: An iron overload disorder in the body that can be the result of a hemorrhage within an organ

Hindmilk: The fat-rich milk available later in the feeding

Homeostasis: The body’s regulation of certain processes and elements to ensure that they remain stable, such as body temperature and levels of sodium and potassium

Hunger and satiety cues: Clusters of cues given by an infant that tell a parent or caregiver when the infant is hungry or satisfied. These include clenching hands, rooting, and making sucking noises

Hyperammonemia: A dangerous condition characterized by too much ammonia in the blood

Hypercalcemia: A condition in which the calcium level in the blood is above normal; it can weaken the bones

Hyperpigmentation: A skin condition in which some parts of the skin grow darker than the rest because of an excess of brown pigmentation called melanin

Hypersensitivity: Also called allergy, this is an adverse health effect, such as nausea or wheezing, arising from a specific immune response to an allergen

Hyperuricemia: An excess of uric acid in the blood

Hypoallergenic infant formula: Formula in which the allergy-causing protein has been modified

Hypochromic microcytic anemia: Red blood cells that are smaller than normal and poorly filled with hemoglobin, either caused by iron deficiency or by impaired production of hemoglobin

Hypogonadism: Diminished function of the gonads—the testes in males or the ovaries in females

Hyporeflexia and hyperreflexia: Hyporeflexia is a condition of below normal or absent reflexes. It can be tested for by using a reflex hammer. Hyperreflexia is the opposite condition—overactive reflexes
**Lactose intolerance**: Condition caused by a lack of lactase, the intestinal enzyme that digests lactose, the sugar in milk

**Laid-back hold**: The mother lies in a slightly reclining position with the infant on top of the mother, with full skin-to-skin contact and with the infant’s face near the mother’s breasts

**Latch-on**: Refers to how the infant attaches onto the breast while breastfeeding

**Lead**: A poisonous metal that can accumulate in the body and cause brain, nerve, and kidney damage, anemia, and even death. It can be present in drinking water, and household water supplies should be tested for it

**Lipids**: Fats that are essential to the diet to maintain good health. The three categories are triglycerides, phospholipids, and sterols

**Lying down or side-lying breastfeeding hold**: The mother lies on her side. The infant lies on his or her side facing the mother with his or her chest to the mother’s chest and with his or her mouth level with the nipple

**Macronutrients**: Macronutrients are nutrients needed in large amounts for energy provision and other bodily functions. They include carbohydrate, proteins, and lipids, or fats

**Mastitis**: Breast infection that may come from feeding too infrequently and allowing breasts to engorge. Includes breast tenderness, yellowish nipple discharge, and flu-like symptoms

**MCL**: Maximum contaminant level. This is the highest level of a contaminant that is allowed in drinking water

**Megaloblastic anemia**: Anemia resulting from inhibition of DNA synthesis during red blood cell production

**Mercury**: A naturally occurring element that can contaminate water and food when released into the environment; it also occurs in man-made products. Drinking water should be tested for mercury, and fish should be chosen carefully to ensure low mercury content

**Metabolic infant formulas**: Special infant formulas for infants born with metabolic disorders such as phenylketonuria (PKU) and maple syrup urine disease (MSUD)
Nucleotides: Metabolically important compounds that are the building blocks of ribonucleic acid (RNA), deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), and adenosine triphosphate (ATP)

Nutritive sucking: Synchronous movement of lips, cheeks, tongue, and palate that results in bringing human milk/formula into the mouth

Obesity: A condition of serious overweight that sets up an infant for future medical conditions including diabetes and heart disease

Omega-3 fatty acids: A healthy kind of fat found in fish

Oral skills: Movement and coordination of the lips, cheeks, tongue, and palate that allows milk to be extracted from the breast or bottle (sucking) and to make safe transport through the mouth into the stomach (swallowing)

Osmotic pressure: The force exerted by a dissolved substance on a membrane it cannot penetrate

Overdiluted: Containing too much water. Overdiluted infant formula may lead to nutrient deficiencies

Over-the-counter (OTC) drugs: Pharmacological items that can be purchased without a doctor’s prescription

Overweight: A condition of gaining too much weight, often due to overeating and too little exercise. It leads to obesity and lifelong health problems including heart disease and diabetes

Oxytocin: A hormone that plays a role in bonding between mother and infant during and after childbirth

Phenylketonuria (PKU): An inherited metabolic disorder caused by an enzyme deficiency resulting in an accumulation of phenylalanine and its metabolites in the blood. If untreated, this disorder can lead to mental retardation and seizures

Phospholipid: A lipid containing a phosphate group in its molecule, such as lecithin

Photophobia: Discomfort or pain to the eyes due to light exposure or because of actual physical sensitivity of the eyes

Physical activity: Any bodily movement produced by the contraction of skeletal muscles that increases energy expenditure to enhance health and maintain healthy body weight
Physiologic effect: The promotion of the human body’s normal functioning

Polysaccharides (complex carbohydrates): A category of carbohydrate that includes starch, dextrins, and glycogen

Postpartum: The period after the infant is born

Prebiotics: Nutrients that support the growth of “good” bacteria in the intestine

Primary teeth: An infant’s first teeth, which begin forming in the jawbone before birth

Probiotics: Nonpathogenic bacteria, including bifidobacteria and lactobacilli

Protective immune response: The body’s ability to recognize and fight or destroy harmful substances

Protein: A nutrient that builds, maintains, and repairs new tissues, including tissues of the skin, eyes, muscles, heart, lungs, brain, and other organs

Prothrombin: A protein in blood plasma that helps blood coagulate

Pyloric stenosis: Thickening of the muscle at the stomach exit that prevents food from passing into the intestines and causes projectile vomiting after every feeding

R

RDA (recommended dietary allowance): The average dietary intake level sufficient to meet the nutrient requirement of nearly all (97 to 98 percent of) healthy individuals

REA (recommended energy allowance): The level of energy intake an individual requires to maintain a healthy weight at a reasonable level of activity

Reflex: A muscle reaction that happens automatically in response to stimulation. Certain sensations or movements produce specific muscle responses

Relactation: Also called “induced lactation,” this is the process of a mother restarting her milk supply after she has weaned and her milk has dried up. The term can also be applied to a mother who has never nursed or to a nonbirth mother who wishes to develop a milk supply

Rooting reflex: A reflex that prompts an infant to turn the head toward the mother or caregiver’s hand or nipple when the infant’s oral area is stroked

Rotavirus: The most common cause of severe diarrhea among infants and children worldwide

S

SIDS, or sudden infant death syndrome: The death of a healthy infant from the apparent cessation of breathing

Sleeping through the night: Researchers use midnight to 5 a.m. as the standard definition; however, parents and caregivers may consider it to be different

Social skills: The series of supportive behavioral interactions between parents or caregivers and infants that results in effective feeding and a healthy nutritional status

Sodium: Also called salt; a mineral that helps maintain balance in bodily systems

Solo playtime: When an infant plays alone in a safe environment with a parent or caregiver supervising nearby but not directly interacting. This should not include solo media use, such as allowing an infant to watch television

Spinocerebellar: Fibers in the spinal cord that run to the brain’s cerebellum and give information about the body’s muscles

Stepping reflex: The first sign of an infant’s ability to walk: when supported under the arms and with feet flat on the floor, the infant begins to take imaginary steps

Sucking/swallowing reflex: A reflex present before birth that allows a newborn infant to automatically suck a nipple put in his or her mouth, then to swallow the liquid ingested

Sugar alcohols: A category of carbohydrate that includes sorbitol and mannitol

T

Tachycardia: An elevated heart rate

T-cell lymphocytes: A type of white blood cell that is an essential part of the immune system

Teething: The uncomfortable period for an infant when the teeth first begin to erupt, accompanied by discomfort and drooling

Thrush: Infection in which the nipple becomes sore and cracked

Tongue thrust reflex: A reflex that causes the infant’s tongue to stick out when something touches the infant’s lips
**Tonic neck reflex:** Also called “fencing” posture, the infant’s head turns to one side. The arm on that side will straighten and the opposite arm will bend, as if the infant is fencing.

**Tummy time:** Playtime for infants when they are laid on their tummies and can kick, look around, and reach for objects to help enhance motor skills and awareness.

**U**

**UL (tolerable upper intake level):** The highest level of ongoing daily intake of a nutrient that is estimated to pose no risk in the majority of the population.

**Underdiluted:** Containing too little water. Underdiluted infant formula can burden an infant’s kidneys.

**Uterine involution:** The return of the uterus to its normal, pre-pregnancy size.

**V**

**Value Enhanced Nutrition Assessment (VENA):** Comprehensive nutrition assessment that includes steps from the WIC Nutrition Assessment and additional steps to set the stage for the infant’s future care.

**Vasodilating:** The dilation, or widening, of blood vessels, which decreases blood pressure.

**Vegan diet:** A total vegetarian diet that includes plant foods only; it excludes any foods from animal sources, such as dairy products, gelatin, and honey.

**Vegetarian diet:** Includes primarily plant foods. Lacto-vegetarian diet includes dairy products except for eggs; lacto-ovo-vegetarian diet includes eggs; semi-vegetarian diet includes some fish and meat.

**Vitamins:** Essential organic compounds vital for healthy bodily functions. There are two categories: water-soluble, which dissolve in water and are not stored in the body, and fat-soluble, which dissolve in fats and oils and are stored in the body.

**W**

**Weaning:** Making an infant accustomed to food other than human milk.

**WIC Infant Formula Calculator:** A web-based tool developed to help WIC staff determine the amount of infant formula that can be issued to parents and caregivers, consistent with WIC regulations.

**WIC NSS:** WIC Nutrition Services Standards; intended to assist State and local agencies in providing ongoing high-quality nutrition services.

**WIC nutrition assessment:** Made by the CPA to determine a program for mothers for their optimal infant care and nutrition.

**X**

**Xanthine oxidase:** A type of enzyme that plays an important part in energy release in humans.

**Z**

**Zinc:** An essential mineral needed in the human body that works with proteins in every organ.
Bibliography

Authors


Food and Drug Administration Department of Health and Human Services, Electronic Code of Federal Regulations 21 (2016), chapter 1,


Website Content


Acknowledgments


We would like to acknowledge and express our appreciation to the United States Department of Agriculture, Food and Nutrition Service staff who reviewed this *Guide* and provided valuable comments:

Anne Bartholomew, MS, RD  
Cheryl Funanich, MEd, RD  
Marta Kealey, MS  
Melanie Haake, MPH, RD  
Olivia Newman, MPH, RD  
Pascasie Adedze, PhD, MPH  
Patti McMahon, MPH, RD  
Patricia MacNeil, MS  
Valery Soto, MS, RD, CLC  
Donna Johnson-Bailey, MS  
Kristin R. Garcia, MPH, REHS  
Lisa Mays, MPH, RD  
Tina Hanes, RD, RN  
Usha Kalro, MS, RD

We also thank Elizabeth Brownell, MD, Jessica Lazerov, MD, and Donna Parsons, MS, RD, SNS, for their contributions to this new edition.

In addition, we would like to express our appreciation to:


Norman Tinanoff, DDS, MS, for providing the images demonstrating early childhood caries on page 156.

The Texas WIC Program for providing images of WIC staff and participants on page 59.

Barbara Brownell Grogan, Kristin Hanneman, Jane Sunderland, and Carol Norton, who provided editorial services for the *Guide*. 


Index

Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics (AND), 225

Adequate intake (AI)
  alpha-linolenic acid, 9
calcium, 17, 18
carbohydrates, 7
copper, 17
definition of, 4
fat, 6
fluoride, 17, 21
iodine, 17
iron, 18, 19
linoleic acid, 6, 97
lipids, 9, 10
magnesium, 17
manganese, 17
phosphorus, 17
protein, 7–9
selenium, 17
sodium, 17, 21
vitamin A, 11
vitamin B1, 13
vitamin B2, 14
vitamin B3, 14
vitamin B6, 15, 16
vitamin B9, 15
vitamin B12, 15, 16
vitamin C, 14, 16, 18
vitamin D, 11, 12
vitamin E, 10, 12
vitamin K, 10, 12, 13
water, 22
zinc, 17, 20

Adult cereals, 135, 136

Adult juices, 131

Alcohol
  breastfeeding and, 79–80, 83
teething and, 153

Allergies/allergic diseases
  allergic immune reactions, 119
anaphylaxis, 119
breastfeeding and, 49
food allergies
  complementary foods, 116, 119, 1297
cow’s milk, 94, 95
eggs, 127, 201
hypoallergenic formulas, 96
IgE-mediated reactions, 95
non-IgE-mediated reactions, 95
peanuts, 119
soy allergies, 96

Alpha-linolenic acid (ALA), 9

American Academy of Pediatric Dentistry (AAPD), 225
American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP), 225
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 225
American Congress of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 225
American Heart Association (AHA), 225
American Red Cross (ARC), 225

Amino acids, 8

Anaphylaxis, 119

Anthropometric data, 2

Arachidonic acid (ARA), 9, 97–98

Artificial sweeteners
  beverages, 132
  safety with, 135

Ascorbic acid (vitamin C)
  deficiency, 18, 24
  dietary reference intake, 14
  functions, 18, 24
  lead poisoning and, 205
  sources, 16, 18, 24
  toxicity, 24

Baby-led weaning (BLW), 123

Beans, 128, 196

Bed sharing, 168

Beverages
  alcoholic beverages, 79–80
  artificially sweetened beverages, 132
  breastfeeding and, 79–81
  caffeinated beverages, 81, 132
  cups and, 142
  dehydration, 131
  fruit juice, 131–132
  herbal teas, 81, 132
  sippy cups, 142, 131
  sweetened beverages, 132–133
  water
    arsenic, 202–204
    bottled water, 200
    copper, 202
    Cryptosporidium, 201
    E. coli, 201
    functions, 22
    home treatment units, 200
    introducing, 130
    lead, 202–204
    mercury, 204–205, 207
    nitrate, 205, 206
    rotavirus, 201
    sources, 26
    supply safety, 198–199
    testing, 207

well water contaminants, 199

Bioactive factors, in human milk, 6, 48

Biochemical data, 2

Bonding
  bottle-feeding and, 101
  breastfeeding and, 49–50, 51

Bone deposition, 18

Bone resorption, 18

Bottle-feeding
  air intake, 161
  bonding, 101
  bottle cleaning, 104
  breastfeeding interruption and, 76–77
  complementary bottles, 72

concerns
  choking, 102
  colds, 103
  colic, 103
  dehydration, 102
  diarrhea, 102
  dry stools, 103
  ear infections, 103
  excessive gas, 103
  GERD, 95
  hiccups, 101
  hives, 103
  rashes, 103
  splitting up, 102
  vomiting, 102

consumption amounts, 103
  guidelines, 100–101
  hunger cues, 38–39, 98
  nipple size, 101
  propping the bottle, 101
  satiety cues, 38–39, 98
  weaning to, 75
  weight gain, 42

Bowel movements
  breastfeeding and, 63
  constipation, 162–163
  counting, 63
  dehydration, 102
  dry stools, 103

Brain
  cognitive development, 49
  human milk supply and, 55–56
  media use and, 184, 186
  physical activity and, 182–183
  sleep and, 168
  vitamin K deficiency, 13
Breastfeeding
accessories, 67
alcohol consumption, 79–80
attachment, 58–60
bioactive factors, 6
bonding and, 49–51
bottle-feeding with, 75–76
bowel movements and, 63
breasts
breast care, 62
fullness, 61
inverted nipples, 66
latching on, 59
piercings, 76–77
surgery, 76–77
breast pumps, 64–65, 67
breast shells, 66
caffeine, 80–81
childcare and, 73
colostrum, 6
comfort and, 56
coming off the breast, 60
complementary foods and, 119
concerns
appetite spurts, 70
biting, 72
complementary bottles, 72
eyearly weaning, 72
engorgement, 66–69, 72
flat nipples, 66
growth spurts, 70
jaundice, 70
mastitis, 69
pacifiers, 72
plugged milk ducts, 69
poor suckling, 70
refusing to breastfeed, 71
sleeping through the night, 72
slow weight gain, 71
sore nipples, 66
tething, 71
consumption indicators, 62
continuing factors, 51
contraindications
infectious diseases, 76
metabolic disorders, 76
pharmacological therapy, 76
dental caries and, 155
duration, 60–61
dyad assessment, 54
dyad support, 52
economic benefits, 50
frequency, 60–61
health benefits for infant
allergic diseases, 48, 49
asthma, 49
cardiovascular disease, 49
cognitive development, 49
dental abnormalities, 49
diabetes, 49
disease resistance, 48–49
immunoglobulins, 48
infection resistance, 49
leukemia, 49
obesity, 49
skin-to-skin contact, 49–50
sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS), 49
health benefits for mother
cancer, 50
cardiovascular disease, 50
diabetes, 50
immediate benefits, 50–51
obesity, 50
herbal teas, 81
herbal therapies, 81
human milk
carbohydrates, 7
characteristics, 52–53
cholesterol, 9
colostrum, 6, 52–53
expressing, 63–65, 68, 73–74
first milk, 52–53
flight rules, 74
freezing, 65
iron, 19
jaundice, 70
mature milk, 53
safety, 65, 204
storage, 65, 68, 73
supply decrease, 63
supply increase, 63
supply maintenance, 53–55
thawing, 66
warming, 66
WIC Works Resource System
guidelines, 219
hunger cues, 38–39, 60
illicit drugs and, 82
initiating, 51–52, 59
iron and, 19, 125
latching on, 59
Breastfeeding Support, 51
milk cups, 73
milk let-down reflex, 50
nipples
flat nipples, 66
inverted nipples, 66
mastitis, 59
nipple shields, 48
piercings, 76–77
rooting reflex and, 34
sore nipples, 66
obesity and, 166
over-the-counter (OTC) drugs, 82
physiological effects, 6
piercings, 76–77
positions
across the lap, 57
craddle hold, 57–58
cradle hold, 57–58
football hold, 58
laid-back hold, 58
lying down, 57
side-lying, 57
prescription drugs and, 82
public feedings, 56
recommendations, 47–48
recreational drugs and, 82
relactation, 75, 98
satiety cues, 38–39, 60
smoking
cigarettes, 77–78
e-cigarettes, 78
marijuana, 79
vaping, 78
social benefits, 50
supply maintenance, 73
support for, 52
surgery, 76–79
time away and, 73–75
waking to feed, 61
weaning
to bottle, 75
to cup, 75
gradual approach, 75
recommendations, 75
relactation, 75
workplace rights, 74
zinc and, 125

Caffeine
beverages, 132
breastfeeding and, 80–81
Calcium
bone deposition, 18
bone resorption, 18
deficiency, 18, 25
dietary reference intake, 17
function, 18, 25
lead poisoning and, 18, 202
sources, 16, 18, 25
toxicity, 25
allergies to, 95, 96
cow's milk-based infant formula, 93
formula, 93–94
safety with, 108, 129, 135
Crawling, 183
Cross-contamination, 198
Cryptosporidium, 201
Cups, 142

Dehydration, 102, 131, 164
Dental health. See Oral health.
Desserts, 136
Development
breastfeeding and, 49–50
complementary foods and, 116–117
feeding skills
developmental delays and, 43, 116–117
fine motor skills, 35–37
grasping reflexes, 37
gross motor skills, 35–37
hunger cues, 38–40
oral skills, 33, 35
rate of development, 38
reflexive responses, 37
satiety cues, 38–39
milestones, 182
oral health
breastfeeding and, 49
caries, 152–155
decay recognition, 154
dentists, 155–156
oral care, 155
teeth, 153, 153
tooth decay, 152–153
tooth development, 151–152
physical activity and, 180–182
reflexes
gag reflex, 35
grasping reflexes, 37
milk let-down reflex, 50
Moro reflex, 37
rooting reflex, 34
stepping reflex, 37
tongue thrust reflex, 35
tonic neck reflex, 37–38
skills guidelines, 221

Diabetes, breastfeeding and, 49, 51
Diapers, tracking, 64
Diarrhea
definition of, 162
dehydration and, 103
causes of, 162, 164
formula feeding and, 103
viruses and, 164

Dietary Reference Intake (DRI)
fat-soluble vitamins, 10
macronutrients, 6
minerals, 17
overview of, 3–4
water-soluble vitamins, 14

Disaccharides (double sugars), 7
Docosahexaenoic acid (DHA), 9, 97

Ear infections, 103
Early childhood caries, 154
E-cigarettes, breastfeeding and, 78
E. coli, 201
Eggs, 127, 196
Electronics, 166, 184–186

Energy, 4–5, 156, 165

Essential amino acids, 8

Estimated average requirement (EAR)
calcium, 17
carbohydrate, 6
copper, 17
definition, 3
iodine, 17
iron, 17
magnesium, 17
phosphorus, 17
protein, 6
selenium, 17
vitamin A, 10
vitamin B1, 14
vitamin B2, 14
vitamin B3, 14
vitamin B6, 14
vitamin B9, 14
vitamin B12, 14
vitamin C, 14
vitamin D, 10
vitamin E, 10
zinc, 17

Estimated energy requirement (EER), 4

Fats
alpha-linolenic acid (ALA), 6, 9
cholesterol, 9
deficiency, 10, 24
functions, 9, 23
linoleic acid (LA), 9
sources, 10, 23

Fat-soluble vitamins
vitamin A
deficiency, 11, 23
dietary reference intake, 10
functions, 11, 23
sources, 11, 16, 23
toxicity, 23
vegetarian diets, 157
vitamin D
deficiency, 12, 23
dietary reference intake, 10
functions, 11, 23
sources, 11–12, 16, 23
toxicity, 23
vegetarian diets, 157
vitamin E
deficiency, 12, 24
dietary reference intake, 10
functions, 12, 24
sources, 12, 16, 24
toxicity, 24

Feeding relationship, 39, 41–42
Feeding skills
developmental delays and, 43, 116
fine motor skills, 35–37
grasping reflexes, 37
gross motor skills, 35–37
hunger cues, 38–39
oral skills
gag reflex, 35
rooting reflex, 34
sucking/swallowing reflex, 34, 36
tongue thrust reflex, 35
rate of development, 38
reflexive responses, 37
satiety cues, 38–39

“Fencing posture.” See Tonic neck reflex.

Fine motor skills, 35–37
Finger foods, 135
Fish
benefits of, 127
introducing, 126–127
mercury contamination, 204
preparation, 126, 194–195
risks of, 127

Fluoride
deficiency, 21, 26
dietary reference intake, 10
formula and, 105–106
function, 26
sources, 22, 26
toxicity, 21–22, 26

Folate (vitamin B9)
deficiency, 15, 24
dietary reference intake, 14
functions, 15, 24
sources, 15, 16, 24
toxicity, 24
Food allergies
complementary foods, 116, 119, 127
Food and Nutrition Service (FNS), 227

Food safety
- commercially prepared foods, 197, 223
- cross-contamination, 198
- Cryptosporidium, 201
- E. coli, 201
- fish, 194–196, 204
- formula, 193, 223
- fruits, 196–197
- hand sanitizers, 192
- handwashing, 191–192
- home-prepared foods, 194–197, 224
- human milk, 193, 224
- kitchen cleaning, 192
- lead exposure, 204
- meat, 194–195
- poultry, 194–195
- preparation
  - beans, 196
  - commercial infant foods, 197
  - doneness, 195
  - egg-rich foods, 196
  - eggs, 196
  - fish, 194–196
  - fruits, 196–197
  - grain products, 194
  - home-prepared foods, 194–197
  - legumes, 196
  - meats, 194–195
  - peas, 196
  - poultry, 194–196
  - temperatures, 195
  - tofu, 196
  - vegetables, 196–197
- rotavirus, 201–202
- storage
  - beans, 196
  - commercial infant foods, 197–198
  - egg-rich foods, 196
  - eggs, 196
  - fish, 194–195
  - fruits, 196–197
  - grain products, 194
  - home-prepared foods, 194–197
  - legumes, 196
- meat, 194–195
- peas, 196
- poultry, 194–196
- tofu, 196
- vegetables, 196–197
- vegetables, 205, 209
- water
  - arsenic, 202–203
  - bottled water, 200
  - copper, 202
  - home treatment units, 200
  - lead, 202–203
  - mercury, 204–205
  - nitrate, 205–208
  - supply safety, 198–199
  - system contamination, 199
  - testing, 207
  - well water, 199, 202
- WIC Works Resource System guidelines, 203–204

Food Safety and Inspection Service (FSIS), 227

Formula feeding
- additives
  - arachidonic acid (ARA), 97
  - carotenoids, 97
  - docosahexaenoic acid (DHA), 97
  - nucleotides, 98
  - prebiotics, 98
  - probiotics, 98
  - air intake, 161
  - bottle cleaning, 104
  - breastfeeding interruption and, 73–76
- complementary bottles, 72
- concerns
  - choking, 101
  - colds, 103
  - colic, 103
  - dehydration, 102
  - diarrhea, 102
  - dry stools, 103
  - ear infections, 103
  - excessive gas, 103
  - GERD, 102
  - hiccups, 101
  - hives, 103
  - rashes, 103
  - spitting up, 102
  - vomiting, 102
  - consumption amounts, 103
- cow’s milk–based formula, 93–94, 96
- fluoride and, 105–106
- frequency of, 99–100

Guidelines, 100–101
- hunger cues, 98
- hypoallergenic, 95
- iron-fortified, 19, 94
- kosher formulas, 97
- labels, 98
- lactose-free formula, 96
- lactose-reduced formula, 96
- limited appliance access and, 107
- low-iron, 94
- medical conditions and, 97
- metabolic formulas, 97
- modular formulas, 97
- natural disasters and, 107
- nipple size, 101
- overdiluted formula, 106
- power outages and, 107–108
- preparation, 104–106
- propping the bottle, 101
- safety, 106, 205–206
- satiety cues, 99
- selection, 103–104
- soy-based, 94–95, 96, 158
- storage, 105
- traveling with, 107
- underdiluted formula, 106
- warming, 106
- weaning from, 108
- weaning to, 75
- weight gain, 49

WIC Infant Formula Calculator, 100
WIC Works Resource System guidelines, 223

Fried foods, 136

Fruit juice
- adult fruit juice, 131–132
- introducing, 130–132
- unpasteurized, 132

Fruits
- choking hazards, 122
- feeding guidelines, 138
- fruitarian diet, 156
- introducing, 129
- preparation, 130
- selection, 130, 196
- storing, 196

Gag reflex, 35

Gas, 103

Gastrointestinal problems
- colic
  - care for, 103, 163
  - formula feeding and, 103
  - overview of, 103, 163
  - constipation, 103, 162
Juices
adult fruit juice, 131–132
introducing, 130–132
unpasteurized, 132

Kitchen equipment, 139, 194

Lacto-ovo-vegetarian diet, 156
Lactose-free formulas, 96
Lactose intolerance, 96, 120
Lactose-reduced formulas, 96
Lacto-vegetarian diet, 156
La Leche League International (LLLI), 226
Lead, 202–204
Lead poisoning
avoiding, 20, 206
calcium and, 18
zinc and, 21

Legumes
introducing, 128
preparation, 128, 196
selection, 128

Leukemia, breastfeeding and, 49

Linoleic acid (LA), 6, 9

Lipids
alpha-linolenic acid (ALA), 6, 9
cholesterol, 9
deficiency, 10, 24
functions, 9, 24
linoleic acid (LA), 6, 9
sources, 10, 24

Long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids (LCPUFAs), 9, 49, 97

“Breastfeeding Support,” 52, 229

Low-iron infant formula, 94

Macrobiotic diet, 156

Macronutrients
carbohydrates
deficiency, 7, 23
dental caries, 152, 154
functions, 7, 23
lactose, 98
sources, 7, 23, 128, 129
disaccharides (double sugars), 7
fiber, 7
functions, 7, 24
indigestible complex carbohydrates (dietary fiber), 7
monosaccharides (simple sugars), 7
polysaccharides (complex carbohydrates), 7
dietary reference intake, 6
INFANT NUTRITION AND FEEDING

MFP factor, 19
Micronutrients. See Minerals; Vitamins.

Milk let-down reflex, 50
Minerals
calcium
  bone deposition, 18
  bone resorption, 18
  deficiency, 19, 25
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 18, 25
  lead poisoning and, 18, 202
  sources, 16, 18, 25
  toxicity, 25
  vegetarian diets, 159
chloride
  deficiency, 26
  function, 26
  sources, 26
  toxicity, 26
copper
  contamination, 202
  deficiency, 26
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 26
  sources, 26
  toxicity, 26
fluoride
  deficiency, 21, 26
  dietary reference intake, 17
  formula and, 104–105
  function, 26
  sources, 21, 26
  toxicity, 21, 26
iodine
  deficiency, 26
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 26
  sources, 26
  toxicity, 21, 26
iron
  breastfeeding and, 19, 125
  deficiency, 19, 25
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 18, 25
  lead contamination and, 202
  heme iron, 19
  iron-fortified cereal, 124, 136
  iron-fortified formula, 94
lead poisoning and, 202–203
low-iron formula, 94
nonheme iron, 19
requirements, 18–19
sources, 19, 25
toxicity, 25
vegetarian diets, 159
magnesium
  deficiency, 26
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 26
  sources, 26
  toxicity, 26
manganese
  deficiency, 26
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 26
  sources, 26
  toxicity, 26
molybdenum
  deficiency, 27
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 27
  sources, 27
  toxicity, 27
phosphorus
  deficiency, 27
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 27
  sources, 27
  toxicity, 27
potassium
  deficiency, 27
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 27
  sources, 27
  toxicity, 27
selenium
  deficiency, 27
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 27
  sources, 27
  toxicity, 27
sodium
  commercially prepared foods, 136
  deficiency, 22, 27
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 22, 27
  sources, 22, 27
  toxicity, 27
supplements, 22
zinc
  breastfeeding and, 125
  deficiency, 21, 26
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 20–21, 26

Magnesium
deficiency, 26
dietary reference intake, 17
function, 26
sources, 26
toxicity, 26

Manganese
deficiency, 26
dietary reference intake, 17
function, 26
sources, 26
toxicity, 26

Marijuana, breastfeeding and, 77–79, 82

Meats
cross-contamination, 195
introducing, 126–127
preparation, 126, 205
processed meats, 136–137
temperatures, 194–195

Media, 166, 184–186

Medicaid, 225

Medicare, 225

Mercury, 204–205, 207

Metabolic Formulas, 97

Methemoglobinemia, 136, 203, 206

sources, 7, 24
sugar alcohols, 7
dietary reference intake, 6
energy and, 4
introduction to, 5

lipsids
alpha-linolenic acid (ALA), 6, 9
cholesterol, 9
deficiency, 10
functions, 9
linoleic acid (LA), 6, 9
sources, 10

protein
cheese, 127
deficiency, 9, 24
dietary reference intake, 6, 7–8
eggs, 127
essential amino acids, 8
fish, 126–127
functions, 8, 24
legumes, 130
meats, 126–127
nonessential amino acids, 8
poultry, 126–127
sources, 8–9, 24
tofu, 128
toxicity, 24
vegetarian diets, 157
yogurt, 127

Milk let-down reflex, 50

Minerals
calcium
  bone deposition, 18
  bone resorption, 18
  deficiency, 19, 25
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 18, 25
  lead poisoning and, 18, 202
  sources, 16, 18, 25
  toxicity, 25
  vegetarian diets, 159

chloride
  deficiency, 26
  function, 26
  sources, 26
  toxicity, 26

copper
  contamination, 202
  deficiency, 26
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 26
  sources, 26
  toxicity, 26

fluoride
  deficiency, 21, 26
  dietary reference intake, 17
  formula and, 104–105
  function, 26
  sources, 21, 26
  toxicity, 21, 26

iodine
  deficiency, 26
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 26
  sources, 26
  toxicity, 21, 26

iron
  breastfeeding and, 19, 125
  deficiency, 19, 25
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 18, 25
  lead contamination and, 202
  heme iron, 19
  iron-fortified cereal, 124, 136
  iron-fortified formula, 94
lead poisoning and, 202–203
low-iron formula, 94
nonheme iron, 19
requirements, 18–19
sources, 19, 25
toxicity, 25
vegetarian diets, 159

magnesium
  deficiency, 26
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 26
  sources, 26
  toxicity, 26

manganese
  deficiency, 26
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 26
  sources, 26
  toxicity, 26

molybdenum
  deficiency, 27
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 27
  sources, 27
  toxicity, 27

phosphorus
  deficiency, 27
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 27
  sources, 27
  toxicity, 27

potassium
  deficiency, 27
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 27
  sources, 27
  toxicity, 27

selenium
  deficiency, 27
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 27
  sources, 27
  toxicity, 27

sodium
  commercially prepared foods, 136
  deficiency, 22, 27
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 22, 27
  sources, 22, 27
  toxicity, 27
  supplements, 22

zinc
  breastfeeding and, 125
  deficiency, 21, 26
  dietary reference intake, 17
  function, 20–21, 26
motor skill development, 178, 180
play positions
alternating, 181
arm positions, 181
down-lying, 181
down positions, 182
environment, 182
lap positions, 181
side-lying with support, 181
tummy time, 183
up positions, 182
skill-building activities
back position, 182
crawling, 183
creeping, 183
peekaboo, 182
rolling, 183
singing, 183
sitting, 183
toy, 183
tummy position, 183
social benefits, 178–179
swimming programs, 185
walkers, 184
weight maintenance, 177–178

Play positions
alternating, 181
arm positions, 181
down-lying, 181
down positions, 182
environment, 182
lap positions, 181
side-lying with support, 181
tummy time, 183
up positions, 182

Over-the-counter (OTC) drugs
breastfeeding and, 82–83
teething remedies, 153

Overweight
measuring, 165
preventing, 165–166
weight maintenance, 42, 165

Pacifiers
adverse effects, 36, 72
breastfeeding and, 72

Partially cooked animal foods, 137

Partial vegetarian diet, 156

Pea allergies, 121

Peas
introducing, 128
preparation, 128
selection, 128

Peekaboo game, 182

Phosphorus
deficiency, 27
dietary reference intake, 17
function, 27
sources, 27
toxicity, 27

Physical activity
guidelines, 179, 181

Phytonutrients, 98

Probiotics, 98

Processed meats, 136–137

Protein
cheese, 127
deficiency, 9, 24
dietary reference intake, 6, 7–8
eggs, 127
essential amino acids, 8
fish, 126–127
functions, 8, 23
legumes, 128

Polyaccharides (complex carbohydrates), 7

Potassium, 27

Poultry
introducing, 126
preparation, 126

Prebiotics, 98

Prescription drugs, breastfeeding and, 76, 81–82

Pegs, 153

Home remedies, 153

Over-the-counter (OTC) remedies, 153

Signs of, 152

tooth decay, 152–154

tooth development, 151–152

Overweight
measuring, 165
preventing, 165–166
weight maintenance, 42, 165

Pacifiers
adverse effects, 36, 72
breastfeeding and, 72

Partially cooked animal foods, 137

Partial vegetarian diet, 156

Pea allergies, 121

Peas
introducing, 128
preparation, 128
selection, 128

Peekaboo game, 182

Phosphorus
deficiency, 27
dietary reference intake, 17
function, 27
sources, 27
toxicity, 27

Physical activity
guidelines, 179, 181

Phytonutrients, 98

Probiotics, 98

Processed meats, 136–137

Protein
cheese, 127
deficiency, 9, 24
dietary reference intake, 6, 7–8
eggs, 127
essential amino acids, 8
fish, 126–127
functions, 8, 23
legumes, 128

Polyaccharides (complex carbohydrates), 7

Potassium, 27

Poultry
introducing, 126
preparation, 126

Prebiotics, 98

Prescription drugs, breastfeeding and, 76, 81–82

Pegs, 153

Home remedies, 153

Over-the-counter (OTC) remedies, 153

Signs of, 152

tooth decay, 152–154

tooth development, 151–152

Overweight
measuring, 165
preventing, 165–166
weight maintenance, 42, 165

Pacifiers
adverse effects, 36, 72
breastfeeding and, 72

Partially cooked animal foods, 137

Partial vegetarian diet, 156

Pea allergies, 121

Peas
introducing, 128
preparation, 128
selection, 128

Peekaboo game, 182

Phosphorus
deficiency, 27
dietary reference intake, 17
function, 27
sources, 27
toxicity, 27

Physical activity
guidelines, 179, 181

Phytonutrients, 98

Probiotics, 98

Processed meats, 136–137

Protein
cheese, 127
deficiency, 9, 24
dietary reference intake, 6, 7–8
eggs, 127
essential amino acids, 8
fish, 126–127
functions, 8, 23
legumes, 128
meats, 126–127
nonessential amino acids, 8
poultry, 126–127
sources, 8–9, 23
tofu, 128
toxicity, 23
vegetarian diets, 156
yogurt, 127
Public breastfeeding, 56
Pyridoxine (vitamin B6)
deficiency, 15, 24
dietary reference intake, 14
functions, 15, 24
sources, 15, 16, 24
toxicity, 24

Rashes, formula feeding and, 103
Raw animal foods, 137
Recommended dietary allowance (RDA)
calcium, 17
copper, 17
definition, 4
iodine, 17
iron, 17, 19
magnesium, 17
phosphorus, 17
protein, 6, 7
selenium, 17
vitamin A, 10
vitamin B1, 14
vitamin B2, 14
vitamin B3, 14
vitamin B6, 14
vitamin B9, 14
vitamin B12, 14
vitamin C, 14
vitamin D, 10
zinc, 17, 20
Recommended energy allowance (REA), 4, 5
Reflexes
gag reflex, 35
grasping reflexes, 37
milk let-down reflex, 50
Moro reflex, 37
rooting reflex, 34
stepping reflex, 37
tongue thrust reflex, 35
tonic neck reflex, 37
Relactation, 75, 96
Riboflavin (vitamin B2)
deficiency, 14, 25
dietary reference intake, 14
functions, 14, 25
sugar alcohols, 7
Supplements, 23
Sweetened beverages, 132–133
Swimming programs, 185
Syrups, 135
Teeth
breastfeeding and, 49
caries, 152–155
decay recognition, 154
dentists, 155–156
oral care, 155
tooth decay, 152–154
tooth development, 151–152
Teething
gels, 153
home remedies, 153
over-the-counter (OTC) remedies, 153
signs of, 152
Television, 167, 187–188
Thiamin (vitamin B1)
deficiency, 13, 25
dietary reference intake, 14
functions, 13, 25
sources, 13, 16, 25
toxicity, 25
Tofu, 128
Tongue thrust reflex, 35
Tonic neck reflex, 37
Toys, 183
UL (tolerable upper intake level)
calcium, 17
copper, 17
definition, 4
fluoride, 17, 21
iodine, 17
iron, 17, 19
magnesium, 17
manganese, 17
phosphorus, 17
selenium, 17
sodium, 17
vitamin A, 10, 11
vitamin B1, 14
vitamin B6, 14
vitamin B9, 14
vitamin C, 14
vitamin D, 10, 11
vitamin E, 10
zinc, 17, 20
Unpasteurized fruit juice, 132
Urination

Sugar, 135, 136
Sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS), 49, 168
Syrups
135

Suckling/swallowing reflex, 34, 36
Sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS), 49, 168
Sugar, 135, 136
Soy-based infant formula, 94, 96, 159
Spitting up, 102, 160–161
“Stepping” reflex, 37
Sources, 14, 25
toxicity, 25
vegetarian diets, 159

Rooting reflex, 34
Rotavirus, 201–202
Salt, 136
Satiety cues, 38–39, 98
Sauces
136

Selenium
deficiency, 27
dietary reference intake, 17
functions, 27
sources, 27
toxicity, 27

Semi-vegetarian diet, 156
SHAPE America (Society of Health and Physical Educators), 226
Shape, complementary foods and, 134
Sippy cups, 142
Skill-building activities
back position, 186
crawling, 183
creepeing, 183
peekaboo, 182
rolling, 183
singing, 183
sitting, 183
toy, 183
tummy position, 183
Sleep
bed sharing, 168
complementary foods and, 118
introductory phase, 167
media use and, 186
newborn stage, 167
patterns, 72–73, 167
reinforcement phase, 167
safe practices for, 167–168
sleeping through the night, 72
waking to feed, 61
Sodium
commercially prepared foods, 136
deficiency, 22, 27
dietary reference intake, 17
functions, 22, 27
sources, 22, 27
toxicity, 27

Spitting up, 102, 160–161
“Stepping” reflex, 37
Suckling/swallowing reflex, 34, 36
Sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS), 49, 168
Sugar, 135, 136
Sugar alcohols, 7
Supplements, 23
Sweetened beverages, 132–133
Swimming programs, 185
Syrups, 135

Teeth
breastfeeding and, 49
caries, 152–155
decay recognition, 154
dentists, 155–156
oral care, 155
tooth decay, 152–154
tooth development, 151–152

Teething
gels, 153
home remedies, 153
over-the-counter (OTC) remedies, 153
signs of, 152

Television, 167, 187–188
Thiamin (vitamin B1)
deficiency, 13, 25
dietary reference intake, 14
functions, 13, 25
sources, 13, 16, 25
toxicity, 25

Tofu, 128

Tongue thrust reflex, 35
Tonic neck reflex, 37
Toys, 183

UL (tolerable upper intake level)
calcium, 17
copper, 17
definition, 4
fluoride, 17, 21
iodine, 17
iron, 17, 19
magnesium, 17
manganese, 17
phosphorus, 17
selenium, 17
sodium, 17
vitamin A, 10, 11
vitamin B1, 14
vitamin B6, 14
vitamin B9, 14
vitamin C, 14
vitamin D, 10, 11
vitamin E, 10
zinc, 17, 20

Unpasteurized fruit juice, 132
Urination
dehydratlon, 102

diaper counting, 63

U.S. Breastfeeding Committee (USBC), 227

U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC), 227

U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), 227

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS), 228

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), 227

U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), 227

U.S. Government Bookstore, 228

Value Enhanced Nutrition Assessment (VENA)
adjunct health information, 3
anthropometric data, 2
biochemical data, 2
clinical data, 2
dietary information, 2–3
environmental information, 3
family information, 3
technical requirements, 3

Vaping, breastfeeding and, 78

Vegan diet, 156–157

Vegetables
choking hazards, 122
introducing, 128–129
feeding guidelines, 138
nitrates, 136, 205
nitrites, 136
preparation, 129, 139, 209
selection, 129, 209
storage, 197

Vegetarian diets
adequacy of, 156
fruitarian diet, 156
lacto-ovo-vegetarian, 156
lacto-vegetarian, 156
macrobiotic diet, 156
nutrition
calcium, 159
energy content, 158
iron, 159
protein, 158
riboflavin (vitamin B2), 159
vitamin A, 158
vitamin B2 (Riboflavin), 159
vitamin B12, 158
vitamin D, 159
zinc, 159
nutrition counseling guidelines, 157
partial vegetarian, 156
preparation, 160
risks of, 156–157
semi-vegetarian, 156
vegan diet, 156–157

Viruses, diarrhea and, 164

Vitamins
fat-soluble vitamins
vitamin A, 10, 11, 16, 23, 158
vitamin D, 10, 11–12, 16, 23, 159
vitamin E, 10, 12, 16, 24
introduction to, 10
supplements, 22
vitamin A
deficiency, 11, 23
dietary reference intake, 10
functions, 11, 23
sources, 11, 16, 23
toxicity, 23
vegetarian diets, 158
vitamin B1 (thiamin)
deficiency, 13, 25
dietary reference intake, 14
functions, 13, 25
sources, 13, 16, 25
toxicity, 25
vegetarian diets, 159
vitamin B2 (riboflavin)
deficiency, 14, 25
dietary reference intake, 14
functions, 14, 25
sources, 14, 16, 25
toxicity, 25
vitamin B6 (pyridoxine)
deficiency, 15, 24
dietary reference intake, 14
functions, 15, 24
sources, 15, 16, 24
toxicity, 24
vitamin B9 (folate)
deficiency, 15, 24
dietary reference intake, 14
functions, 15, 24
vitamin B12 (cobalamin)
deficiency, 15, 24
dietary reference intake, 14
functions, 15, 24

sources, 15, 16, 24
toxicity, 24
vegetarian diets, 158
vitamin C (ascorbic acid)
deficiency, 18, 24
dietary reference intake, 14
functions, 16, 24
lead poisoning and, 202–203
sources, 16, 24
toxicity, 24
vitamin D
deficiency, 12, 23
dietary reference intake, 10
functions, 11, 23
sources, 11–12, 16, 23
toxicity, 23
vegetarian diets, 159
vitamin E
deficiency, 12, 24
dietary reference intake, 10
functions, 12, 24
sources, 12, 16, 24
toxicity, 24
vitamin K
deficiency, 13, 24
dietary reference intake, 10
functions, 12, 24
sources, 13, 16, 24
toxicity, 24

water-soluble vitamins
vitamin B1 (thiamin), 13, 14, 16, 25
vitamin B2 (riboflavin), 14, 16, 25, 161
vitamin B3 (niacin), 14, 16, 25
vitamin B6 (pyridoxine), 14, 15, 16, 24
vitamin B9 (folate), 14, 15, 16, 24
vitamin B12 (cobalamin), 14, 15, 16, 24, 158
vitamin C (ascorbic acid), 14, 16, 18, 24

Vomiting, 102, 132, 160, 162

Walkers, 184

Walking, 37, 184

Washing hands, 191–192

Water
arsenic, 198–199
bottled water, 200
copper, 202
Cryptosporidium, 201
E. coli, 201
functions, 22
### Water-soluble vitamins

**vitamin B1 (thiamin)**
- deficiency, 13, 25
- dietary reference intake, 14
- functions, 13, 25
- sources, 13, 16, 25
- toxicity, 25

**vitamin B2 (riboflavin)**
- deficiency, 14, 25
- dietary reference intake, 14
- functions, 14, 25
- sources, 14, 16, 25
- toxicity, 25

**vitamin B3 (niacin)**
- deficiency, 14, 25
- dietary reference intake, 14
- functions, 14, 25
- sources, 14, 16, 25
- toxicity, 25

**vitamin B6 (pyridoxine)**
- deficiency, 15, 24
- dietary reference intake, 14
- functions, 15, 24
- sources, 15, 16, 24
- toxicity, 24

**vitamin B9 (folate)**
- deficiency, 15, 24
- dietary reference intake, 14
- functions, 15, 24
- sources, 15, 16, 24
- toxicity, 24

**vitamin B12 (cobalamin)**
- deficiency, 15, 24
- dietary reference intake, 14
- functions, 15, 24
- sources, 15, 16, 24
- toxicity, 24

**vitamin C (ascorbic acid)**
- deficiency, 18, 24
- dietary reference intake, 14
- functions, 16, 25

**Zinc**
- breastfeeding and, 125
- deficiency, 21, 26
- dietary reference intake, 17
- function, 20, 26
- lead poisoning and, 21

**Infant Formula Calculator**, 100
- overview of, 218
- portion size guidelines, 220
- satiety cue guidelines, 222

**Yogurt**, 127

**Well water**, 199

**WIC Works Resource System**
- complementary food guidelines, 219
- development skills guidelines, 221
- feeding guidelines, 219
- food safety
  - choking, 224
  - formula, 223
  - home-prepared infant foods, 224
  - human milk, 223
  - store-bought infant foods, 223
- hunger cue guidelines, 222
- Infant Formula Calculator, 100
- overview of, 218
- portion size guidelines, 220
- satiety cue guidelines, 222

**Weight**
- caregiver control, 166
- dietary choices, 166
- maintaining, 42, 165
- media use, 166
- obesity
  - breastfeeding and, 49, 166
  - measuring, 165
  - weight maintenance, 42, 165
- overweight
  - measuring, 165
  - preventing, 165–166
  - weight maintenance, 42, 165
- parent control, 166
- physical activity and, 179–181
- pregnancy weight, 166
- rapid weight gain, 166
- slow weight gain, 71

**Weaning**
- baby-led weaning (BLW), 123
  - from bottle, 108
  - to bottle, 75
  - to cup, 75
- early weaning, 72
- gradual weaning, 75
- recommendations, 75
- relactation, 75
Reader Response

Infant Nutrition and Feeding: A Guide for Use in the Special Supplemental Nutrition Program for Women, Infants, and Children (WIC) is a reference guidebook for staff of the Special Supplemental Nutrition Program for Women, Infants, and Children (WIC) that provides nutrition education to the parents and guardians of infants. We are interested in your comments about the guidebook. Please send your comments to WICHQ-SFPD@usda.gov.

Thank you!